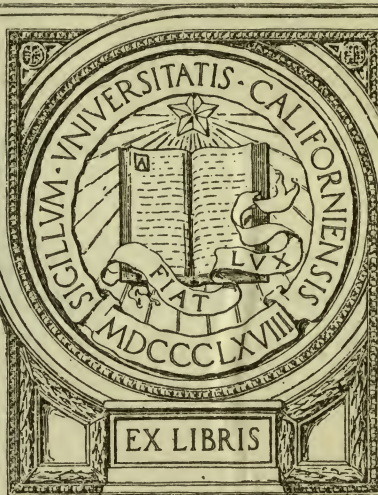


UC-NRLF



\$B 605 948

IN MEMORIAM
J. Henry Senger



EX LIBRIS

849f
B919
e

1894





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

ELEMENTARY
GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION

BEING PARTS I. AND II. OF

“Materials for German Prose Composition”

SELECTED AND ANNOTATED BY

C. A. BUCHHEIM, PHIL. DOC., F.C.P.

//

*Professor of the German Language and Literature in King's College, London
Examiner in German to the University of London, &c.*

WITH A VOCABULARY

BASED UPON DR. BUCHHEIM'S KEY

LONDON
GEORGE BELL AND SONS
AND NEW YORK
1894

RICHARD CLAY AND SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON AND BUNGAY

IN MEMORIAM

TO THE MEMORY OF
J. Henry Senger
AMONGST US

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE TO THE THIRTEENTH EDITION	ix
I. GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION	xiii
II. ON GERMAN PUNCTUATION	xxi
III. ON THE DIVISION OF WORDS IN GERMAN	xxiii

PART I.

MINOR EXTRACTS	1
--------------------------	---

PART II.

I.—THE DEFENCE OF A FORD (<i>Walter Scott</i>)	14
II.—SCHILLER'S FLIGHT FROM STUTTGART (<i>Thomas Carlyle</i>)	17
III.—SILHOUETTES	19
IV.—PERHAPS IT WAS HIS UNCLE (<i>Sir S. W. Baker</i>)	20
V.—A ROMAN STRATAGEM (<i>Prof. George Long</i>)	21
VI.—A SIGN OF THE TIMES (<i>H. Merivale</i>)	25
VII.—THE SHAKERS' DINNER (<i>Hepworth Dixon</i>)	27
VIII.—BEN JONSON	29
IX.—A MAIDEN SPEECH (<i>Macaulay</i>)	30
X.—A SELF-DUBBED MESSENGER (<i>Capt. Hozier</i>)	33
XI.—DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA (<i>Motley</i>)	34
XII.—WORSE THAN HIS REPUTATION (<i>W. G. Palgrave</i>)	36
XIII.—SPEEDY PROMOTION (<i>Sir Edw. Cust</i>)	39
XIV.—GOETHE AT THE AGE OF TWENTY (<i>G. H. Lewes</i>)	41

	PAGE
XV.—THE PILGRIMS	(G. Bancroft) 44
XVI.—SLAVE-MAKING INSTINCT OF ANTS . .	(Darwin) 47
XVII.—THE BATTLE OF THE ALMA	(Kinglake) 49
XVIII.—THE APOSTLE OF THE GOTHs	(Gibbon) 53
XIX.—THE PRAIRIE	(E. Dicey) 55
XX.—CHIVALRY IN SPAIN	(Prescott) 57
XXI.—CHARLES THE GREAT	(J. Bryce) 59
XXII.—LOVE OF FLOWERS	(J. Ruskin) 62
XXIII.—LIFE AMONG THE BEDOUINS	(Layard) 64
XXIV.—SIR SIDNEY SMITH AT BATH . . .	(De Quincey) 67
XXV.—OF STYLE	70
XXVI.—THE BORDER FEUDS	(G. A. Froude) 72
XXVII.—A GERMAN HAUTOY-PLAYER	(Southey) 74
XXVIII.—CRANFORD	(Mrs. Gaskell) 76
XXIX.—BEFORE THE BATTLE OF KÖNIGGRÄTZ	(Capt. Hozier) 79
XXX.—A DISPUTED BOUNDARY. .	(Dr. W. B. Carpenter) 82
XXXI.—THOMAS CARLYLE TO GOETHE (A Letter)	84
XXXII.—A STURDY SQUIRE	(Miss A. Strickland) 88
XXXIII.—THE HISTORY OF SCIENCES .	(Prof. Max Müller) 91
XXXIV.—THE WARTBURG	(Dean Stanley) 94
VOCABULARY	99

EXTRACT FROM THE PREFACE

TO THE THIRTEENTH EDITION

OF

Materials for German Prose Composition.

THE great success with which this book has met wherever German is taught through the medium of English, and the great educational progress which has taken place almost throughout the civilized world, relieve me from the necessity of dilating on several topics which required to be specially pointed out when this book was first issued in 1868. I need no longer dwell on the importance of German as a discipline of the mind, and as a medium of enlightenment and refinement, or on the numerous advantages which a knowledge of the language offers both from a practical and utilitarian point of view. All this is now universally admitted. Nor is it needful to send forth a special plea on the utility, nay, necessity, of translating from our own language into the foreign idiom, if the latter is to be thoroughly mastered. This fact too may now be considered as an axiom. Under these circumstances it seemed to me expedient to omit the bulk of the former Prefaces, and to confine myself, in issuing the present *Thirteenth Edition*, to a mere description of the book.

In the first instance, I have to state that I made myself all the extracts contained in this volume from the works of the respective authors, and that I did *not* take them “ready cut” from any other compilations. I imposed this arduous task upon myself, partly because I wished to give such passages only as seemed to me best suited for bringing out the idiomatic differences between English and German, and for illustrating the structure of the German sentence and the niceties of the language, and partly because I was anxious to avoid all those hackneyed extracts and “professional” anecdotes, of which both teachers and pupils must be heartily tired. In making the selections I have, besides, confined myself to *modern* authors, as it seemed to me impossible to learn to write modern German by translating those old English writers who deserve our admiration, but whose style nobody would now-a-days imitate. It has, finally, been my endeavour to give interesting extracts only—mostly of an instructive kind without being dull—and to furnish specimens of nearly every branch of prose writing, thus practically illustrating the narrative, descriptive, epistolary, scientific, critical, and conversational style. Though merely extracts, the pieces are mostly complete in themselves; and where this is not absolutely the case, I have given the necessary explanations in a foot-note. I have, besides, explained everything which seemed to me necessary for a full understanding of the text; which is, after all, a primary condition before any translation is to be attempted at all.

The *First Part* consists of easy detached sentences and *minor extracts*, taken from English standard works,

which are to serve for practice in the order of words and the less complicated construction of sentences. The *Second Part* contains short but complete sketches, chiefly historical. The *Notes* to the first two Parts have this in common, that they contain, besides copious renderings of single expressions and idiomatic phrases, also numerous philological remarks and grammatical rules. This section of the work contains, in fact, almost the *whole of the German Syntax*.

The *Introductory Part* consists of three chapters. The *first chapter* gives what I ventured to designate as *Essentials of Syntax*, containing as it does a general recapitulation of some of the most important features of German syntax. Frequent references have been made throughout the book to this chapter, a thorough knowledge of which will greatly facilitate the student's task of translating from English into German. The *second chapter* gives the principal rules for *Punctuation* in German. A proper knowledge of this subject is absolutely necessary for composition in any language. I believe I am not overrating the importance of punctuation if I assert, that he who knows how to place his *commas* in German, shows that he has an accurate knowledge of the grammatical structure of a German sentence. In fact, the two topics, *Punctuation and Construction of Sentences*, supplement each other in German, which, as I have repeatedly pointed out in my educational works, is a strictly *grammatical* language. The *third chapter* relates to the *Division of Words in German*. Those who have had occasion to read the German compositions of a number of pupils or examinees, will be aware of the fact that most students

of German have not the faintest idea of how to divide German words; and yet a knowledge of this subject forms part and parcel of the knowledge of any language. Both the last-named subjects, viz. *Punctuation* and *Division of Words*, are, as a rule, fully treated in the German grammars written for the use of Germans, and it seems therefore doubly desirable to include them in a German manual destined for non-Germans.

C. A. BUCHHEIM.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON,
January, 1890.

I have to express my sincerest thanks for permission to reprint some of the following Copyright Extracts:—to Lady Trevelyan, Messrs. A. and C. Black, Messrs. Blackwood and Sons, Messrs. Longmans and Co., Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Mr. John Murray, and Messrs. Smith, Elder, and Co.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

GERMAN is a strictly grammatical language, and this circumstance forms the basis of the construction of German sentences. The grammatical inflections, which have not been lost in German as in English, claim inexorably their right, but offer at the same time the great advantage of effecting a distinctness which leaves room neither for a real nor for a merely grammatical ambiguity. Apart from these formal exigencies, there is the same freedom of movement in the expression of thought in German as in English—a freedom which is of incalculable advantage to prose, but still more so to poetry.

The German language possesses, besides, an adaptability which most other languages lack, and to which the fact may be attributed that German can boast—as has been universally acknowledged—of unrivalled translations from foreign languages, especially from the English. The fact just pointed out may serve as an encouragement to English students of German, proving, as it does, that the difficulties of translating into German are by no means so

overwhelming as is generally asserted, more particularly by those whose knowledge of the language is only superficial. Any one who has a fair knowledge of German, and is familiar with the Grammar, will, by the help of a comprehensive Dictionary, be able to produce such a translation as, though not elegant, would not be stamped as absurd or as 'un-German,' since the mode of expression is by no means prescribed by implacable laws. There is, it is true, a peculiarly German order of words; but this order can easily enough be learned by means of certain rules: and so can the peculiarity of the construction of German sentences in general, especially if it is constantly borne in mind that German is, as has been stated before, a strictly grammatical language, and requires all the various relations between subject, object, &c. to be pointed out with grammatical distinctness.

The following general recapitulation of some of the most important features of German Syntax will fully bear out my assertion as regards the thorough grammatical character of the language.

I. One of the chief characteristics of German construction is that of placing the qualifying expressions and clauses before the qualified term; which mode of expression gives great vigour and compactness to the sentences. For example: Ein

auf dem Hügel stehendes Haus, *a house standing on the hill*. This mode of construction enables us to avoid the too frequent use of relative clauses which, in German, cannot be contracted by the omission of the relative pronoun.

The student of German should, however, be very cautious in forming such adjective sentences. They should never be too long, and it is far better to make use of relative clauses than to compress a number of clauses into one protracted adjective sentence. It is in this respect, before all, that modern German prose has materially improved, and the present *Guide* has been arranged in accordance with that improvement.

II. *Participial Constructions*, so very frequently employed in English, are in German generally turned by a different form. This important topic has been fully explained in the present volume, and one Extract (part ii. page 82, No. xxx.) has been inserted for special practice in the various rules referring to the Present (or 'Imperfect') Participle. The most important of the rules alluded to are here recapitulated.

(a) In adverbial clauses of time *participial Constructions* are usually changed into a regular clause with a conjunction indicating time, (as: *indem*, *während*, *whilst*; *als*, *da*, *when*; *nachdem*, *after*, etc.) and a finite verb *e.g.*; (*while*) *speaking with me*, *he saw*, etc., *während* (or *indem*) *er mit mir sprach*, etc. Tenses

and conjunctions must be employed according to the sense of the passage.

(b) The Present Participle which qualifies a preceding noun or pronoun is generally changed into a regular relative clause; that is to say, the Present Participle is changed into a finite verb and is introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb. The sense of the passage will generally show which tense is to be used. Thus we should turn *retaining* in Extr. 19 by 'which had retained,' because it refers to the past; and *enabling* in Extr. 21 by 'which enable,' because it contains the notion of the present tense.

(c) When the Present Participle expresses a logical cause, it is changed into a regular sentence, and introduced by *da*; e.g. *Not finding him at home, I went away*, *da ich ihn nicht zu Hause fand, so ging ich weg*.

(d) Present Participles having the force of an adjective, are, in some cases, actually changed into attributive adjectives, (cf. p. xiv. I).

(e) Present Participles are often turned by a finite verb, and connected by *and* with a preceding clause. Cf. p. 28, l. 12.

(f) A very convenient way of rendering briefly the Present Participle is the employment of adverbial expressions with which the German language

abounds. This expedient has been resorted to in various passages of the present volume, as page 112, where the clause *having sustained considerable losses* has been briefly rendered by the adverbial expression, mit großem Verluste.

(g) In one case the Present Participle may also be used in German, more particularly in elevated diction,—viz. when it denotes an action which is represented as taking place simultaneously with the action expressed by the predicate ; e.g. Dies alles bei mir denkend (schief ich ein (Sch.), *thinking on all these matters I fell asleep*, i.e. ‘whilst I thought of all these matters I fell asleep.’ Cf. Extract 42, note b.

In common prose, however, we generally use a finite verb introduced by indem (and sometimes by da), as: *in walking through the town, I observed, etc.* indem ich durch die Stadt ging, etc., (Cf. above II. a).

III. The construction of the *Accusative with the Infinitive*, so frequently occurring in Latin, Greek, and English, is inadmissible in German, since the verb governs in such a construction two objects of a perfectly different *grammatical* character—if we may say so ; a process quite adverse to the character of the German language, which requires all grammatical relations to be logically and distinctly pointed out. We must, therefore, generally change the accusative into the nominative, the infinitive

into a finite verb, and introduce the sentence by the conjunction daß. For instance: *I wish you to write the letter immediately*, ich wünſche, daß Sie den Brief ſogleich ſchreiben.

The Infinitive may, however, be used in German with some verbs, as ſehen, hören, finden, fühlen, haben, etc., and also with the intransitive verbs gehen, reiten, fahren, bleiben; but all these and similar verbs form with the infinitive a kind of compound verbal expression, expressing one idea only, as: *I see him coming*, ich ſehe ihn kommen; *we go for a walk*, wir gehen ſpazieren. In these examples the verbs kommen ſehen and ſpazieren gehen express one notion only. Cf. Extract 17.

The reason stated with reference to the inadmissibility of the Accusative with the Infinitive in German may, in some measure, also explain the circumstance that verbs of choosing, appointing, declaring, considering, etc. do not govern in German *two* accusatives, as is the case in Greek, Latin, and English; but put the suffering or direct object alone in the accusative, and the word expressing the office to which a person has been appointed, or that which a person or thing is declared to be, is preceded by the preposition zu with the dative (after the verbs of choosing, electing, and declaring), and by the accusative with the prepositions als or für (after verbs of considering and declaring): e.g. *They*

appointed him president of the society, sie ernannten ihn zum Präsidenten der Gesellschaft; *I esteem it a favour*, ich betrachte es als eine Gunst. Cf. page 36, note 4, and page 85, note 2.

IV. The rule with reference to words in *Apposition* requires in German the greatest attention.

A noun (or its substitute, viz. a personal pronoun) or adjective or ordinal number is said to stand in the relation of *Apposition*, when it qualifies or explains another noun previously mentioned.

The *Apposition* agrees, for the sake of grammatical distinctness, with the noun qualified, in gender, number, and case. Thus, in the extract No. 17, page 4, we must render the sentence, *The flax plant is composed of three distinct parts, the wood, the fibres, and the gum resin, &c.*, by der Flachs besteht aus drei verschiedenen Theilen, dem Holze, den Fasern und dem Harze, &c. The terms Holz, Fasern, and Harz stand here in *apposition* to Theilen, and must therefore, like the latter expression, be used in the dative case. See page 85, note 9.

The rule that the *Article* must be repeated before nouns of different gender or number—which is merely owing to the requirements of grammatical distinctness—may here appropriately be appended to the rule concerning the *Apposition*. See page 42, note 9.

V. Grammatical distinctness requires in German—though not rigorously—that the place of the object be supplied in the principal clause by the pronoun *es* when the leading verb governs the accusative case, and the object consists of a whole clause or a supine; e.g. *He had ventured to go in secret, &c.* (see page 17, note 7), *er hatte es gewagt, sich heimlich aufzumachen, &c.*

If, however, the verb or adjective in the principal clause require a preposition, the latter is added to the demonstrative pronoun *da* or *dar*; e.g. *This castle is remarkable as containing &c.* (see page 97 note 2), *dieses Schloß ist dadurch merkwürdig, daß &c.*

Words printed in *italics* in the text are not to be translated.

When two words are separated by a dash (—) in the Notes, the German rendering refers to the whole clause of which the first and last word are given.

When words are separated by dots (.), the German rendering in the Notes is the equivalent for these words only, and not for the intervening expressions.

In Part I. the rules and renderings referring to each Extract are given in a single Note.

I.

ON GERMAN PUNCTUATION.

THE rules of punctuation are, in general, the same in German as in English, more especially as regards the employment of *Stops, Colons, Points of Interrogation*, etc. There is, however, a considerable difference between the use of the *Comma* in the two languages; and some in the use of the *Semicolon*.

GENERAL RULE.—A *Comma* is required in German after every distinct part of a sentence, whether it be a whole clause, or a single term, such as nouns, adjectives, or verbs, placed side by side.

A *Comma* is, in particular, placed in German:

1. Between nouns, adjectives, or verbs, placed side by side without being connected by *und* or *oder*, as: *Männer, Frauen, Kinder, Alles eilte herbei:—Er ist ein bescheidener, tapferer und edler Mann. Der Knabe konnte reiten, fechten, tanzen und schwimmen, aber nicht lesen.*

2. Between co-ordinate clauses having different subjects, as: *Der Vogel fliegt, der Fisch schwimmt, die Schnecke kriecht. Sowohl meine Bürger, als auch meine Bilder sind angekommen.*

3. Before dependent clauses, as: *Hier ist das Buch, das ich gekauft habe.—Er sagte, daß er morgen abreisen werde.—Sie glaubt, sie habe Recht.*

4. Before a principal sentence, preceded by a dependent clause, as: *Wer nicht wagt, gewinnt nicht.*

5. Before clauses beginning with *und*, when they have not the same subject as the preceding clause, as: *Ich gehe aufs Land, und mein Bruder reist nach Deutschland.* But we write: *Ich gehe aufs Land und werde morgen zurückkehren.*

6. Before adversative clauses beginning with *oder*, as: *Soll ich das Buch behalten, oder es zurücksenden?* But we should write: *Sage Ja oder Nein!*

7. Before and after parenthetical clauses, as: *Kommt, rief er, laßt uns die Stadt vertheidigen.*

8. Before substantive clauses containing a *Supine* [cp. p. 2, Extract 9, (a)], as: *Er eilte herbei, um sie zu retten.*

9. Before and after appositions, as: *Hermann, der Befreier von Deutschland, war ein Cherusker.*

NOTE.—The German equivalents of *however*, *moreover* (*indessen*, *überdies*), and of several similar words which are separated in English by *Commas* from the clauses preceding or following them, require no *Commas* in German, as: *He said he would come late; he came, however, very early.*—*Er sagte, er würde spät kommen; er kam indessen sehr früh.*

The *Semicolon* is chiefly required in German between co-ordinate sentences which are rather extended, or contain themselves several clauses, as: *Es ist nicht genug zu wissen, man muß auch anwenden; es ist nicht genug zu wollen, man muß auch thun.*

II.

ON THE DIVISION OF WORDS IN GERMAN.

GERMAN words, consisting of more than one syllable, are, in general, divided in accordance with their pronunciation, and not as is done in English, chiefly according to etymological derivation. The principal rule is therefore in German: **DIVIDE AS YOU SPEAK.**

EXAMPLES:—*Frei=heits=liebe* ; *Va=ter=land*.

SPECIAL RULES:—

1. Compound nouns are divided in accordance with their component parts, as: *Zimmer=thüre* ; *Dinten=faß*.

2. Final consonants are placed at the end of the first line, as: *Faul=heit* ; *Freund=schaft* ; *Mäd=chen*.

Conformably with the above rules, compound words are divided in accordance with their component parts, even if the division should not strictly coincide with the pronunciation, as: *war=um* ; *dar=in* ; *vor=aus* ; *be=ob=achten* (although pronounced *beo=bachten*) ; *voll=enden* ; *Inter=esse*.

Some Grammarians divide, however, in accordance with the pronunciation: *wa=rum* ; *da=rin*, etc.

3. A consonant occurring between two vowels is placed in the second line, as; ge=ben; lau=fen.

4. The compound letters ch, ph, sch, th, dt, are placed in the second line, because they form one sound only, as: Sa=che; brau=chen, Dr=tho=graphie; Men=schen; Stä=dt.

5. When two consonants occur before a vowel one consonant is placed on each line. For example: Freun=de; bes=sen, Las=ten (or Las=ten); Knos=pe (or Knos=pe); flop=fen; Ach=sel.

6. The double consonant ff is changed, when divided, into f f; thus büffen should be written bűf=fen; and the double consonant ss is simply reduced into its component parts; thus fragen should be divided frat=zen.

7. The double consonants x (=ks) and z (=ts) are always placed in the second line, as forming one syllable only; for example, Za=re; rei=zen.

The sign of division in German is a double hyphen at the end of the line, viz. (=).

There is a curious practice current in this country of dividing German words in writing, by putting hyphens both at the end and at the beginning of the lines; the latter being of course quite superfluous.

GERMAN PROSE COMPOSITION.

PART I.

1. TIME is an important element in the action of force.
2. The hearing of birds is most acute.
3. The dome of St. Paul's Cathedral is built of wood.
4. The silver fir was introduced into England in the seventeenth century.

¹ *Important*, in the sense of affecting considerably some result, wichtig; *element* denotes here an 'essential condition,' and is to be rendered by *Umfand*, or by the more scientific term *Element*, *n.*; *action* signifying 'effect of power' is rendered by *Wirkung* and *force* denoting 'active power' by *Kraft*. — Use the word *time* with the definite article, which is frequently required in German with *abstract nouns*, when the abstract idea is expressed in a *general* sense.

² *Hearing*, (the sense of), *Gehör*; *most*, here *äußerst*; *acute*, with reference to the senses, *scharf*. — Use *birds* with the definite article, because *common names* denoting 'an aggregate whole or entire genus,' require in German the definite article.

³ *Dome*, denoting 'cupola,' (It. and Engl.), *Kuppel*; *St. Paul's Cathedral*, die *Paulskirche*; cf. p. 59, n. 3; *wood*, (the substance) *Holz*. The prep. *of* referring to a material

of which a thing is made, is translated by *aus* or *von*; by the former more generally when a verb is used at the same time, and by the latter when the verb is understood.

⁴ *Silver fir*, *Silbertanne*; *to introduce into*, here *bringen nach*; *century*, *Jahrhundert*. (a) Adverbial expressions of time precede in German adverbial expressions of place. Construe therefore: was in the seventeenth century into England, &c. (b) Use the verb *bringen* in the imperf. of the passive voice. This form is always required in German when the suffering of an action by the subject is to be expressed. In the preceding sentence the action is represented as completed; we must, therefore, use the auxiliary verb *sein* in order to express the 'state' of the subject; but in the present instance we represent the subject as suffering the action, and have therefore to employ the auxiliary verb *werden*.

5. Water in the act of freezing becomes electrical.

6. The Assyrians, like the Egyptians, appear to have had organized and disciplined troops.

7. When hair becomes very fine and crisp, it is termed wool.

8. The last years of John Locke's existence were spent at Oates in Essex.

9. The Berber language has no terms for expressing abstract ideas, and is obliged to borrow them from the Arabic.

10. Green is a common colour in the vegetable kingdom; it is very rare in the mineral kingdom. ✓

⁵ *In—freezing*, im Gefrieren. (a) When the entire genus of a material is to be expressed, we generally use the definite article. (b) When a sentence begins with the subject, the assertion, *i.e.* the verb containing a personal inflection, is, as a rule, placed immediately after the subject; construe, therefore, *(the) water becomes in*, &c.

⁶ *Assyrians*, Assyrer; *like*, gleich, which adjective governs the dative; *to appear*, scheinen; *organized*, organisiert; *disciplined*, disciplinirt; *troops*, here Armeen.—In this sentence the subject stands first, and *appear* forms the assertion.

⁷ *Fine*, fein; *crisp*, kraus. Render *it is termed* by so nennt man es. For the rendering of the term *hair* compare Extr. 5 n. a., and for the place of *wird* (becomes) cf. Extr. 12 n. b.—The conjunction *so* is here used in accordance with the rule that, when a sentence, expressing a condition, precedes a principal clause, the latter is generally introduced by the expletive *so*, and given in an inverted form.

⁸ According to the rule mentioned in n. b to Extr. 4, we ought to use here the passive voice; but this form is generally changed into the active voice when the agent from whom the activity proceeds is, on account of its greater

importance than the subject suffering the action, to be made more prominent. Turn, therefore, the above sentence by 'John Locke spent (brachte...zu) the last years of his existence (Lebens) at (zu) Oates, &c.'

⁹ The Berber language (Berbersprache) is spoken in the mountainous districts of the north coast of Africa by the aborigines. *Arabic* (das Arabische) is spoken by the Arabs in the adjoining plains. When *term* is synonymous with 'word' or 'expression,' it must be rendered by Wort or Ausdruck; *to be obliged*, müssen; *to borrow (from)*, entleihen. (a) Render *for expressing* by um auszudrücken, because the *Supine*, *i.e.* the infinitive with the preposition zu before it, is required in German with verbs expressing a purpose, or forming the object of a clause. Frequently the preposition um, 'for,' is made to precede the *Supine*. (b) The verb entleihen governs the dative of the indirect object—here *Arabic*—like many other inseparable compound verbs.

¹⁰ *Vegetable Kingdom*, Pflanzenreich; *rare*, selten; *mineral kingdom*, Mineralreich. Adjectives denoting colour in general, are used in German as neuter substantives and require the definite article.

11. The prose of Dryden, says Sir Walter Scott, may reckon with the best in the English language.

12. In the reign of Elizabeth the town of Brighton was situated on that tract where the chain-pier now extends into the sea.

13. We command nature, according to the saying of a philosopher, by obeying her laws.

14. The swiftest and most agile quadrupeds, as well as the most graceful and beautiful, also those which are most useful to man, belong chiefly to the old continent.

15. Demosthenes felt such delight in the history of Thucydides, that to obtain a familiar and perfect mastery of his style, he copied his history eight times.

16. The inhabitants of the Marianne Islands pretended to be the only people in the world.

¹¹ *May reckon with*, kann zu... gerechnet werden. (a) Turn the prose of Dryden by 'Dryden's prose,' in accordance with the rule that, when a proper name occurs in the genitive case, it is generally placed before the noun which it qualifies. (b) Cf. for *Sir*, p. 31, n. 7.

¹² The preposition *in* referring to *reign* (Regierung) is rendered in German by *unter*. For the construction of *In—Elizabeth*, cf. n. a to preceding Extr.; *to be situated*, sich befinden; *on*, here auf; *tract*, Stelle. The *chain pier* here alluded to refers, of course, to the old Brighton pier, which, being a 'landing bridge projecting into the sea,' may be rendered by the abbreviated form *Kettenbrücke* (omitting the word *Landungs* between the two nouns); *extends into*, sich... hinaus erstreckt. (a) When a clause does not begin with the subject, the assertion must be placed before it; put therefore *was situated before the town*. (b) The verb *erstreckt* must here be placed at the end, the clause being a dependent one.

¹³ *To command*, here beherrschen; *according to*, nach; *saying*, here Ausspruch. Place *nature* with the def. art. after *philosopher*, and turn

by *obeying* by 'whilst (indem) we obey.' Cf. Int. p. xv. II. a.

¹⁴ *Swift*, schnell; *agile*, behend; *quadruped*, Vierfüßler; *as well as*, sowie; *graceful*, here zierlich; *as also*, wie auch; *most useful*, am nützlichsten; *to belong*, angehören; *chiefly*, vorzüglich; *continent* = world.—*Man* denotes here human being; use therefore the noun *Mensch*, which corresponds to the Latin *homo* and the Greek *άνθρωπος*. Cf. the note to Extr. 2.

¹⁵ *Felt—in*, war von...so sehr entzückt; *to—style*, um dessen Stil vollständig in seine Gewalt zu bekommen; *eight times* is a reiterative numeral. (a) The genitive case is with *foreign proper names* ending in a sibilant, generally pointed out by means of the definite article. (b) The pronoun *he* in the above sentence should be placed after *that*, because, as a rule, *inversions do not take place in dependent sentences*, or with other words, the subject is placed immediately after the word, introducing the dependent clause; when the subject is to be made more emphatic, it takes the place of the principal object after one or more objects.

¹⁶ *Inhabitant*, Bewohner; or here

17. The *flax plant* is composed of three distinct parts: the wood, the fibres, and the gum resin, which causes the fibres to adhere.

18. No body is so black as to reflect no light at all, and to be perfectly invisible in a strong light.

19. A loaf was found in a baker's shop at *Herculaneum* still retaining its form, and with his name stamped upon it.

20. It is *well* known that if one in a troop of lions is killed, the others take the hint, and leave that part of the country.

21. A great number of seeds are furnished with downy and feathery appendages, enabling them, when ripe, to float in the air, and to be wafted easily to great distances.

Ureinwohner. The *Marianne Islands*, *Marianen* or *Labronen*, (from the Spanish '*ladrones*,' i.e. *thieves*; hence also the German name, *Diebesinseln*) are a group of islands in the N. Pacific Ocean. *To pretend*, *behaupten*, which verb must here be followed by the Supine. Render *people* by *Menschen*.

¹⁷ *Flax plant*, *Flachs*; *to be composed of*, *bestehen aus*; *distinct*, *verschieden*; *fibre*, *Faser*; *gum resin*, *Harz*; *n.*; *to cause*, *bewirken*; *to adhere*, *zusammenhalten*. (a) For the rendering of *the wood*, &c., see Int. p. xix., IV., and for the constr. of the *accusative with the infinitive* ('the fibres to adhere') see ib. p. xvii., III.

¹⁸ *Body*, denoting 'matter as opposed to spirit,' *Körper*; *no . . . at all*, *gar kein*; *perfectly*, *vollständig*. When an infinitive is preceded by *as* and refers to the demonstrative *so*, thus implying a condition, it must generally be changed in German into a regular sentence with a finite verb in the conditional mood. Render therefore, *as to reflect*, by *als daß er . . . zurückwürfe*, and *to be*, by *daß er . . . wäre*.

¹⁹ *A loaf*, ein Laib Brod, or simply ein Brod; *Herculaneum*, *Herculaneum*; *to retain*, *beibehalten*; *its form*, die

Form; *to stamp*, *stempeln*. Arrange 'at *Herculaneum* was in the shop of a baker,' &c. For the rendering of *was found*, compare n. b to Ext. 4; and for *still retaining*, which qualifies the noun *loaf*, see Int. p. xvi., b; turn *with—it* by 'upon which (*worauf*) his name was stamped.'

²⁰ *Known*, *bekannt*; *in*, here *aus*; *troop*, (of animals), usually *Trupp*; *take the hint*, here *es sich zur Warnung dienen lassen*; *to leave*, *verlassen*. The prep. *of* in *troop of lions* is not translated, because 'of' denoting in general the partitive relation, is not expressed in German after nouns denoting *number*, *weight*, or *measure*.

²¹ *Number*, here *Menge*; *seeds*, *Samen*; *furnished*, *versehen*; *downy*, *flodicht*; *feathery*, *gestiedert*; *appendage*, *Anhängsel*; *to enable*, in den Stand setzen; *when ripe* = when they are ripe; *to float*, *schweben*; *to be wafted*, *getragen werden*; *to great*, say: in *weite*; *distance*, *Entfernung*. (a) The rule given in note 20 with reference to the omission of the prep. *of* in partitive relations, refers also to the word *Menge*. (b) Cf. for *enabling*, Int. p. xvi., b; and for *to float* and *to be wafted*, n. a to Ext. 9.

22. Among the Dyaks, aborigines of Borneo, no man is allowed to marry till he can show the skull of a man whom he has slain.

23. There is reason to suppose, from the quantity of light emitted by the brightest stars, that some of them are much larger than the sun.

24. In the marsh of Curragh, in the Isle of Man, vast trees are discovered standing firm on their roots, though at a depth of eighteen or twenty feet below the surface.

25. During the hundred and sixty years which preceded the union of the Roses nine kings reigned in England. Six of these nine kings were deposed. Five lost their lives as well as their crowns.

26. The modern system of music is one of the few

²² *Among*, referring to nations in a general sense, as is the case here, is rendered by the prep. *bei*. The *Dyaks* (*Diafen*) are a fierce people with very savage customs; *aborigines*, Eingeborne; *to be allowed*, dürfen; *to marry*, (to take for wife or husband) heirathen; *to show*, here vorzeigen; *skull*, Schädel. (a) Insert the dat. plur. of the def. art. before *aborigines*, and compare for the reason *Int. p. xix., IV.* (b) *Is allowed* cannot here be rendered by *ist* or *wird erlaubt*, because *erlauben* belongs to that class of verbs which govern besides a direct object in the accusative, an indirect object in the dative. Similar verbs are often construed with *man* or rendered impersonally, as *I am told*, man hat mir gesagt, or es ist mir gesagt worden.

²³ *Reason*, denoting 'ground or cause of opinion,' Grund; *to suppose*, here annehmen; *to emit*, ausstrahlen; *of them*, say: derselben. Construe 'from the quantity of light (nach der Lichtmasse zu urtheilen), which is emitted by (von) the brightest stars, one has reason to suppose that some, &c.' The relative pronoun cannot be omitted in German; insert therefore, 'which is' before *emitted*.

²⁴ *Marsh of Curragh*, Curragh-marsh; *in* with reference to *isle* or *island*, generally auf; *vast*, sehr groß, or mächtig; *turn are discovered* by 'one finds,' on their by 'with the,' and *though at a depth* by 'though they are (sich befinden) at a depth.' (a) The prep. *of* is not expressed in German when standing between the common names, Insel, Land, Stadt, Königreich, &c., and the respective proper names, as: *the Isle of Man*, die Insel Man. (b) Cf. for *standing*, *Int. p. xvi., b*, and for *feet* *Extr. 32, n. d*.

²⁵ *To precede*, vorangehen; *union*, Vereinigung; *to reign*, regieren; *to depose*, (kings, &c.) entthronen. (a) The verb *vorangehen* governs the dative case, like many other verbs compounded with the separable prefixes *an*, *auf*, *bei*, *vor*, &c. (b) For *were deposed*, cf. *Extr. 4, n. b*. (c) The expression *leben* does not admit of the plural, when used in a general sense. Turn, therefore, *lost—crowns* by 'lost as well (sowohl) the life as (als) the crown.'

²⁶ Retain the terms *modern* and *system*; *science*, Wissenschaft; turn *if*—called by 'if one can so call it (viz. the system); *to owe*, veranken; *improvement*, here Ausbildung; *the Middle Ages*, das Mittelalter. (a)

sciences, if so it may be called, which owe their improvement to the Middle Ages.

27. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, in the present state of our knowledge to give a complete and perfect definition of what is to be considered an animal, in contradistinction to what is to be looked upon as a plant.

28. In the reign of William the First the penalty for killing a stag or a boar was loss of the eyes; for William loved the great deer, says a Saxon Chronicle, as if he had been their father.

29. When a body is once in motion it requires no foreign power to sustain its velocity.

30. Etna appears to have been in activity from the earliest times of tradition, for Diodorus Siculus mentions an eruption which caused a district to be deserted by the Sicani before the Trojan war. ✓

31. The art of painting in oil was first discovered by

For *music* cf. the note to Extr. 1. (b) The *partitive genitive*, which signifies the whole of which anything is a part, as here in *of the few*, is generally rendered by *von*.

²⁷ *In*, here *bei*; *state*, *Zustand*; *knowledge*, *Wissenschaft*; *complete*, *vollständig*; *perfect*, *genau*; *definition* *Definition*; *of what*, *von dem was*; *to be considered*, *zu betrachten ist*; *in contradistinction*, *im Gegensatz*; *to what*, *zu dem was*; *to be looked upon*, say: *man...ansehen muß*. Cf. on the English passive participial constructions, p. 45, n. 20.

²⁸ *Killing*, say *die Tödtung*; which is to be followed by the genitive case; *turn was loss* by 'consisted in the loss (*Verlust*)'; *great deer*, *Hochwild*, is to be used in the singular only, like all nouns denoting unlimited plurality; *says*, transl. *sie...bemerkt*, i.e. *observes*; *Saxon*, *sächsisch*; *their*, say *dessen*. (a) For *in the reign*, see Extr. 12. (b) The title, *the First*, stands here in *aposition to William*; cf. Int. p. xix., IV. (c) The first clause does not

begin with the subject, see Extr. 12, n. a. (d) For the conj. *for* see p. 89, n. 8.

²⁹ For *body* see Extr. 18; *motion*, *Bewegung*; *to require*, *bedürfen* which governs the genitive case; *power*, here *Kraft*; *to sustain*, *aufrecht erhalten*; *its*, say *dessen*; *velocity*, *Schnelligkeit*. For the rendering of *it requires*, see note to Extr. 7, and for that of *to sustain*, n. a to Extr. 9.

³⁰ *Activity*, *Thätigkeit*; *from—tradition*, *von der frühesten Sagenzeit an*. Turn the clause *which—war*, by 'which before the Trojan war, caused (*veranlaßte*) the Sicani (*Sicanier*) to desert a district (*einen Landstrich*).'
Diodorus Siculus was a Greek historian and a contemporary of Cæsar and Augustus. He wrote a large work entitled *Βιβλιοθήκη Ἱστορική*, i.e. *Historical Library*. — Use the definite article with *Etna*, in accordance with the rule that the names of mountains require the definite article

³¹ *First*, here *zuerst*; *to discover* may here be rendered by *erfinden*

Van Eyck of Bruges, towards *the* end of the fourteenth century. It has now become almost the only manner in which paintings of magnitude are executed.

32. The *Urceola Elastica* is to be found in abundance in the islands of the Indian Archipelago, and can, without being injured, yield by tapping *from* fifty to sixty pounds of caoutchouc in one season.

33. In our island the Latin appears never to have superseded the old Gaelic speech, and could not stand its ground against the German.

34. Sir Robert Cotton, one day at his tailor's, discovered that the man was holding in his hand, ready to cut up for measures, an original Magna Charta, with all *its* appendages of seals and signatures; and an original Magna Charta is preserved in the Cottonian Library exhibiting marks of dilapidation.

Goethe sanctions, however, the use of *entdecken* in similar instances by speaking of the *Entdeckung* der Kupferstiche. *Bruges*, Brügge; *has—become*, say: *ist jetzt*; *manner*, Weise; *of magnitude*, say: *von Bedeutung*; *to execute*, ausführen. (a) *Render of painting*, by *zu malen*, because similar verbal forms in —*ing*, preceded by *of*, *instead of*, *for*, or *without*, are rendered in German by the *Supine*. (b) For *was* and *are* see n. 6 to Ext. 4.

32 Retain the Latin term *Urceola Elastica* with the original feminine gender and use for *is to be found* the present of the passive voice; *in abundance*, in großer Menge; for *in* see Ext. 24; *the Indian Archipelagus*, der indische Archipel (usually abbreviated from *Archipelagus*); *to be injured*, beschädigt werden; *yield by tapping*, durch Einschnitte...liefern; *caoutchouc*, Kautschuk, or usually Kautschuk; for *season* see p. 99, n. 11. (a) The expression *in abundance* is to be put after *Archipelago*, because *adverbial expressions of manner are placed after all other adverbial expressions*. (b) Construe the remaining clauses: 'can in

one season, without being injured, fifty to sixty pounds of caoutchouc yield by tapping.' (c) When *to* between two cardinal numerals denotes an amount approximately, it is rendered by *bis*. (d) Use *pounds* in the singular, because masculine or neuter nouns, being preceded by a numeral and employed as terms of weight, measure, or number remain unchanged.

33 *The Latin*, das Lateinische; for the position of *appears*, cf., n. a to Ext. 12; *to supersede*, verdrängen; *the old Gaelic speech*, das Altgälische; supply *es* before *could*; *to stand its ground*, sich behaupten; *the German*, das Deutsche.

34 *One day*, eines Tages; *at his tailor's*, bei seinem Schneider; *ready*, im Begriff; *to—measures*, als Maß zu zerschneiden; *an—Charta*, say ein Original der Magna Charta; *appendages*, Zubehör, (sing.); *seal*, Siegel; *signature*, Unterschrift; *to preserve*, aufbewahren; *Cottonian*, Cottonischen; *to exhibit*, here an sich tragen; *marks of dilapidation*, Spuren der Verfallung. (a) Construe 'when Sir Robert Cotton was one day at his tailor's, he discovered, &c.,' and

35. Practice must settle the habit of doing without reflecting on the rule.

36. During the eruption *from the crater* of the Tombora mountain, in Sumbawa, the darkness occasioned by the ashes in the day-time was so profound, that nothing equal to it was ever witnessed in the darkest night of Java.

37. A piece of caoutchouc or india-rubber is very elastic, but not perfectly so, for it becomes permanently elongated by stretching. Glass, on the contrary, is perfectly elastic, for it will retain no permanent bend; when drawn into a fine thread, it may be twisted round upon its axis many times without breaking, and when set free always returns to the point from which it set out. ✓

38. Dr. T. Fuller had such a wonderful memory that

place after *signatures* the words from *was* to *measures*. (b) Turn *his hand* by 'the hand' in accordance with the rule that the definite article is usually employed in German, (as is the case in Greek and French) instead of the possessive pronoun when the context clearly shows who the possessing object is. (c) Cf. for *is preserved*, Ext. 4, n. a, and for *exhibiting*, Int. p. xvi., b.

³⁵ Practice, Übung; to settle, here *verleihen*; habit, (i.e. aptitude,) *Fertigkeit*; of doing, *sagetwas zu vollbringen*; to reflect on, *nachdenken über*; rule (the precept or maxim), *Regel*. (a) Abstract nouns denoting actions require in German the definite article. (b) Cf. for the term, *without reflecting* Ext. 31, n. a.

³⁶ Eruption, *Ausbruch*; darkness, *Finsterniß*; to occasion, *verursachen*; by, *durch*; in the day-time, *am Tage*; profound, *tief*; that—witnessed, *wie man nie was Ähnliches... wahrgenommen*; dark, *dunkel*; of, here *auf*. (a) The above sentence does not begin with the subject, see Ext. 12, n. a. (b) Turn *occasioned by the ashes*, (which words qualify the term darkness) by 'the by the ashes occasioned,' and see Int. p. xiv., I.

(c) Render *ashes* in accordance with the rule that *names of material* are, commonly, not used in the plural.

(d) The above Extract refers to the eruption of the volcano of Tombora in 1815, when the ashes were wafted from the isle of Sumbawa to that of Java.

³⁷ India-rubber, *Gummi Elasticum*; perfectly, *vollkommen*; for, here *denn*; permanently, *bleibend*; by stretching, *durch Ausziehen*; on the contrary, here *hingegen*; to retain, *beibehalten*; bend, *Biegung*; when drawn into, *wenn man es zu... auszieht*; fine, here, *dünn*; thread, *Faden*; be—upon, *um... getreht werden*; many times, *vielmals*; to break, *zerbrechen*, when set free, *wenn es losgelassen wird*; returns, *sagt schnellst es... zurück*; point, *Punkt*; set out, *ausging*. (a) For *glass*, cf. Ext. 5, n. a. (b) Turn *it will retain* by 'it retains.' (c) For *when* see p. 41, n. 9. (d) When *may* is a synonym of *to be able*, it is rendered by *können*.

³⁸ Such a wonderful, *ein so außerordentliches*; render could by *im Stande war*; unconnected, *unzusammenhängend*; turn after—them by 'after he had heard them twice'; to recite, here *herfagen*; the—signs,

ne could repeat five hundred unconnected words after twice hearing them, and recite the whole of the signs in the principal thoroughfares of London after once passing through and back again.

39. It was the just boast of Schiller that in his country no Augustus, no Lorenzo, had watched over the infancy of poetry. The rich and energetic language of Luther, driven by the Latin from the schools of pedants, and by the French from the palaces of kings, had taken refuge among the people.*

40. The Philippine Islands were discovered by Magellan in the first voyage *that was made* round the world. They were first called the Archipelago of St. Lazarus: this was in the year 1520. In the year 1565 a Spanish

sämmtliche Schilder; *principal thoroughfares*, Hauptstraßen; *after — again*, nachdem er durch dieselben hin- und zurückgegangen war. If the activity expressed by a verb is represented as something which *can* or *should* be done, we use in German the supine. It is, therefore, required after *im* Stande sein, and should be used here with the verb *repeat* and *recite*. Dr. T. Fuller, the historian, lived from the year 1608 to 1661.

³⁹ It—Schiller, Schiller war mit Recht stolz darauf; *to watch over*, bewachen; *poetry*, Poesie; *energetic*, kraftvoll; *driven*, verdrängt; *by*, durch; *pedant*, Pedant; *the French*, das Französische; *taken refuge*, ihre Zuflucht genommen; *among*, here zu; *people*, Volk. When the word *country* refers to a man's land of nativity, we generally use in German the expressive term *Waterland*. The same is done in almost all Teutonic languages. Thus the Swedes speak of their Fädernesland, the Danes of

their Fædreland, &c.; Greek and Latin scholars will find analogous terms in *πατρίς*, *patria*, from which the Romance expressions *patria*, *patrie*, &c., currently used in Italy and France, are derived.

⁴⁰ *The Philippine Islands*, die Philippinen; *in*, here auf; *round*, used as a preposition, um; *colony*, Colonie; *to found*, gründen; *there*, daselbst; *command*, Anführung; *to name*, here benennen. (a) For *were discovered*, *were...called*, *was founded and were named*, cf. Ext. 4, note b. (b) Use the genitive of the def. article before *Legaspi*, because with *foreign proper names*, even if not ending in a sibilant, the case is sometimes pointed out by means of the def. article. (c) The prep. *of* is generally rendered by *von*, when the name of a place, but more especially of a country, follows the noun by which it is governed, as in the present instance: *Philip II. of Spain*.

* The above extract, from Macaulay's Essay on Frederick the Great, refers to Schiller's poem, "Die deutsche Muse," the first verses of which run—

'Kein Augustisch Alter blühte,
Keines Medicäers Güte
Lächelte der deutschen Kunst,' &c.

colony was founded there under the command of Legaspi, and the islands were named after Philip II. of Spain.

41. A bitter plant with wavy sea-green leaves has been taken from the sea-side, where it grew like wild charlock; it was transplanted into the garden, lost its saltness, and has become metamorphosed into two distinct vegetables, as unlike to each other as is each to the parent-plant—into the red-cabbage and the cauliflower.

42. Camoens, the celebrated poet of the *Lusiads*, was wrecked at the mouth of the river Mekon, and with difficulty reached the shore, swimming with one hand and bearing his poem above the water in the other, the only treasure which he had saved, and which was dearer to him than his life. ✓

43. Sir Humphry Davy relates, that a friend of his, having discovered under the burning sand of Ceylon the eggs of an alligator, had the curiosity to break one of

⁴¹ *Wavy*, (in botany) wellenförmig; *sea-green* seegrün; *sea-side*, Meeresküste; *like*, wie; *charlock* ist der general English name for *Wilder Senf* or *wilder Senf*; *to be transplanted*, verpflanzt werden; *saltness*, Salzgeschmack; for *distinct* see Ext. 17; *vegetables*, here Gemüsearten; supply 'which are,' before *as unlike* (so unähnlich); *as is each*, say: wie jede derselben. (a) Use for *has been taken* the passive imperf. of nehmen. (b) *Render has become metamorphosed* by the imperf. of sich verwandeln; the reflective form being, in German, preferred to the passive voice, when the agent from whom the activity proceeds is not mentioned. The plant alluded to in the above extract is the wild cabbage or *Brassica oleracea*.

⁴² *Celebrated*, berühmt; *Lusiads*, Lusiaden, pl.; *to be wrecked*, Schiffsbruch leiden; *mouth*, (of a river) Mündung; *Mekon* is a river in Cochin China; *with difficulty*, mit Mühe; *to reach*, erreichen; *shore*, Ufer; *with one*, say: mit der einen; *to bear*, here emporhalten; *poem*, Gedicht; *treasure*,

Schatz; *to save* i.e., 'to rescue,' retten; *dear*, theuer. (a) Place reached before with difficulty. (b) For *swimming* and *bearing*, cf. Int. p. xvii., g, and construe *swimming*—other: 'with the one hand swimming and in the other his poem,' after which clauses place the words *above the water* and *bearing*. (b) Camoens, the greatest Portuguese poet, was born in 1524. His great epic poem, *Os Lusiadas*, (i.e. 'the Lusitanians,' as the Portuguese are called) describes Vasco di Gama's expedition to India, and the brilliant exploits of his countrymen.

⁴³ *To relate*, erzählen; *turn that—under*, by 'that one of his friends who had discovered in;' *burning*, here glühend; retain the word *alligator*; *turn had—them* by 'from (aus) curiosity one of the same broke (zerbrach);' *came forth*, herausfroch; *perfect*, say: vollständig...ausgebildet; *passions*, here Triebe; *hatched*, ausgeheckt; *influence*, Einwirkung; *sun-beams*, Sonnenstrahlen; *it made towards the*, eilte er dem...zu; *proper*, eigentlich; *element*, Element; *when*

them, when a young alligator came forth perfect in its motions and its passions; for although hatched in the sand under the influence of the sunbeams, it made towards the water, its proper element: *when* hindered, it assumed a threatening aspect, and bit the stick presented to it.

44. Several of the British forests which are now marshes, were cut down at different periods by order of the English Parliament, because they harboured wolves and outlaws. Thus the Welsh woods were cut and burnt in the reign of Edward I., as were many of those in Ireland by Henry II., to prevent the natives from harbouring in them and harassing his troops.

45. A grain of musk is said to be divisible into three hundred and twenty quadrillions of parts, each of which is capable of affecting the olfactory nerve.

46. Our knowledge of the origin and affinities of European languages has been, within the last forty or fifty years, greatly increased and improved by the labours of German scholars.

hindered, aufgehalten; *to assume*, annehmen; *aspect*, Aussehen; supply 'in' after *bit* and render *presented* to it, by den man ihm vorhielt.

⁴⁴ *Several*, mehrere; *to cut (down)* a forest or wood, einen Wald umhauen; *period*, here Zeit; *by order*, auf Befehl; *to harbour* used transitively, denoting 'to give shelter,' is rendered by Zuflucht gewähren; when employed intransitively, denoting 'to seek shelter' it is translated by Zuflucht suchen; *Welsh*, wallisich; *Welsh woods* may also be turned by 'woods in Wales;' *to burn*, niederbrennen; turn *as—those* by 'as also many;' *to prevent*, verhindern; *natives*, Eingeborne; *to harass*, here belästigen. (a) For *in the reign* see Ext. 12. (b) The verb *verhindern* would here require the prep. *an*; cf. p. 97, n. 2.

⁴⁵ *Grain* (weight), Gran; *each of which*, von denen jeder; *to be capable*, können; *to affect*, here afficere, from

the Latin *afficere*; *olfactory nerve*, Geruchsnerv(c). (a) When the phrases *it is said*, *they say*, are used to report the assertion of others—like the Latin *dicitur*—they must be rendered by the requisite tense of *essen*. (b) *Of affecting* ought according to the rules given before to be rendered by the *Supine*; the infinitive without *zu* is, however, always required in German after the auxiliary verbs of mood können, mögen, dürfen, wollen, sollen, müssen, and also after a few other verbs, as *sehen*, *hören*, *finden*, &c. Cp. the English usage of omitting the prep. 'to' before infinitives after those verbs.

⁴⁶ *Knowledge*, Kenntniß; *Origin*, Ursprung; *affinities*, Verwandtschaft, *sing.*; transl. here *within* by *in*, or by *his*, greatly by *bedeutend*, increased by *bereichert* and improved by *erweitert*; *labour*, Arbeit; *scholar*, Gelehrte. When *by* is a synonym of 'through,' denoting the means

47. At the battle of Solway, in the time of Henry VIII., 1542, when the Scotch army, commanded by Oliver Sinclair, was routed, an unfortunate troop of horse driven by *their* fears, plunged into a morass, which instantly closed upon them. The tale was traditional, but *it* is now authenticated; a man and a horse in complete armour having been found by peat diggers in the place where it was always supposed the affair had happened. The skeleton of each was well preserved, and the different parts of the armour easily distinguished.

48. The works of Milton cannot be comprehended or enjoyed unless the mind of the reader co-operate with that of the writer.

49. The town of Guatemala was founded in 1742 on the side of a volcano, in a valley about three miles wide, opening on the South Sea. Nine years afterwards it was destroyed by an earthquake, and again in 1773, during an eruption of the volcano. The ground on which the town stood gaped open in deep fissures, until at length,

by which an effect is produced, it is generally rendered by *durch*.

⁴⁷ *At, in; the battle of Solway* is called in German *die Schlacht bei Solway Mosh; in the, zur; to command, befehligen; by, von; to be routed, zerstreut werden; a troop of horse, ein Trupp Reiter; to plunge, stürzen; instantly, hier sofort; to close upon, sich schließen über. The tale was traditional, say: das Ereigniß war als Sage bekannt; to be authenticated, als authentisch erwiesen; armour, Rüstung; peat digger, Torfgräber; it was always supposed, wo, wie man stets annahm; to happen, sich zutragen. The skeleton of each, say die beiden Skelette; to preserve, here erhalten; distinguished, transl. zu erkennen. (a) Begin the German version with *als (when)*. (b) The words *commanded by Oliver Sinclair*, qualify the expression *Scotch army*, cf. *Int. p. xiv., I.* (c) The word *fear* being an abstract noun which denotes a 'state' is used in*

German in the singular only. (d) Turn *a man, &c.*, by 'since a man and (sammt) a horse, &c. was found.' (e) The verb *had* may be left out in the translation, the omission of the auxiliary verbs *of tense* *haben* and *sein*, being sanctioned in dependent sentences, especially when occurring in compound tenses.

⁴⁸ *Work*, (literary composition) *Werk; to comprehend, verstehen; to enjoy, genießen; unless, wenn... nicht; mind, here Geist; writer, here Verfasser; to co-operate, zusammenwirken.* Cf. for *the—Milton*, *Ext. 11, n. a*, and for *be*, *Ext. 4, n. b*.

⁴⁹ *Side*, (of a hill, &c.) *Abhang; about, ungefähr; wide, here breit; opening on, das...gegenüber lag; to be destroyed, zerstört werden; again, here abermals; ground, Boden; to gape open, aufklaffen; fissure, Spalte; to open, here sich öffnen, comp. the French 's'ouvrir,' with all its treasures, sammt all ihren Schätzen:*

after five days, an abyss opened, and the city with all its riches and eight thousand families was swallowed up. Every vestige of its former existence was entirely obliterated, and the spot is now indicated by a frightful desert four leagues distant from the present town.

50. In modern times little may be thought of the gratifications arising from motion. Yet we read that the greatest of the Greeks and even of the Romans, studied elegance in their attitudes and movements. Their apparel favoured that display of grace, while their exercises and games contributed to encourage elegance of movement. The dances they performed were not exhibitions of mere exuberance of spirit and activity. It was their pride to combine harmony in the motion of the body and limbs with majesty of gait.

to be swallowed up, verschlungen werden; *vestige*, Spur; *to be obliterated*, vertilgt werden; *spot*, Stelle; *indicated by*, bezeichnet durch; *desert*, Wüste; *leagues*, Meilen; *distant*, entfernt. (a) For *was founded*, cf. Ext. 4., n. b. (b) If the prep. *in* before the date of a year is expressed in German, the words 'the year' must be supplied after it. (b) The words *three miles wide* qualify the term *valley*, cf. Int. p. xiv. I.

⁵⁰ *Modern*, say *neurer*; *little—of*, mag man...gering achten; *gratifications*, Genuß, *sing.*; *to arise from*, entstehen aus; *of the Greeks*, unter den Griechen; *Roman*, Römer; *to study*, here sich befeßigen; which

verb requires the genitive; *elegance*, Anmuth; *attitude*, Stellung; *movement*, Bewegung; *apparel*, Kleidung; *display of grace*, Entfaltung von Grazie; *exercises*, here Leibesübungen; *contributed*, say dazu beitrugen; *to encourage*, here befördern; *to perform*, (a dance, &c.) aufführen; *exhibitions—activity*, Kundgebungen von bloßem Uebergefühls des Daseins und der Thatkraft; *it—pride*, sie waren stolz darauf; *harmony*, die Harmonie; *limb*, Glied; *majesty*, Majestät; *gait*, Gang. (a) When the word *times* is employed in a general sense to express a historical period, it is used in German in the singular only. (b) Cf. for *motion*, Ext. 35. n. a.

PART II.

I.

THE DEFENCE OF A FORD.

1.

The good king, Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and vigilant,¹ had received *some* information of the intention of this party to come upon him suddenly and by night. Accordingly he quartered² his little troop of sixty men on the side of a deep and swift-running river that had very steep and rocky banks. There was but one ford by which this river could be crossed in that neighbourhood,³ and that ford was deep and narrow, so that two men could scarcely get through abreast. The path which led upwards from the water's edge⁴ to the *top* of the bank was extremely narrow and difficult.

2.

x Bruce caused⁵ his men to lie down to take some sleep

¹ *Vigilant*, vorsichtig; *information*, Kunde; *intention*, Vorhaben; *party*, Partei; *to come upon*, here überfallen; *by night*, zur Nachtzeit, or in der Nacht. The party alluded to were a number of Galloway men, who set out to attack Bruce by surprise, taking with them some bloodhounds in order to track his steps.

² *To quarter*, in the sense of 'to station,' stationiren. Cf. for *men*, Ext. 32, n. d; render *on the side* of simply by the prep. bei; *swift-running*, reißend; turn *that had*, &c. by 'whose banks (Ufer) were, &c.'

³ Turn *there* — *neighbourhood* briefly by 'the river had only one ford in that neighbourhood' (Gegent). *Narrow*, schmal.

⁴ *Edge*, (border) Rand; *difficult*, here schwierig. Turn *water's edge* by 'edge of the water,' because the genitive ought in common prose not to precede the word which it qualifies; cf. Ext. 11 n. a.

⁵ *To cause*, synonymous with 'to order,' 'to make,' &c. is rendered by lassen; *men*, here and further on Leute; *to lie down*, sich niederlegen; turn *to—sleep* by 'to sleep a little;' and *distant*, by 'which (to be placed before about) distant was;' *attendant*, Begleiter; *to pass*, (through a ford) gehen. Render *they* by er, because the word *enemy*, used as a military term, generally occurs in German in the singular only.

at a place about half a mile distant from the river, while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford, through which the enemy must ~~needs~~ pass before they could come to the place where King Robert's men were lying. He stood *for* some time looking¹ at the ford, and thinking how easily the enemy might be kept from passing there, ~~provided~~ it was bravely defended, when he heard at a distance the ~~baying~~ of a hound, which was always coming nearer and nearer. This was the ~~blood-~~hound² which was tracing the king's steps to the ford, and the two hundred Galloway men were along with the animal, and guided by it. Bruce at first thought³ of going back to awaken his men; but then he reflected that it might be only some shepherd's dog.

3.

So⁴ he stood and listened; and by and by, as the cry of the hound came nearer, he began to hear a trampling of horses and the voices of men and the ringing and clattering of armour, and then he was sure the enemy were coming to the river side. Then the king thought, "If I go back

¹ *Looking at*, sich besehend; *thinking*, here bei sich denkend; *might be kept*, davon abgehalten werden könnte; *turn from passing there* by 'to go through the same,' and *provided* by 'if,' to be followed by the expletive *nur*; *to defend*, (a place) vertheidigen; *when*, als; *at a distance*, in der Ferne; *the baying*, das Bellen, because the English verbal forms in *ing* used substantively, are generally rendered in German by the simple infinitive used as a neuter noun.

² The German expression for *bloodhound* is: Schweißhund, because the blood of wounded animals is called with 'sportsmen' Schweiß. *To trace steps*, die Spuren verfolgen; Render the expression *Galloway men*, *men of Galloway* by die Männer von Galloway. *Along with*, here bei; *turn guided by it*, by 'were guided (geführt) by the same.'

³ When *to think* expresses intention or purpose, it is rendered by *getenken*, and followed by the *Supine*. *To reflect*, sich überlegen; render here *might* by dürfte, because it expresses a supposed possibility; *shepherd's-dog* Schäferhund.

⁴ Render *so* by also, and supply *so* after *stood*; *to listen*, (hearken) horchen; *by and by* as, say bald darauf wie. Use for *the cry*, das Geschell, which is the frequentative substantive of *bellen*, and form in the same manner frequentative nouns from *trampeln*, for *trampling*, from *flirren* for *ringing* and from *rasseln* for *clattering*. Render here *men* by Menschen; *then—sure*, by dann ward es ihm zur Gewißheit, and supply *so* before *the enemy were* (see p. 14, n. 5); *river side*, Ufer.

to give my men the alarm,¹ these Galloway men will get through the ford without opposition; and that would be a pity since it is a place so advantageous to make defence against them." He therefore sent his followers² to waken his men, and remained alone by the bank of the river.

4.

In the meanwhile³ the noise and trampling of the horses increased, and the moon being bright, Bruce beheld the glancing arms of about two hundred men, who came down to the opposite bank of the river. The men of Galloway, on their part,⁴ saw but one solitary figure guarding the ford, and the foremost *of them* plunged into the river without minding him. But as they could only pass the ford one by one,⁵ *the* Bruce, who stood high above them on the bank where they were to land, killed the foremost *man* with a thrust of his long spear, and with a second thrust stabbed the horse. In the confusion five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down the current,⁶ were drowned. The rest were terrified and drew back. But when the Galloway men looked⁷ again and saw that they were opposed by only one man, they themselves being so many, they cried out that their honour would be lost for ever if they

¹ *To—alarm*, um meine Leute zu den Waffen zu rufen. Cf. for the next clause the note to Ext. 7. *To get*, here kommen; *without opposition*, ungehindert; *that—pity*, daß wäre Schade. Render *it* by dieselbe, cf. for *so advantageous* (günstig) which qualifies *place*, Int. p. xiv., I. and transl. *to—them* briefly by zur Vertheibigung.

² *Followers*, Begleiter; *to waken*, wecken; use the supine; *by the*, am.

³ *In the meanwhile*, unterdessen; *to increase*, zunehmen; for *being*, cf. Int. p. xvi., c; *to behold*, erblicken; for *men*, cf. Ext. 32, note d; *opposite* here jenseitige.

⁴ *On their part*, ihrerseits; *but*, here nur; *solitary figure*, einzelne Gestalt; *to guard*, bewachen; see Int. p. xviii.; *the foremost*, Vorderste; *to mind*, (any one) sich um (Jemand) kümmern; see note a to Ext. 31.

⁵ *One by one*, je einer; *to land*, here ans Land steigen; *to stab*, erstechen.

⁶ *Place having—current*, von der Strömung fortgerissen after *were drowned*, which latter verb is here used intransitively.

⁷ *Looked*, say: hinblickten; turn *they—man* by 'that only one man stood opposite (gegenüber) to them;' *they themselves being*, während ihrer... waren *for ever*, auf immer; *did—way*,

did not force their way, and encouraged each other, with loud cries, to plunge through and assault him. But by this time¹ the king's soldiers came up to his assistance, and the Galloway men retreated and gave up their enterprise.—WALTER SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*.

II.

SCHILLER'S FLIGHT FROM STUTTGART.²

Schiller's embarrassments³ became more pressing⁴ than ever.⁵ With the natural feeling of a young author,⁶ he⁷ had ventured to go in secret⁸ and witness the first representation⁹ of his tragedy at Mannheim. His incognito

say: nicht den Uebergang erzwingen; cries, Geschrei, sing.; to plunge through, durchzuwaten.

¹ Avoid the Anglicism bei dieser Zeit for *by this time* which should be rendered by jetzt or nun; or here by the more emphatic schon; came—assistance, kamen... demselben zur Hülfe herbei.

² For the benefit of those who are not acquainted with the life of Schill, we will briefly add that, after having been educated at the Military Academy at Stuttgart, later called „Die Karlschule," after the founder, Duke Karl of Würtemberg, he became military surgeon, and continued to be kept under strict military discipline. Having been refused permission to visit Mannheim in order to witness the performance of his first drama, *Die Räuber*, he did so clandestinely, and was put under arrest for a fortnight, and forbidden to write in future on anything except on medicine. He then threw up his

post and freed himself by flight.

³ Embarrassment, Verlegenheit.

⁴ Pressing, dringent.

⁵ When the adverb *ever* signifies 'at any time' past or future, it is rendered by jemals, or the more expressive je. Compare the French *jamais* and the Latin *unquam*.

⁶ Author, Autor or Schriftsteller.

⁷ When the object of a sentence is a supine or a whole clause, and the leading verb in the principal sentence governs the accusative case, we generally add—to that principal sentence—the accusative of the pronoun es, in order to supply the direct object; more particularly when the emphasis is laid on the governing verb: e.g. Wer wagt es, Rittersmann oder Knapp, zu tauchen in diesen Schlund? *Who ventures, knight, or squire, to dive into this gulf?* *

⁸ To—secret, sich heimlich aufzumachen; to witness, i.e. to see by personal presence, beimohnen.

⁹ Representation, here Aufführung.

* According to our opinion, the pronoun *es*, in the above application might properly be called the *grammatical object*.

did not conceal him ; he was put under arrest during a week¹ for this offence ; and as the punishment did not deter him from again transgressing² *in a similar manner*, he learned³ that it was in contemplation to try more rigorous measures with him. Dark hints⁴ were given to him of some exemplary⁵ as well as imminent severity ; and Dalberg's aid, the sole hope of averting⁶ it by quiet means, was distant and dubious. Schiller saw himself reduced to extremities.⁷ Beleaguered⁸ with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, roused to the highest pitch of indignation,⁹ yet forced to keep silence¹⁰ and wear the face of patience, he could endure this maddening¹¹ constraint no longer.

He resolved to be free, at whatever risk ;¹² to abandon advantages which he could not buy at such a price ; to quit his stepdame¹³ home, and go forth, though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market of life.¹⁴ Some¹⁵ foreign duke or prince was arriving at Stuttgart ; and all *the people* were in movement, occupied with seeing the spectacle of his entrance : Schiller seized this opportunity of retiring from¹⁶ the city, careless whither he went, so¹⁷ he got beyond the reach of turnkeys and

¹ *He—week*, ihm wurde. . . eine Woche Arrest auferlegt ; *offence*, Vergehen.

² *When to transgress*, is used transitively, it must be rendered by sich eines Vergehens schuldig machen. Use here desselben instead of eines.

³ *To learn*, here erfahren. Transl. *it was in contemplation* by man beabsichtigte.

⁴ *Hint*, here Andeutung ; *given* = made.

⁵ *Of some exemplary*, von einer exemplarischen ; *imminent*, nahe bevorstehend.

⁶ *To avert*, abwenden ; use Supine.

⁷ *Reduced to extremities*, auf's Äußerste getrieben.

⁸ The expression *beleaguered* must here be rendered freely, since we cannot say in German that a man is von Abnungen belagert or umgeben. The term heimgesucht, 'afflicted,' would here be a suitable expres-

sion. *Distresses*, Nothen ; *on*, von.

⁹ *Roused—indignation*, bis auf den höchsten Grad entrüstet.

¹⁰ *To keep silence*, still zu schweigen ; *face*, here Maske.

¹¹ *Maddening*, transl. ihn bis zur Raserei treibenden.

¹² *At—risk*, auf jede Gefahr hin *abandon* = give up.

¹³ *Stepdame*, stiefmütterlich ; *to go forth*, fortzuwandern ; *to seek*, here versuchen.

¹⁴ We use in German the metaphor der Jahrmarkt des Lebens.

¹⁵ *Some*, irgend ein ; *occupied with seeing*, nur darauf bedacht . . . mit anzusehen ; *entrance*, Einzug.

¹⁶ *Of—from*, aus . . . zu flüchten ; *careless*, unbefümmert.

¹⁷ *So*, used in the sense of 'provided that,' is rendered by *wenn nur* ; *got—reach*, aus dem Bereich . . . fäme.

grand-dukes and commanding officers. It was in the month of October, 1782. * * *

Schiller was¹ in his twenty-third year when he left Stuttgart. He says he "went empty away²—empty in purse and hope." The future was,³ indeed, sufficiently dark before him. * * * Yet his situation, though gloomy enough, was not entirely without its brighter side.⁴ He was now a free man—free, however poor.—CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*.

III.

SILHOUETTES.

Etienne de Silhouette was Minister of State in France in⁵ 1759. The treasury⁶ was in an exhausted condition, and Silhouette endeavoured to save the country by excessive economy. At first the Parisians pretended⁷ to take his advice, merely to laugh at him:⁸ they cut their coats shorter, and wore them without sleeves; they turned⁹ their gold snuff-boxes into rough wooden ones;¹⁰ and the new-fashioned portraits were now only profiles¹¹ traced by a black pencil round the shadow of a profile cast by candle on white paper.¹² These portraits retained¹³ since those times the name of Silhouette.

¹ Was = stood.

² Away, hinweg; in, an. These are Schiller's own words.

³ Was, say: lag.

⁴ Its brighter side, Lichtseite.

⁵ Cf. Ext. 49, n. b; Ext. 4, n. a.

⁶ Treasury, Schatzkammer; was, befand sich; condition, Zustand; by, durch; economy, Sparsamkeit.

⁷ To pretend, sich stellen; to take = as if they...followed.

⁸ To—him, um sich über ihn lustig zu machen.

⁹ To turn into, vertauschen mit.

¹⁰ When one is used after adjectives, as a substitute for a noun

previously mentioned, or merely understood, it is suppressed in German. Rough, roh.

¹¹ Were—profiles, bestanden nun bloß aus Profilen.

¹² Traced—paper. The above sentence must be given in German in a thoroughly different form, viz. 'which with a pencil round the through a candle on white paper cast shadow of a profile were traced' (gezeichnet). For round, cf. Ext. 40; on, auf governs here the accusative.

¹³ To retain, beibehalten; for times, cf. Ext. 50, n. a.

IV.

PERHAPS IT WAS HIS UNCLE.

We were towing¹ through high reeds this morning, the men invisible, and the rope mowing over the high tops of the grass,² when the noise disturbed a hippopotamus from his slumber, and he was immediately perceived close to the boat. He was about half-grown,³ and in an instant about twenty men⁴ jumped into the water in search of him, thinking him a mere baby;⁵ but as he suddenly appeared, and was about three times as large as they had expected, they were not very eager to close. However, the reis⁶ Diabb pluckily led the way,⁷ and seized him by the hind leg, when⁸ the crowd of men rushed in, and we had a grand tussle. Ropes were thrown from the vessel, and nooses *were* quickly slipped over his⁹ head; but he had the best of the struggle,¹⁰ and was dragging the people into the open river. I was therefore obliged to end¹¹ the sport by putting¹² a ball through his head. He was scored all over¹³ by the tusks of some other hippopotamus that had been bullying¹⁴ him. The men declared that his father had thus misused¹⁵ him; others were of opinion that it was his mother; and the argument ran high, and

¹ *To tow*, bugfired; *reeds*, Schilf, *sing.*; *mowing*, say: fuhr ... dahin.

² *Tops—grass*, Grasspitzen.

³ *Half-grown*, halb ausgewachsen.

⁴ *About...men*, an...Mann; *in—him*=in order to seek it.

⁵ *Thinking—baby*, da sie es für ein bloßes Kind hielten; *appeared*, say: auftauchte; *eager to close*, heftig es anzugreifen.

⁶ *Reis* means in Turkish the captain of a merchantman.

⁷ *Pluckily—way*, ging mutig voran.

⁸ *When—in*, worauf die Männer nachstürzten.

⁹ *Slipped over his*, ihm ... über den ... gezogen.

¹⁰ *To have the best of a struggle*, die Oberhand bekommen.

¹¹ *To end*, here ein Ende machen; *sport*, Jagd.

¹² *By putting*, indem ich ... jagte; *ball*, Kugel; *his*=the.

¹³ *Was—over*, war über und über wie gefeßt; *tusk*, Schnauze.

¹⁴ There is no single equivalent in German for the comprehensive term *to bully*. The expressions given in the Dictionaries are mostly quite inappropriate. We should suggest here the idiomatic phrase *daß ihm übel mitgespielt hatte*.

¹⁵ *To misuse*, mißhandeln; *to be of opinion*, der Meinung sein.

became hot.¹ These Arabs have an extraordinary taste² for arguments upon the most trifling points. I have frequently known my men argue³ throughout the greater part of the night, and recommence the same argument on the following morning. These debates generally end in a fight; and in the present instance the excitement of the hunt only added to⁴ the heat of the argument.

They at length agreed to⁵ refer it to me,⁵ and both parties approached, vociferously advancing their theories;⁶ one half persisting⁷ that the young hippo had been bullied by his father, and the others adhering to the mother as the cause.⁸ I being⁹ referee, suggested⁹ that "perhaps it was his uncle." "Wah Illahi sahé!" (By Allah, it is true!) Both parties were satisfied with the suggestion.¹⁰ Dropping their theory, they became practical, and fell to¹¹ with knives and axes to cut up the cause of the argument.—SIR S. W. BAKER, *The Albert N'Yanza*.

V.

A ROMAN STRATAGEM.¹²

The place near the Mulucha was a rocky eminence in the midst of a plain. On the summit¹³ there was just room enough for a small town. The sides¹⁴ of this hill-

¹ Turn *the*—hot by 'the dispute (Streit) became loud and violent.

² *Taste*, here Vorliebe; *argument*, Discussion; *trifling*, geringfügig.

³ *I—argue*, ich habe es oft erlebt, daß meine Leute...disputirten; *debates*, Debatten; *instance*, Fall.

⁴ *Only—to*, erhöheten...nur noch.

⁵ *To—me*, mich zu befragen.

⁶ *Advancing their theories*, indem sie ihre Meinungen...vorbrachten.

⁷ *Render one half persisting*, by die Einen bestanden darauf

⁸ *And—cause*. More briefly, in German, während Andere die Mutter als die Ursache angaben.

⁹ *Being*, say als; *suggested*, meinte.

¹⁰ *Suggestion*, Ansicht; *dropping*, indem sie...aufgaben.

¹¹ *Fell to*, machten sich daran; *to cut up*, zu zerlegen.

¹² The above is an episode from the famous Jugurthine war, at the time when Marius was in command of the Roman army in Africa. The learned author from whose work the extract is taken conjectures that the siege of the fort near the Mulucha, (unweit der Mulucha) took place in 106 B.C.

¹³ *Summit*, Gipfel; *just*, gerade.

¹⁴ *Sides*, here Abhänge.

fort¹ were steep and very high, and there was only one narrow approach to the town, for all the rest² of the mountain was as precipitous as if it had been made so by the hand of man.³ This place contained Jugurtha's money,⁴ and Marius was very eager to get possession of it. But this was not an easy undertaking. The place had sufficient men⁵ to defend it, a good supply of provisions⁶ and a spring of water.⁶ It could not be attacked in the usual way, by raising earth-banks and towers,⁷ and employing⁸ other military contrivances. The⁹ single road by which the place was reached⁹ was not only very narrow, but steep on both sides, either naturally so,¹⁰ or¹¹ the ground had been cut away. * * *

Many days passed, and nothing was done, when a lucky accident¹² helped Marius out of his difficulty. A Ligurian,¹³ who belonged to the auxiliary cohorts,¹⁴ and

¹ *Hill-fort*, Bergfeste; *there—approach*, nur ein schmaler Weg führte.

² *The rest*, der übrige Theil.

³ *Translate hand of man*, by the compound word Menschenhand. The student of German will soon discover that that language possesses greater facilities in compounding words forming one notion into a single term than any other modern language. Great vigour and poetic colouring is thus imparted to words which, when merely linked together by means of adverbs and prepositions, produce no particular effect; and as an additional advantage afforded by these compounds, may be mentioned the possibility of avoiding the frequent repetition of the genitive relation, a drawback from which even the Latin is not free. Nobody should, however, coin new compound terms without having mastered the language. Special rules and hints for forming compound substantives will be given in the course of the present work.

⁴ *Money*, say: *Schatz*; *eager*, begierig; *to—it*, sich dessen zu bemächtigen; *not an*, kein.

⁵ *Sufficient men*, hinlängliche Mannschaft. ⁶ *A—provisions*, Vorräthe genug; *spring of water*, Brunnen.

⁷ *By—towers*, durch die Errichtung von Dämmen und Thürmen. The military expressions are *Vertheibigungsdämme* and *Wandelsthürme*, i.e. 'walking towers.'

⁸ *Employing*, transl. durch die Anwendung; *contrivance*, Vorrichtung.

⁹ *Turn the—reached by* 'the only way which led to the place.'

¹⁰ *Naturally so*, say: von Natur.

¹¹ *Supply the conjunction weil*, to cut away, here abtragen.

¹² *Accident*, here Zufall.

¹³ There are various forms in German for the proper name *Ligurian*, all of which have the same form in both numbers. In accordance with the Greek *Λίγυες* we have the word *Ligyer*; whilst the forms *Ligurier*, *Ligurer*, and *Ligurianer*, are derived from the Latin *Ligur*.

¹⁴ The expression *auxiliary cohorts* may be turned in German into one compound term by omitting the letter *y* in the first, and replacing *s* by *en* in the second, word.

had gone out of the camp to fetch water, saw some snails crawling¹ among the rocks on the back² of the hill-fort. He picked up one or two; and as he went on picking more,³ he came at last almost to the top of the hill. Being⁴ curious to reach the very⁵ summit, he made his way up⁶ with some difficulty, and had a full view of the flat on which the town was built; for all *the* Numidians⁷ were engaged on the opposite side, where the fight was going on.⁸ Having well examined⁹ the place, and carefully observed¹⁰ the way down, he reported his discovery to Marius, and urged him to make an attempt¹¹ on the fort by the part¹² where he had climbed up, offering to lead the way. Marius sent a few men who were about him, *and* the Ligurian with them,¹³ to examine the track that had been discovered. The reports of the men varied.¹⁴ Some said that the thing was¹⁵ easy, and others that it was difficult. However, the general had some confidence that the plan would do.¹⁶ Accordingly, he selected five trumpeters and hornblowers,¹⁷ the most active¹⁸ that he could find, and four centurions¹⁹ to look after them. * * *

The little company²⁰ were directed to obey the Ligurian as their²¹ guide, and the next day was appointed for the

¹ Cf. Int. p. xviii.

² *Back*, Rückseite.

³ 'Turn *he*—more, by 'whilst he picked up always more.'

⁴ See Int. p. xvi.c; curious, begierig.

⁵ The word *very*, in the sense in which it is used here, must be rendered in German by selbst.

⁶ *Made—up*=went up.

⁷ *Numidian*, Numidier.

⁸ *Was going on*, stattfand.

⁹ *Having well examined*, say: nachdem er...genau besichtigt.

¹⁰ *Carefully observed*, say: sich...gut gemerkt hatte; *down*, hereinunter.

¹¹ *Attempt* = attack.

¹² *By the part*, von der Seite aus. Two prepositions are frequently used in German, as is the case here, in order to express direction, or the course of a motion. ..

¹³ Render *with them* by sammt, placing this preposition before the words *the Ligurian*.

¹⁴ *Varied*, lauteten verschieden, i.e. 'sounded contradictory.'

¹⁵ See page 29, note 3.

¹⁶ The verb *to do* is here a synonym of 'to succeed.'

¹⁷ The Romans are known to have had two kinds of military musicians, viz. trumpeters and hornblowers.

¹⁸ *Active*, here energisch.

¹⁹ The plural of *Centurio* is, in German, *Centurios*, or more usually *Centurionen*; *to—them*, auf sie Acht zu geben.

²⁰ *Company*, here Truppe; *were directed*, turn by 'received the order;' *to obey*, here folgen.

²¹ Use here the dative.

ascent. The snail-picker¹ had no doubt often climbed his native rocks and mountains; but his companions were less expert than himself. However, after a good deal of trouble and much fatigue,² they reached the summit, at the back of the town. They found all quiet, for the men, as on previous occasions, were fighting with the Romans on the opposite side. ~~X~~ Marius had kept the Numidians actively engaged all that day³ up to the time when he was informed that the Ligurian and his party had reached the summit of the hill. He then came out from under the vineæ,⁴ and cheering⁵ his men, ordered them to advance to the wall with their⁶ shields interlaced over their heads in the manner which the Romans named "testudo," or tortoise. At the same time the enemy were⁷ assailed with missiles from the engines, and with arrows and slings. The Numidians, who had often destroyed and burnt the vineæ, did not fight from the walls, but⁸ confidently came out in front of them.⁹ While the battle was raging, all at once the sound of horns and trumpets was heard at the back of the town. The women and children, who had crowded to¹⁰ the front to see the fight, fled back in alarm; they were followed by those who were nearest to the wall;¹¹ and at last all the Numidians turned their backs.¹² The Romans pressed upon them,¹³

¹ *Snail-picker*, Schneefensammler; *native*, here heimathlich. The Italian district formerly called 'Liguria' is traversed by the Maritime Alps and the Apennines. *Climbed*, erklommen.

² *After—fatigue*, nach vieler Mühe und Anstrengung.

³ *Had—day*, hatte die Numidier den ganzen Tag im Kampf beschäftigt.

⁴ The Latin term *vineæ* may be rendered by Lauben- or Laufganghütten, or by the more expressive Laufhallen, i.e. running halls.

⁵ *Cheering* = encouraging.

⁶ Turn with *their* by 'the;' *interlaced*, transl. zusammengehalten.

⁷ Use the singular number.

⁸ When the adversative conjunction *but* merely limits the an-

tecedent, it must be rendered by *aber*; when, however, it denies entirely the antecedent, it is to be translated by *sondern*, which was in Middle High German 'sunder,' a form still existing in English, with a cognate signification.

⁹ *Confidently—them*, rühten mutig vor dieselben hinaus.

¹⁰ *To crowd to*, strömen nach which, being a verb denoting motion, is conjugated with *sein*; *alarm*, Be-
fürzung.

¹¹ Turn *they—wall* by 'those who were nearest to the wall followed them.'

¹² *Turned their backs* = fled.

¹³ *Pressed upon them*, drangen auf sie ein.

and passing over¹ *the bodies* of the killed and wounded, made their way² to the wall without stopping to plunder,³ as we are told,⁴ though we cannot conceive⁵ that a poor Numidian had anything upon him that was worth taking.⁶
—GEORGE LONG, *Decline of the Roman Republic*. x

VI.

A SIGN OF THE TIMES.

There was,⁷ at all events, one class by which the memory of Joseph II. was long and fondly cherished;⁸ and it was that to the sympathies of which he would have best loved to make his appeal.⁹ The Austrian peasantry¹⁰ of German blood are *at once* an eminently loyal race, and one on which¹¹ affection and kindness are rarely thrown away. They were never misled in their judgment of him. Even when¹² kneeling before the carriage of the pope,¹³ they had no idea¹⁴ that they were

¹ *Passing over*, indem sie über... dahin schritten.

² *Made their way*, kamen sie.

³ *Without—plunder*, ohne sich mit Plündern aufzuhalten.

⁴ *To tell* belonging to that class of verbs mentioned in Ext. 22, note b, we cannot use it in the passive voice in German unless we employ it impersonally; as, *I am told*, mir wird gesagt. Here we might render *as we are told* by wie uns berichtet wird.

⁵ *Though—conceive*, obwohl wir uns nicht denken können; upon him, bei sich.

⁶ *That—taking*, daß des Nehmens werth gewesen wäre.

⁷ The impersonal phrases *there is*, *there was*, are rendered by es gibt, es gab, when existence is to be expressed in an indefinite manner,

as is the case here (compare the French *il y a*); but if existence is to be expressed in a definite manner, we must use the corresponding form of the verb sein.

⁸ *By—cherished*, bei der Joseph der Zweite lange in theurem Andenken stand.

⁹ *Render to—appeal*, by an deren Sympathieer am liebsten hätte appelliren mögen.

¹⁰ *Peasantry* = peasants; *blood*, here Abstammung; *a—race*, eine außerordentlich loyale Rasse.

¹¹ *And—which*, bei der.

¹² See page 41, note 9.

¹³ Pope Pius VI. visited Vienna in 1782 with a view to persuade the emperor to desist from his ecclesiastical reforms.

¹⁴ *No idea*, transl. keine Idee davon.

assuming an attitude of opposition to¹ their friend and emperor. No royal name lives among them at this day in reverential tradition so truly² as that of Kaiser Joseph.

Their estimate³ of him cannot be better expressed than in the simple apologue⁴ which is still current in Austria. The peasantry of a Styrian⁵ village are met⁶ to discuss the news of Joseph's death. They will not believe it.⁷ It is a lie of the Court nobles,⁸ the lawyers, the lazy friars. While they are debating,⁹ information is brought of the arrival, bit by bit,¹⁰ of the old order of things: the Carthusians¹¹ have returned to the neighbouring abbey; the Capuchins have resumed their rounds;¹² the Forstmeister¹³ and the gamekeeper have reoccupied¹⁴ their lodges; and the¹⁵ steward is sitting at the receipt¹⁵ of feudal dues. The oldest peasant rises and takes off his hat: "Then Joseph is dead indeed; may Heaven have mercy¹⁶ on his soul."—H. MERIVALE, *Historical Studies*.

¹ *An—to*, eine feindliche Stellung gegen; *royal*, here fürstlich.

² *Lives—truly*, erfreut sich bei ihnen bis auf diesen Tag einer solchen traditionellen Ehrfurcht.

³ If we do not wish to render the above sentence freely, we must translate the term *estimate* by *Meinung*, expressed by bezeichnet, and turn in by 'through.'

⁴ *Apologue*, Sage; *is—current*, noch im Umlauf ist.

⁵ *Styrian*, steierisch.

⁶ Use the perfect of sich versammeln; *to discuss*, besprechen.

⁷ Translate this and the following it by the neuter pronoun, the same referring to a statement in general.

⁸ *Court nobles* = courtiers.

⁹ *To debate*, debattiren; *information*, die Nachricht.

¹⁰ *The—bit*, say: die allmähliche Einführung; *order*, here Ordnung.

¹¹ *Carthusians*, Karthäuser.

¹² *Have—rounds*, machen wieder ihre Runden.

¹³ The Germans in Austria use commonly for Forstmeister the term Waldmeister, which expression, however, might be objected to because it is the name of some plants, more particularly of the *Asperula odorata* or 'woodroof.' For the term *gamekeeper* there is in German no general expression which would denote the same rank in all parts of Germany. It may often be rendered by Förster, and in the present instance by Jäger.

¹⁴ *To reoccupy*, wieder Besitz nehmen (von); *lodge*, here Försterhaus.

¹⁵ *The—receipt*, der Verwalter beaufsichtigt die Einnahmen; *feudal*, feudal; *dues*, Abgaben.

¹⁶ *May—have mercy*. Use the present conjunctive (subjunctive) of sich erbarmen, this mood being required in clauses containing a prayer, request, wish, hope, &c.

VII.

THE SHAKERS'¹ DINNER.

These Shakers dine in silence.² Brothers and sisters dine² in a common³ room, at tables ranged⁴ in a line, a few feet⁵ apart. They eat at six in the morning,⁶ at noon,⁷ at six in the evening; following⁷ in this respect a rule which is all but uniform⁸ in America, especially in the western parts of this continent, from the Mississippi River to the Pacific Ocean. They rally to⁹ the sound of a bell; file¹⁰ into the eating-room in a single line, women going¹⁰ up to one end of the room, men to the other, when¹¹ they drop on their knees for a short and silent prayer; sit down and eat, helping¹² each other to the food. Not a word is¹³ spoken, unless a brother should need some help from a brother, a sister from a sister.¹⁴

¹ The *Shakers* are a religious sect in America, the chief home of which is the village of Mount Lebanon, situated in the upper country of the Hudson River. The English term *Shaker* may be retained in German, although it is translated by some writers by the coined expression *Schütter-Quäfer*, or the more euphonic *Zitterer*.

² *Dine in silence*, essen schweigend zu Mittag; *dine*, speisen.

³ *Common* is here to be rendered by *gemeinschaftlich*; the simple form *gemein* would signify 'mean.'

⁴ Turn *ranged*, &c., by 'which are ranged (aufgestellt) in a line, (Reihe), some feet apart, (von einander).'

⁵ Cf. Ext. 32, note d.

⁶ Similar adverbial expressions are expressed in German by the genitive case, with or without the definite article, when they denote an habitual occurrence of an action.

⁷ *At noon*, um die Mittagsstunde; turn *following* by 'they follow; respect, here *Sinficht*.

⁸ Turn *a-uniform* by 'a custom which is almost general.'

⁹ *To rally to*, sich versammeln auf.

¹⁰ *To file*, here sich begeben; *single*, einfach; *women going*=the women go; place *end-room* after *other*.

¹¹ *When*, worauf.

¹² There is no single equivalent for the expression *to help*, and its derivatives, in the sense of 'to present to at table.' It may be rendered by sich bedienen, anbieten, or reichen. The last term should be used here. *food*, see p. 65, n. 6.

¹³ See Extr. 4, note b.

¹⁴ In accordance with the remark made in the last note but one, we must turn the above by 'except when (außer wenn) a brother from a brother, or a sister from a sister, should want something to be reached' (etwas gereicht haben wollte).

A whisper serves.¹ No one² gossips with her neighbour, for every one is busy with her own affairs. Even the help that any one may need is given and taken³ without thanks;⁴ such forms of courtesy⁵ and politeness not being considered necessary in a family of saints. ✕

Elder⁶ Frederick sits at the end, not at the head, of one table;⁷ Elderess Antoinette at the other end. The food,⁷ though it is very good of its⁸ kind, and very well cooked,⁹ is simple, being⁹ wholly, or almost wholly, produce of the earth; tomatoes, roast apples, peaches, potatoes, squash,¹⁰ hominy, boiled corn, and the like. The grapes are excellent, reminding me of those of Bethlehem; and the eggs—hard¹¹ eggs, boiled eggs, scrambled eggs¹¹—are delicious. The drink¹² is water, milk, and tea. Then we have pies,¹³ tarts, candies,¹⁴ dried fruits, and syrups. For my own part,¹⁵ being a Gentile and a sinner, I have been indulged¹⁶ in cutlets, chickens, and home-made wines.¹⁷

“Good food and sweet¹⁸ air,” says Frederick, “are our

¹ *To serve* being here ‘a synonym of ‘to suffice,’ translate by genügen.

² The assertion referring to the female portion of the company, we must employ the feminine of *sein*, and of the corresponding term, *Jeder*, for *every one*. Transl. *with—affairs* by *mit sich selbst*.

³ Here again we must express the whole phrase by some other turn, viz. ‘even when something is reached to any one, it is offered and accepted.’

⁴ *Thanks*, say: *Görmlichheiten*. *Dank* might here imply that the help offered was ungratefully or ungraciously received.

⁵ *Courtesy*, *seiner Anstand*.

⁶ *Elder*, *Ältester*. The article may here be omitted in accordance with the rule, that common names used as titles before proper names require no article. *Elderess*, *Älteste*.

⁷ Turn *at—table* by ‘at the lower, not at the upper, end of the one table.’ *food*, say: *Speisen*.

⁸ Turn of *its* by ‘in their.’

⁹ Well cooked, *sorgfältig zubereitet*; *being*, say: *da sie...aus...bestehen*.

¹⁰ *Squash*, *Kürbiß*; *corn*, here *Mais*; *the like*, *dergleichen*.

¹¹ *Hard—eggs*, *hart- und weichgekochte Eier*, *Rühreier*.

¹² *Drink*, *Getränk*; *is*, *besteht aus*.

¹³ *Pies*, when not made of meat, as is evidently the case here, retain the English name in German; *meat pies* are called *Fleischpasteten*, or simply *Pasteten*.

¹⁴ *Candy*, *Zuckerwerk*, is used in German in the singular only; and the equivalent of *syrup*, denoting the sweet juice of fruits, is *Fruchtsaft*. The word *Sirup* is employed in German for *treatle*.

¹⁵ *For my own part*, *was mich betrifft*; *being*, *da ich...bin*.

¹⁶ Use the passive imperfect of *regaliren* (*mit*).

¹⁷ We use in German for the expression *home-made wine* the general term *Obstwein*, i.e. ‘fruit-wine.’

¹⁸ Turn here *sweet* by ‘fresh.’

only medicines." The rosy flesh¹ of his people, a tint but rarely seen in the United States, appears to answer very well for his assertion,² that in such a place no other physic is required.³

No words⁴ being spoken during meals,⁵ about twenty minutes serve⁶ them amply for repast. One minute more, and the table is swept bare of dishes;⁷ the plates, the knives and forks, the napkins, the glass,⁸ are cleaned and polished; every article⁸ is returned to⁹ its proper place, and the sweet, soft¹⁰ sense of order is restored.—HEPWORTH DIXON, *New America*.

VIII.

BEN JONSON.¹¹

Ben Jonson had written conjointly¹² with Chapman and Marston a comedy which contained some passages reflecting¹³ on the Scottish nation. The authors were thrown into prison, and threatened¹⁴ with the loss of their ears

¹ *Flesh*, transl. *Leint*, *m.* (from the Latin *tingere*), to be pronounced in German as in French; *the United States*, die Vereinigten Staaten.

² *To—assertion*, die Wahrheit seiner Behauptung zu bestätigen.

³ *To be required*, nöthig sein. The assertion being here a quotation from another person (*oratio obliqua*), the verb must be used in the *conjunctive* (called by some grammarians *subjunctive*) mood, which mood we should also use in Latin.

⁴ Use in German the singular. Cf. Int. p. xvi., *c*, and Ext. 4, n. *b*.

⁵ The term *meals* must here be turned by 'the eating,' to avoid the unnecessary repetition of the same expression in one and the same short sentence.

⁶ *Serve*, here *genügen*. See p. 2, Extr. 7. Render *more* by *noch*.

⁷ *Swept—dishes*, say briefly abgedeckt.

⁸ *Glass* must be rendered by Glasgeschirr, if it is to denote in general the various articles made of glass. Render *article* by *Stück*.

⁹ *Is—to*, befindet sich wieder an.

¹⁰ For *sweet* and *soft* we should prefer in German the epithets 'beautiful,' 'friendly;' *sense*, here Gefühl.

¹¹ Ben Jonson was a contemporary of Shakespeare, to whom he is considered second as a dramatist.

¹² *Conjointly*, gemeinschaftlich; *passage* (in a book), Stelle.

¹³ Turn *reflecting* by the present participle of 'to blame,' using it as an attributive adjective.

¹⁴ The simple verb *troffen* would here be inapplicable, since it is an intransitive verb, and could

and noses. Jonson had no considerable share in¹ the composition of the piece,² and was, besides, in such favour,³ that he would not have been involved;⁴ but he voluntarily accompanied his two friends to prison, determined to share their fate. They were not tried;⁵ and when Jonson was set at liberty, he gave an entertainment⁶ to his friends. His mother was present on this joyous occasion, and she produced⁷ a paper of poison, which, she said, she⁸ intended to have given⁹ her son in his liquor¹⁰ rather than he should submit to personal mutilation and disgrace, and another dose, which she intended¹¹ afterwards to have taken herself.¹¹

IX.

A MAIDEN SPEECH.¹²

The season¹³ had hardly commenced when the "Bill¹⁴ for regulating Trials in Cases of High Treason"¹⁵ was

therefore not be used in the passive voice. But this verb can assume a transitive meaning by means of the prefix *be*.

¹ *To have a share in anything*, an einer Sache Antheil haben; *composition*, here Abfassung.

² The piece alluded to was called *Eastward Hoe*.

³ The idiomatic expression is, in German, 'to stand in favour.'

⁴ *Involved*, in die Sache verwickelt, to be used here in the passive voice.

⁵ *To try*, here vor Gericht stellen.

⁶ *Entertainment* being here synonymous with 'feast, banquet,' transl. Gastmahl.

⁷ *To produce*, here zeigen; *of* = with.

⁸ Turn *which—she* by 'which she, as she said.'

⁹ *Intended—given*, hätte geben wollen.

¹⁰ *Liquor*, here Getränk; *than—submit*, als daß er sich...unterwürfe; *another dose*, eine zweite Dosis.

¹¹ *To intend*, beabsichtigen; *to—herself*, say: selbst zu nehmen.

¹² As the nearest approach to the idiomatic English expression *maiden speech*, there has been coined the term *Erstlingsrede*, i.e. 'firstling-speech,' in the same way as we say *Erstlingslied* for the first song written by a poet or set to music by a composer. Some dictionaries translate *maiden speech* by *erste Rede* only, which is neither a characteristic nor a convenient general expression. The literal translation, *Jungfernrede*, coined by some contemporary German writers, does not grammatically convey the same meaning as the English expression.

¹³ The 'Parliamentary' season is called in German *Session*.

¹⁴ Retain the English expression, using it as a fem. noun.

¹⁵ *For—Treason*, um das Verichtsverfahren in Hochverrathssachen zu reguliren; *Commons* = House

again laid on the table of the Commons. Of the debates to which it gave occasion¹ nothing is known except one interesting circumstance,² which has been preserved³ by tradition. Among those who supported the Bill appeared conspicuous⁴ a young Whig of high rank, of ample⁵ fortune, and of great abilities, which had been assiduously improved by study.⁶ This was Anthony Ashley Cooper, Lord⁷ Ashley, eldest son of the second Earl of Shaftesbury, and grandson of that renowned politician⁸ who had, in the days of Charles the Second, been at one time the most unprincipled of ministers,⁹ and at another the most unprincipled of demagogues.⁹ Ashley had just been returned to Parliament¹⁰ for the borough of Poole, and was¹¹ in his twenty-fifth year. In the course of his speech¹² he faltered, stammered, and seemed to lose the thread of his reasoning.¹³ The House—then, as now, indulgent to¹⁴ novices, and then, as now, well aware that, on a first appearance,¹⁵ the hesitation which is the effect¹⁶ of modesty and sensibility¹⁷ is quite as promising a¹⁸ sign as volubility of utterance and ease of manner¹⁹—

¹ *Occasion*, here *Veranlassung*.

² The term *circumstance* being here a synonym of 'incident,' we must render it by *Zwischenfall*.

³ *Has been preserved*, transl. auf uns gekommen ist.

⁴ *Appeared conspicuous*, zeichnete sich besonders . . . aus.

⁵ Turn *ample* by 'great,' and the subsequent adjective *great* by *bedeutend*. Intelligent students will soon find out that it is not always possible or advisable to use the same epithets in all languages.

⁶ Turn *which—study* by 'which had been improved (gepflegt worden waren) through industry and study.'

⁷ Titles like *Lord, Lady, Earl, &c.*, should be retained in German.

⁸ *Politician* = statesman.

⁹ Use in both cases the nominative singular; *unprincipled*, gewissenslos.

¹⁰ *To be returned to Parliament*, ins Parlament gewählt werden.

¹¹ Turn *was by* 'stood.'

¹² When the term *speech* is a synonym of 'discourse,' 'oration,' it must be rendered by *Rede*; but when denoting the 'faculty of uttering articulate sounds,' it is in German *Sprache*. *To falter*, *stößen*.

¹³ For *reasoning* we may use here the expressive term *Gedankengang*; *then*, here *damals*.

¹⁴ *To*, *gegen*; *well aware*, *überzeugt*.

¹⁵ *On—appearance*, beim ersten Auftreten; *hesitation*, *Stößen*.

¹⁶ Turn *effect by* 'consequence,' and use the indefinite article.

¹⁷ *Sensibility*, here *Schüchternheit*, i.e. 'timidity.'

¹⁸ Whenever the article is used with an attributive adjective, it must, in German, precede the same. *Quite as* is here to be rendered by *eben so*, and *promising* by *vielversprechend*.

¹⁹ Translate *volubility of utterance* by the compound expression *Zungenläufigkeit*, and *ease of manner*

encouraged him to proceed. "How can I, Sir,"¹ said the young orator, recovering himself,² "produce³ a stronger argument in favour of this Bill than my own failure?⁴ My fortune,⁵ my character, my life, are not at stake. I am speaking to an audience⁶ whose kindness might well inspire me *with* courage. And yet, from⁷ mere nervousness, from mere want of practice in addressing⁸ large assemblies, I have lost my recollection;⁹ I am unable¹⁰ to go on with my argument. How helpless, then, must be a poor man who, never having opened his lips in public,¹¹ is called upon¹² to reply, without a moment's preparation,¹³ to the ablest and most experienced advocates in the kingdom, and whose faculties¹⁴ are paralysed by the thought, that if he fails¹⁵ to convince his hearers, *he will* in a few hours die on a gallows, and leave beggary and infamy to those who are dearest to him!"¹⁶ It may

by *Leichtigkeit im Vortrag*; to *proceed*, *fortfahren*.

¹ Retain the English word, or say Herr Präsident, which expression would be used in a German Parliament.

² To recover oneself, *sich sammeln*.

³ To produce, here *verbringen*. The term *argument*—to be pronounced as a German word—may be retained.

⁴ The term *failure*, in its comprehensive signification, has no single equivalent, neither in German nor, I think, in most other modern languages. Here the word *Missgeschick*, i.e. 'ill-fate,' might properly be used.

⁵ *Fortune*, standing here for 'possessions,' 'wealth,' is to be rendered by *Vermögen*; *character*, *Ruf*; *are*, &c., *stehn nicht auf dem Spiele*.

⁶ When the word *audience*, refers, as is the case here, to an assembly consisting of regularly appointed members, we generally use the word *Versammlung*; when referring to an assembly of promiscuous listeners, it may also be rendered by *Publikum*, and an assembly consisting more particu-

larly of students, &c. is called *Auditorium* or *Zuhörerenschaft*.

⁷ *From*, *aus*; *nervousness*, transl. *Angstlichkeit*.

⁸ *In addressing* = to speak before.

⁹ *My recollection*, transl. *Fassung*, or, less literally, *den Faden*, i.e. the thread.

¹⁰ *To be unable*, *nicht im Stande sein*; *argument*, here *Gegenstand*.

¹¹ *Who—public*. Turn the whole clause briefly by 'who has never spoken publicly,' connecting it with the following clause by *und nun*.

¹² *To be called upon*, *aufgefordert werden*. Place *to reply* after *kingdom*.

¹³ In order to translate the phrase *without a moment's preparation* with literal faithfulness, we should be obliged to spin it out to 'without that one grants him even (auch nur) a moment to his preparation;' but we can easily avoid this turn by simply saying *ohne irgend welche Vorbereitung*.

¹⁴ *Faculties*, *Geisteskräfte*.

¹⁵ *That—fails*, *dass er, wenn es ihm nicht gelingt*; *on a*, *am*.

¹⁶ *And—him*. This clause will best be turned by 'and will leave behind those who are the dearest

reasonably be suspected¹ that Ashley's confusion and the ingenious² use which he made of it had been carefully premeditated.³ His speech,⁴ however, made a great impression.—MACAULAY, *History of England*.

X.

A SELF-DUBBED⁵ MESSENGER.

On the evening of the battle an officer⁶ of the Ziethen Hussars, who were forward⁷ in the pursuit, rode as far as⁸ the gates of Königgrätz,⁹ and, finding¹⁰ there were no sentries outside, rode¹¹ in; the guard, immediately on seeing¹² him in his Prussian uniform, turned out¹³ and seized him, when,¹⁴ with a ready presence, he declared he had¹⁵ come to demand¹⁶ the capitulation of the fortress. He was conducted to the commandant, and made the same demand to¹⁷ him, adding that¹⁸ the town would

to him in poverty and disgrace.' The superlative *dearest* is to be used substantively: die Theuersten.

¹ *It—suspected.* Turn here by 'one can well assume with reason' (mit Grund annehmen).

² *Ingenious*, here genial.

³ *Had—premeditated*, planmäßig vorbereitet war.

⁴ See page 31, note 12.

⁵ *Self-dubbed*, selbsternannt.

⁶ *Officer* is here the subject of the sentence, and *rode* the assertion. *Ziethen Hussars*, Zietzen'sche Husaren.

⁷ *Who were forward*, say: die sich ... vorgewagt hatten. Supply the words 'of the enemy' after *pursuit*.

⁸ The literal translation of *as far as* would here be an Anglicism; transl. the same by *bis zu*.

⁹ Königgrätz is a fortress on the Elbe, in Bohemia. The battle alluded to was fought near that place on 3rd July, 1866.

¹⁰ *Finding—outside*, say: da er seine Schildwache daselbst vorfand.

¹¹ Supply 'he;' *the—seeing*, so wie die Wache ihn...erblickte.

¹² *Turned out*, trat sie ins Gewehr.

¹³ *When*, here worauf; a *ready presence*, rasche Geistesgegenwart.

¹⁴ Use the perfect conjunctive, and remember that *to come* is a verb denoting motion.

¹⁵ *To demand*, forbern.

¹⁶ *To make a demand to any one*, an Jemand eine Forderung stellen.

¹⁷ By omitting here the conjunction *that* we obtain a more rhythmical construction, since the sentence assumes by this omission the form of a direct principal clause, and the inharmonious accumulation of verbs is thus avoided. Good writers have often recourse to this expedient, a circumstance which the student of German should bear in mind.

be bombarded if not surrendered¹ within an hour; the commandant, unconscious² that he was not dealing³ with a legitimate messenger, courteously refused to capitulate; but⁴ the Hussar was conducted out of the⁴ town, passed through⁵ the guard at the entrance, and got off safely⁶ without being made a prisoner.—H. M. HOZIER, *The Seven Weeks' War*.

XI.

DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA⁷ AT LOUVAIN.

Meantime Don John of Austria came to Louvain. * * * The object⁸ with which Philip had sent him to the Netherlands,⁹ that he might¹⁰ conciliate the hearts of the inhabitants by the personal graces¹¹ which he had inherited from his imperial father, seemed in a fair way of accomplishment;¹² for *it was*¹³ not only the venal applause of titled¹⁴ sycophants *that* he strove to merit, but he mingled gaily and familiarly with¹⁵ all classes of citizens.

¹ *If not surrendered*, wenn die Uebergabe nicht . . . erfolgte.

² *Unconscious*, transl. nicht ahnend, i. e. 'not suspecting.

³ *To deal*, here unterhandeln; *legitimate*, say: officiellen.

⁴ By placing *but* after *Hussar* the assertion becomes more emphatic. *Out of the*, zur . . . hinaus.

⁵ *Passed through*, passirte; *at the*, am.

⁶ *To get off safely*, glücklich davon kommen. See page 36, note 4.

⁷ Don John of Austria, frequently called Don Juan d'Austria, son of the Emperor Charles V., was born at Ratisbonne in 1546, and died at the fortified camp of Namur in 1578. In 1576 he had been appointed Governor to the disaffected Netherlands by his brother, Philip II. *Louvain*, Löwen.

⁸ *Object*, here Absicht.

⁹ Insert the expletive 'namely.'

¹⁰ Use the pres. cond. of mögen, and turn *conciliate* by *win*.

¹¹ *Graces*, transl. Liebenswürdigkeit.

¹² Turn *in*—*accomplishment* by 'upon a good way to be accomplished.' *To accomplish*, erfüllen.

¹³ The English usage of making a verb emphatic by *it is*, *was*, &c., *that*, is not required in German, where the emphasis can be sufficiently marked by inverting the regular order of words, and beginning with the term to be emphasized.

¹⁴ *Titled*, transl. vornehm.

¹⁵ *To mingle*—*with*, here sich anschließen. See page 24, note 8; *gaily*, fröhlich; *familiarly*, vertraulich.

Everywhere his handsome face and charming manner¹ produced their natural effect. He dined and supped² with the magistrates in the Town-house; honoured³ general banquets of the burghers with his presence; and was affable and dignified, witty, fascinating, and commanding,⁴ by turns.

At Louvain the five military guilds⁵ held a solemn festival. The usual invitations were sent to the other societies and to all the martial brotherhoods the country round.⁶ Gay and gaudy processions, sumptuous banquets, military sports, rapidly succeeded each other.⁷ Upon the day of the great trial of skill⁸ all the high functionaries⁹ of the land were, according to custom, invited, and the Governor was graciously pleased¹⁰ to honour¹¹ the solemnity with his presence. Great was the joy of the multitude when Don John, complying with the habit¹² of imperial and princely personages in former days, enrolled himself, cross-bow¹³ in hand, among the

¹ *Charming manner*, *etnnehmendes Wesen*.

² *He—supped*, er speiste zu Mittag und zu Abend.

³ *To honour* means both *ehren* and *beehren*; but there is a very nice distinction between these two verbs. *Ehren* signifies 'to entertain feelings of respect,' *i.e.* to revere, to esteem, &c., as *Honour thy father and thy mother*, *Ehre Vater und Mutter*. *Beehren* means 'to show marks of civility and respect,' *i.e.* to favour a person or thing by any outward distinction, as '*Favour me with a visit*,' *Beehren Sie mich mit einem Besuche*. Here the Prince favoured the burghers with his presence: we must therefore say, *Er beehrte die Banquette*, since *er ehrte*, &c. would signify 'he revered the banquets.' The present case may aptly serve to illustrate the great advantage which the German language derives from the inseparable prefixes, there having been achieved here, as in innumerable other instances, a characteris-

tic nicety by means of a simple prefix; *general*, here öffentlich.

⁴ *Commanding*, *ehrfurchtgebietend*; put by turns, abwechselnd, after was.

⁵ *Military guild*, *Schützengilde*; to hold (a festival), *begehen*.

⁶ *The country round*, in der Umgegend; *gay*, *heiter*; *gaudy*, *bunt*.

⁷ *To succeed each other*, auf einander folgen.

⁸ *Trial of skill*, *Kunstprobe*.

⁹ *Functionary*, *Beamte*.

¹⁰ *Was graciously pleased*, ließ sich gnädig herab.

¹¹ See above, note 3. *Solemnity*, here *Festlichkeit*.

¹² *Complying with the habit and in former days*, is to be rendered by the clause *dem ehemaligen Gebrauche ... nachkommend*.

¹³ Use the definite article both with *cross-bow* and *hand*, and retain the elliptical construction, which is generally used in German when the accusative is followed, as is the case here by an *adv. exp.* of place, *viz.*, *enrolled, etc.*, *sich die Armbrust in der Hand ... aufnehmen ließ*.

competitors. Greater still was the enthusiasm when the conqueror¹ of Lepanto² brought down³ the bird, and was proclaimed⁴ king of the year amid the tumultuous hilarity of the crowd. According to custom, the captains of the guild suspended a golden popinjay⁵ around the neck of his Highness, and, placing themselves in procession,⁶ followed⁷ him to the great church. Thence,⁸ after the customary religious exercises,⁸ the multitude proceeded⁹ to the banquet, where the health of the new king of the cross-bowmen¹⁰ was pledged in deep potations.¹¹—MOTLEY, *Rise of the Dutch Republic*.

XII.

WORSE THAN HIS REPUTATION.

I have, while¹² in England, heard and read more than once of the “docile¹³ camel.” If “docile” means stupid,

¹ When the word *conqueror* is synonymous with ‘victor,’ it is rendered by *Sieger*.

² Don John gained the great naval battle of Lepanto against the Turks in 1572.

³ *Brought down*, transl. *herabgesch.*

⁴ Transl. *was proclaimed* by *zum...* *ausgerufen wurde*, in accordance with the rule that verbs of choosing, appointing, declaring, considering, and the like, do not govern in German, as is the case in English, Latin, and Greek, *two accusatives*, but express the office or dignity to which a person has been appointed, &c. by *zu* with the dative. The person appointed *is alone* put in the accusative, unless the passive construction be employed—as is the case in the above sentence—when the nominative is used.

⁵ Turn here *popinjay* simply by ‘bird.’

⁶ *Placing*—*procession*, transl. *indem sie eine Procession bildeten*.

⁷ The third person plural of the personal pronoun must here be inserted.

⁸ *Thence*, *von da aus*; *religious exercises*, *Andachtsübungen*.

⁹ *To proceed*, here *sich begeben*.

¹⁰ *Cross-bowmen*, *Armbrustschützen*.

¹¹ *Was*—*potations*, *in starken Zügen getrunken wurde*.

¹² If the word *while* is translated, we must give the sentence in a complete form, *i.e.* ‘while I was in England.’ We can, however, construe the clause in a still more elliptical manner by omitting that adverb altogether, since the adverbial expression of place is in similar cases quite sufficient in German, *viz.*, *I have in England*.

¹³ When *docile* refers to the temper of animals, it is rendered by *sänft*; *to mean*, here *bedeutet*.

well and good;¹ in such a² case the camel is the very³ model of docility. But if the epithet is intended⁴ to designate an animal that takes *an* interest in⁵ its rider, so far as a beast can;⁶ that in some way⁷ understands his intentions, or shares them in a subordinate fashion;⁸ that obeys from⁹ a sort of submissive or half fellow-feeling with his master, like the horse and elephant; then I say that the camel is by no means docile: very much the contrary.¹⁰ He takes no heed of¹¹ his rider; pays no attention¹² whether he be on his back¹³ or not; walks straight on when once set a-going, merely because he is too stupid to turn aside;¹⁴ and *then*, should some tempting thorn¹⁵ or green branch allure him out of¹⁶ the path, continues¹⁷ to walk on in this new direction simply¹⁸ because he is too dull to turn back into the right road. His only care is to cross¹⁹ as much pasture as he conveniently can while pacing mechanically onwards, and for effecting²⁰ this his long flexible neck sets him at great advantage,²¹ and a

¹ *Well and good*, here so mag es hingehen.

² Turn here *such a* by 'this.'

³ Here the word *very* is synonymous with 'real,' 'true,'—the French *vrai*. In German the adjective must here be preceded by the indefinite article.

⁴ *But—intended*, say briefly: soll aber der Ausdruck (i.e. expression). The supine is not used after the auxiliary verbs of mood.

⁵ The preposition *in*, referring to *take interest*, is rendered by *an*.

⁶ Turn *as—can* by 'it is possible to a beast.'

⁷ *In some way*, gewissermaßen.

⁸ The above clause will best be rendered idiomatically by translating *shares them* by *auf dieselben eingeht*, and *fashion* by *Grad*.

⁹ *From*, transl. *aus*. The term *fellow* may here be rendered by the adjective *kameradschaftlich*; but then *with* should be turned by 'for.'

¹⁰ *Very—contrary*, ganz im Gegentheil.

¹¹ *To take heed of*, here sich küm-

mern um. *Camel* being neuter in German, the corresponding pronoun should be used throughout.

¹² *Pays no attention*, render achtet nicht darauf.

¹³ *Be—back*, ihm auf dem Rücken sitze; *set a-going*, in Bewegung gebracht.

¹⁴ *To turn aside*, um abzulenken.

¹⁵ *Thorn*, here Dornbusch.

¹⁶ *To allure out of*, ablocken von.

¹⁷ The verb *to continue*, referring to an infinitive, as above, is generally expressed by the adverb *weiter*, and sometimes by *fort*. The infinitive is in this case used in the same tense as the verb *to continue*. Supply 'it' after the finite verb.

¹⁸ *Simply* = merely; *dull* = stupid; *into*, here 'upon.'

¹⁹ *To cross*, say: über... zu gehen; *pasture*, Weideplatz, to be used here in the plural; *conveniently*, mit Bequemlichkeit.

²⁰ *To effect*, bewerkstelligen. See Extr. 9, note a.

²¹ *To set at advantage*, Vortheile gewähren.

hard¹ blow or a downright² kick alone has any influence *on him* whether³ to direct or impel. He will never attempt to throw you⁴ off his back,⁵ such a trick being far beyond⁶ his limited comprehension; but if you⁶ fall off, he will never dream⁷ of stopping⁸ *for you*, and walks on just the same,⁹ grazing while he goes,¹⁰ without knowing or caring an atom¹¹ what has become of you.¹² *If* turned loose,¹³ it is *a* thousand to¹⁴ one that he will never find his¹⁵ way back to his accustomed home or pasture, and the first comer¹⁶ who picks him up¹⁷ will have no particular shyness to get over;¹⁸ Jack or Tom are all the same¹⁹ to him; and the loss of his old master and of his former cameline²⁰ companions gives him no regret,²¹ and occasions no endeavour to find them again. One only symptom will²² he give that he is aware²³ of his rider, and that is²⁴ when the

¹ The literal translation of *hard* with reference to *blow* is also used in German, but mostly when the word is employed figuratively; used in the primitive sense, the usual German epithet is *stark*.

² *Downright*, here *entschieden*, i.e. 'decided'; *kick*, *Schritt*.

³ Turn *whether* by 'be it,' and transl. *to impel* by *anspornen*.

⁴ The pronoun *you*, used in English colloquial speech indefinitely for 'one' 'any one,' is usually rendered in German by *man*, *Seemand*, or *Niemand*; by the two latter, more generally, when *you* occurs in the accusative, as is the case here.

⁵ Suppress in German the words *his back*, the verb *to throw off* fully indicating the action. *Trick*, *Streich*.

⁶ Turn *far beyond* by 'much too high for;' *comprehension*, here *Verstand*. Turn *you* by 'the rider.'

⁷ *He—dream*. We use in German the idiomatic expression *es fällt ihm nicht im Traume ein*.

⁸ *To stop*, here *stehen bleiben*.

⁹ *And—same*, sondern *es schreitet ruhig weiter*.

¹⁰ *While he goes* may be briefly

turned in German by *im Gehen*, to be placed before *grazing*, *weidend*. Cf. Int. page xvii., *g*.

¹¹ *Caring an atom*, translate *sich im Geringsten darum zu kümmern*.

¹² Turn here of *you* by 'of (*aus*) his rider.'

¹³ *Turned loose*, *losgelassen*.

¹⁴ *To*, here *gegen*.

¹⁵ See Extr. 34, note *b*. *Accustomed home*, here *gewöhnlichen Aufenthaltsort*; *pasture*, *Weideplatz*.

¹⁶ *The first comer* is idiomatically rendered in German by *der Erste Beste*.

¹⁷ *To pick up*, here *aufgreifen*.

¹⁸ *To get over*, figuratively *überwinden*; *Jack*, &c., say *Hans* oder *Peter*.

¹⁹ *Are—same*, *gibt ihm gleich*.

²⁰ Omit the adjective *cameline*. Generally it would be rendered by the noun *Kamel*, which is, however, not applicable here.

²¹ *To give regret*, *Reue machen*.

²² This emphatic future not being used in German, the principal verbs must be rendered by the present indicative.

²³ *To be aware*, here *sich bewußt sein*, which governs the genitive.

²⁴ Turn *and that is* by 'namely.'

latter is about to mount¹ him; for on such an² occasion he will bend back his long snaky neck towards his master, open his enormous jaws to bite, if he dared,³ and roar out a tremendous sort of groan,⁴ as if to complain of⁵ some entirely new and unparalleled injustice about to be done him.⁶ In a word,⁷ he is from first to last an undomesticated⁸ animal.—W. G. PALGRAVE, *Narrative of a Year's Journey through Central and Eastern Arabia*.

XIII.

SPEEDY⁹ PROMOTION.

A remarkable anecdote is related¹⁰ by Voltaire of¹¹ the circumstance that obtained for Leonard Torstenson¹² his first commission.¹³ He had been in close attendance on¹⁴ the King of Sweden¹⁴ during the campaign in Livonia in 1624,¹⁵ and it happened,¹⁶ at a moment of importance,¹⁷

¹ *To mount* is rendered by *steigen* when it is used intransitively, but it assumes a transitive meaning by means of the inseparable prefix *be*, which possesses the faculty of transforming intransitive verbs into transitive ones.

² *On such an*, bei dieser.

³ *Dared*, say den Muth dazu hätte.

⁴ *And—groan*, und stößt eine Art schrecklichen Gesöhnes aus.

⁵ *As — of*, als ob es sich beklagen wollte über. When an infinitive is preceded by *as if*, we generally express the condition by *als ob*... wollte; *unparalleled*, beispielloß.

⁶ *About — him*, die man ihm anthun will.

⁷ We say in German 'with one word;'
from — last, transl. durchaus.

⁸ *Undomesticated*, ungeselliges, i.e. unsociable.

⁹ *Speedy*, schnell

¹⁰ *To relate*, erzählen.

¹¹ Turn *a—of* by 'Voltaire relates a remarkable anecdote (Anecdote) of (in Bezug auf).'

¹² Turn *that — Torstenson* by 'through which L. T. obtained.' General Torstenson, born 1603 at Forstena, in Sweden, was one of the principal generals in the Thirty Years' War. He particularly excelled as a strategist, and as such he gave—as related above—an early proof under the command of Gustavus Adolphus.

¹³ *Commission* (in military affairs), Offizierstelle. Less briefly, but more elegantly, we might render it here by Ernennung zum Offizier.

¹⁴ Place *he—Sweden*, befand er sich stets um den König von Schweden after '1624.' *Livonia*, Liefland.

¹⁵ Cf. Extr. 49, note b.

¹⁶ *To happen*, here sich fügen.

¹⁷ Turn in German the above

that his Majesty had no staff officer near him.¹ Accordingly he entrusted² an order for an important movement to *the hands of* his squire, who, seeing a change in the enemy's plan of attack as he rode along,³ took upon himself⁴ the bold responsibility of making a corresponding⁵ change in the directions that his sovereign directed him to give.⁶

"Sire,"⁷ said the youth on⁸ his return to his royal master's side, "forgive⁹ me *for* what I have done; but when I saw the enemy was changing his line, I made a corresponding change in your¹⁰ Majesty's orders."

Gustavus made no answer at the time;¹¹ but in the evening, when the page was about¹² to serve the table,¹³ as was his wont,¹⁴ he was commanded to sit down at the king's side,¹⁵ when the good-humoured monarch, threatening¹⁶ *him* with the hand, said: "Young man, what you

expression by 'in an important moment.' The pronoun *his* before names of titles, as *Majesty*, *Excellency*, &c., is in German turned by the abbreviated form *Se.* = *Seine*: the pronoun *His*, however, is in such cases rendered in full.

¹ *Near him*, bei sich.

² Render here *to entrust* by *anvertrauen*, *for* by *zu*, and *squire* by *Page*; in which last word the letter *g* is pronounced soft, as in French, and the *c* short, as in *Freute*.

³ Turn the clause *who—along* by 'who, when he as he rode along (*beim Dahinreiten*) a change in the plan of attack (*Angriffsplan*) of the enemy saw (here *bemerhte*).'

⁴ *Took upon himself*, übernahm.

⁵ *Corresponding*, entsprechend.

⁶ 'Turn *in* — *give* by 'in the order which the king had given him for delivery' (*zur Bestellung*).

⁷ This term, derived from the Latin *senior*, is also used in German in addressing kings, &c.; the *i* is pronounced as in German, but the *c* is mute.

⁸ Render here *on* by the prep. *bei*, and *to... side* simply by *zu*.

⁹ Use the 2nd pers. pl. of *vergeben*,

and supply the conjunction 'that' after *saw*. *Line*, here *Stellung*.

¹⁰ The pronoun *Guer* was formerly written *Gwer*; which obsolete mode of spelling is still officially retained before titles, but is generally given in the abbreviated form *Gw.*, which stands for all the respective forms of *Guer*.

¹¹ Turn *made — time* by 'answered nothing in the moment;' *in the*, here *am*.

¹² The phrase *to be about*, denoting near futurity, is rendered in German by *im Begriff sein*, and sometimes by *wollte*, which latter expression corresponds, in this sense, to the English *wanted*.

¹³ *To serve the table*, bei *Tafel* aufzuwarten.

¹⁴ Turn *as was his wont* simply by 'as usual,' and *was commanded* by 'received the order.' Why the verb *befehlen*, which governs the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, cannot be used in the passive voice will be seen from Ext. 22, note *b*.

¹⁵ *At... side*, neben; *when*, here *woauf*; *good-humoured*, gutgelaunt.

¹⁶ See Int. p. xvii., *g*.

did this¹ morning might have cost you your life ; but I see in you that you have the qualities of a great general, and I make you an ensign² in a company of my Guards.”³
—SIR EDW. CUST, *The Warriors of the Thirty Years' War*.

XIV.

GOETHE AT THE AGE OF TWENTY.⁴

Goethe reached Strasburg on the 2nd April, 1770. He was now turned⁵ twenty ; and a more magnificent youth never, perhaps,⁶ entered the Strasburg⁷ gates. Long before celebrity⁸ had fixed all eyes upon him he was likened to an Apollo ; and once, when⁹ he entered¹⁰ a dining-room, people¹¹ laid down *their* knives and forks to stare at¹² the beautiful youth. Pictures and busts, even when most resembling,¹³ give but¹⁴ a feeble indication of that which was most¹⁵ striking in his appearance : they give the form

¹ Render *this* by *heute*, the time of morning having already passed ; and render *might* by the infinitive *können*.

² See page 36, note 4.

³ *Guards*, here *Leibwache*.

⁴ Supply the word ‘years.’

⁵ Transl. *turned* by *über* ; *magnificent*, *herrlich*.

⁶ Use here the adverb *wohl*, which indicates more forcibly than *vielleicht* the probability of an event. That adverb is generally placed before the word which has the principal accent,—here the term *never*. *Entered*, *kam . . . burch*.

⁷ Use the genitive case, and see Extr. 11, note a.

⁸ *Celebrity*, *der Ruhm*. Turn *fixed*—*him* by ‘drawn the eyes of all (Aller) upon him.’

⁹ *When* can, as a rule, be rendered in four different ways:—1st, by *als*, when it denotes an occurrence that has once taken place,—in this sense it corresponds to the

French *lorsque* ; 2nd, by *wenn*, when it denotes an indefinite or habitual occurrence,—in this sense *when* is equivalent to ‘whenever ;’ 3rd, by *wann*, in questions, signifying ‘at what time ;’ 4th, by *worauf*, when standing for ‘upon, or after which.’

¹⁰ *To enter*, *treten* (in).

¹¹ When *people* signifies persons in general, in the sense in which it is used here, we render it in German by *Leute* ; when, however, it denotes the ‘commonalty,’ we translate it by *Volk*, as in French by *peuple*, and in Latin by *populus*.

¹² *To stare at*, here *anstaunen*.

¹³ *Even*—*resembling*, *selbst die ähnlichsten*.

¹⁴ When *but* is synonymous with *only*, it is rendered by *nur* ; when with *merely*, by *bloß*. *Indication*, transl. *Begriff*.

¹⁵ *Most striking*, *am auffallendsten* ; *appearance*, *say äußern Erscheinung*.

of the features,¹ but not the play of features; nor² are they very accurate as to the form.

His features were large³ and liberally cut, as in the fine sweeping lines⁴ of Greek art. The brow was lofty and massive;⁵ and from beneath it shone large lustrous brown eyes of marvellous beauty, their pupils⁶ being of almost unexampled size. The slightly aquiline⁷ nose was large, and well cut. The mouth was full, with a short, arched, upper lip, very sensitive and expressive;⁸ the chin and jaw⁹ boldly proportioned; and the head rested on a handsome and muscular¹⁰ neck.

In stature¹¹ he was rather above the middle size: but although not really tall, he had the aspect¹² of a tall man; and is usually so described, because his presence¹³ was very imposing. His frame¹⁴ was strong, muscular, yet sensitive. Dante says this contrast is¹⁵ in the nature of things, for

“Quanto la cosa è più perfetta,
Più senta 'l bene, e così la doglienza.” *

¹ *Feature* (of a face), Zug; *play of features*, Mienenspiel.

² When *nor* introduces a sentence, it is rendered by auch...nicht; and when it follows the negative *neither*, by noch. *Accurate*, genau; *as to*, was...betrifft.

³ Render here *large* by fñhn, and *liberally* by edel; *cut*, here gebildet.

⁴ *The — lines*, den schön geschwungenen Linien.

⁵ *Massive*, here gewölbt; *from beneath it*, unter derselben hervor; *of*, here von.

⁶ *Pupil* (of the eye) is in German Pupille. We have also two genuine Teutonic words for the same thing, —viz. the homely Augapfel, i.e. the apple of the eye; and the poetical Augenfarn, i.e. star of the eye. *Size*, here GröÙe.

⁷ There is in German no exact equivalent for the adjective *aqui-*

line. The expression *aquiline nose* would be rendered by Alternase, whilst a *slightly aquiline nose* must be somewhat freely translated by eine leichtgebogene Nase. Well, here fein.

⁸ *Very—expressive*, äußerst sensitiv und ausdrucksvoll.

⁹ The article must be repeated before Rinnbaden (*jaw*), since, being masculine, it differs in gender from the noun Rinn. *Boldly proportioned*, in fñhnen Proportionen.

¹⁰ *Muscular*, muskulös.

¹¹ *In stature*, von Gestalt; *rather*, here etwas; *middle size*, MittelgröÙe.

¹² *Aspect*, Aussehen; *turn tall* by ‘tall-grown;’ transl. so by als solcher.

¹³ *Presence*, here persönliche Erscheinung; *imposing*, imponirend.

¹⁴ *Frame*, in the sense in which it is used here, means in German Körperbau. Transl. yet by und doch.

¹⁵ Use here the verb liegen.

* Longfellow translates the above with literal faithfulness by—

“As the thing more perfect is,
The more it feels of pleasure and of pain.”

DANTE'S *Inferno*, Canto VI. v. 107. &c.

Excelling¹ in all active sports,² he was almost a barometer in sensitiveness³ to atmospheric influences.

Such, externally, was⁴ the youth who descended at⁵ the hotel *Zum Geist*, in Strasburg, this⁶ 2nd April, and who, ridding himself of⁷ the dust and "ennui" of a long imprisonment in the diligence,⁸ sallied forth⁹ to gaze at the famous cathedral,¹⁰ which made a wonderful impression on him as¹¹ he came up to it¹² through the narrow streets.—G. H. LEWES, *Life of Goethe*.

¹ The present participle implying here a concession, turn it by 'though he excelled;' and insert in the principal clause, to be given in an inverted form, the conj. *doch* after *he*. *To excel*, here *sich auszeichnen*.

² There does not exist in most continental languages a single equivalent for the comprehensive term *sport*. The English term has been adopted abroad, but more in reference to horse races. Render here *active sports* by *Leibesübungen*, and see the note to *Ext. 7*, page 2.

³ Transl. *in sensitiveness* by *in seiner Empfindlichkeit*, and turn *to* by 'against.'

⁴ Transl. *such* — *was* by *so* *war* *das Aeußere*, and put *youth* in the genitive case.

⁵ *To descend at* (an hotel, &c.), *absteigen in*. Goethe makes use of this identical verb in relating his arrival at Strasburg in his autobiography „*Wahrheit und Dichtung*." The hotel alluded to he simply calls *Wirthshaus*.

⁶ Transl. here *this* by *an dem* *besagten*; and see for the construction of the above sentences *Extr. 4*, note *a*.

⁷ Render here *ridding—of* by *abgeschüttelnd*; *ennui*, *die Langeweile*.

⁸ The expression *diligence* is also

used, with the French pronunciation, in German. The words *Eil-* or *Schnellwagen* are also employed as equivalents for that term.

⁹ *Sallied forth*, transl. *fort eilte*; *to gaze at*, here *besehen*.

¹⁰ *The cathedral* (of Strasburg) is commonly called in German *der* (*Strasburger*) *Münster*; which term being derived from the Græco-Latin expression *monasterium*, is sometimes also used in the neuter gender.

¹¹ The conjunction *as* may generally be translated in the following ways:—1st, in comparisons by *als* or *wie*; by the latter more generally when perfect equality is to be expressed. In this case *as* is frequently rendered by *so wie*, more particularly when two actions are compared: *e.g.* *He acts as he speaks*, *Er handelt so wie er spricht*. 2nd, when it occurs twice—before and after an adjective—the first *as* is generally rendered by *so*: *e.g.* *As cold as ice*, *So kalt wie Eis*. 3rd, when it stands for 'if' it is rendered by *wenn*; when for 'since' by *da*; when for 'because' by *weil*; when for *whilst* by *da*, *wenn*, *indem*, and sometimes by *when*; and when for the conj. *when*, as above, by *als*.

¹² *Came—it*, *vor demselben ankam*.

XV.

THE PILGRIMS.¹

The² next day they rose at five: their morning prayers³ were finished, when,⁴ as the day dawned, a war-whoop and a flight⁵ of arrows announced an attack from Indians.⁶ They were⁷ of the tribe of the Nausites, who knew the English⁸ as kidnappers; but the encounter⁹ was without further result. Again¹⁰ the boat's crew give thanks to God,¹⁰ and steer their bark along the coast for the distance of¹¹ fifteen leagues. But no convenient harbour is¹² discovered. The pilot of the boat, who had been in these regions before, gives assurance of a good one,¹³ which may be reached before night; and they follow his guidance.

¹ The Pilgrims alluded to in the above extract were a number of Covenanters who, being persecuted under James I. for their opposition to the Church of England, emigrated to Holland. But being desirous to remain under English rule, and to do service to their native country as loyal citizens, they left Holland in 1620, in order to found an English settlement in America.

² Use the accusative case.

³ Render *morning prayers* by the compound *Morgenandacht*, to be used in the singular only; *finished*, here *verrichtet*.

⁴ *When* is here to be rendered by *da*, and the verb *announced* placed immediately after that adverb; as—*dawned*, bei Tagesanbruch.

⁵ The term *flight*, referring to arrows, is rendered by *Schauer*, i.e. 'shower.'

⁶ There exists in German a very convenient mode of distinguishing the natives of East India from those of the West Indies or of the American continent. The former are called *Indier* or *Indter*, and the

latter *Indianer*. As regards the adjectives *indisch* and *indianisch*, the same distinction is made, but is not quite so strictly adhered to.

⁷ Translate *were* by *gehörten ... an*, and *of*—*Nausites* by *dem Stamme der Nausiten*.

⁸ Turn *who knew the English* by 'to whom the English were known;' *kidnapper*, here *Menschenräuber*.

⁹ Transl. *encounter* by the frequentative noun formed from *sechten*, and turn *was without further result* by 'had no further consequences.'

¹⁰ Turn *again*—*God*, by 'the boat's crew (*Schiffsmannschaft*) thanks God anew (*von Neuem*);' crew requires in German the sing. only.

¹¹ Translate *for the distance of* simply by *weit*, placing this adverb at the end of the sentence. The term *league* may here be turned by 'mile,' though, arithmetically speaking, a German mile is longer than a *league* by 1·63 of an English mile.

¹² See the note to Ext. 8, and use the third person plural.

¹³ The above elliptical construction is not admissible in German,

After some hours' sailing,¹ a storm of snow and rain² begins; the sea swells:³ the rudder breaks—the boat must now be steered⁴ with oars. The storm increases; night⁵ is at hand: to⁶ reach the harbour before dark, as much sail⁷ as possible is borne; the mast breaks into three pieces; the sail falls overboard; but the tide is favourable. The pilot, in⁸ dismay, would have run the boat on shore⁹ in a cove¹⁰ full of breakers. "About with her,"¹¹ exclaimed a sailor, "or we are cast away!"¹² They get her about¹³ immediately, and passing¹⁴ the surf, they enter¹⁵ a fair sound, and shelter themselves¹⁶ under the lee of a small rise of land.¹⁷ It is dark, and the rain beats furiously;¹⁸ yet the men are so wet *and* cold and weak, they¹⁹ slight the danger to be apprehended²⁰ from the savages, and after great difficulty²¹ kindle a fire on shore.

where it would be necessary to supply before a *good one* the words 'that there was;' but we can contract the above clause with the following one, turning them briefly by 'assures that they could reach (erreichen) a good one before night.'

¹ Use the third person plural of *to sail* in the pluperfect tense.

² The expression *Schneesturm* sounds like an Anglicism, though we use *Sturm*, and some modern German writers have coined the word *Regensturm*. Turn, therefore, the above clause by 'a storm rises, accompanied by snow and rain.'

³ *Swells*, geht hoch.

⁴ *To steer*, here lenken.

⁵ Use the definite article, and render *at hand* by rückt heran.

⁶ See Extr. 9, note a. *Dark*, here Dunkelwerden.

⁷ Use in German the plural number, and render here *to bear* by aufspannen. See also Extr. 4, note b.

⁸ Supply here the pronoun *his*, and see for the construction of the clause Extr. 5, note b.

⁹ Render the clause *would—shore* by hätte...daß Boot...strandten lassen.

¹⁰ *Cove*, here Bucht; *of breakers*, brandender Wogen.

¹¹ *About with her*, wentet!

¹² The nautical expression *to cast or to be cast away* is rendered in German an den Strand treiben.

¹³ Translate *to get about* by umwenden, *immediately* by sofort, and omit the pronoun *her*.

¹⁴ Render here *passing* by indem sie...durchschiffen.

¹⁵ *To enter*, here gelangen (in); *fair sound*, ruhige Meerenge.

¹⁶ *To shelter oneself*, Schutz finden; *lee*, Seeseite, pronounced entirely as a German word, it being a genuine Teutonic expression.

¹⁷ *Small rise of land*, sanfte Erhöhung.

¹⁸ *Beats furiously*, here strömt heftig nieder.

¹⁹ In similar constructions the conjunction *that* cannot be omitted in German. *To slight*, here verachten.

²⁰ The English passive participial constructions, expressing relations of possibility or necessity, are generally changed in German into the active form by means of the supine. Here *to be apprehended* = which was to apprehend (besürchten).

²¹ Turn *after great difficulty* by 'with great trouble' (Mühe).

Morning, as it dawned, showed the place to be¹ a small island within the entrance² of a harbour. The day was required³ for rest and⁴ preparations. Time was precious; the season advancing;⁵ their companions were left in suspense.⁶ The next⁷ day was the "Christian Sabbath." Nothing marks⁸ the character of the Pilgrims more fully, than that they kept it sacredly,⁹ though every consideration demanded haste.¹⁰

On Monday the¹¹ 11th day of December, old style,¹² the exploring party¹³ of the forefathers land at Plymouth. * * * The spot, when examined,¹⁴ seemed to invite a settlement;¹⁵ and in¹⁶ a few days the *Mayflower* was safely moored¹⁷ in its harbour. In memory of¹⁸ the hospitalities¹⁹ which the company had received at²⁰ the last English port from which they had sailed, this oldest New England colony²¹ obtained the name of Plymouth.—GEORGE BANCROFT, *History of the United States*.

¹ Turn *Morning*—be by 'when the morning dawned (graute) it was discovered (zeigte es sich) that the place was.'

² *Within the entrance*, am Eingang.

³ *Required* may here be rendered by the predicative adjective nöthig.

⁴ Since the term *Ausrüsten* (*rest*) requires the definite article, here contracted with the preposition zu, and the word *Vorbereitungen* (*preparations*) does not require the article, on account of its being used in a general sense in the plural number, the preposition zu must be repeated before *preparations*.

⁵ We should use here in German the past participle, *vorgeschritten*, i.e. advanced. *Companions*, Gefährten.

⁶ *Left in suspense*, in banger Ungewißheit zurückgelassen.

⁷ The word *next* should in the above phrase be turned by 'following.'

⁸ *Marks*, here bezeichnet; *more fully* = better.

⁹ *To keep sacredly* might be rendered literally, or in accordance

with Luther's translation of the Fourth Commandment, by heiligen.

¹⁰ Turn *every*—*haste* by 'all considerations (Rücksichten) urged to the (zur) haste.'

¹¹ See page 44, note 2.

¹² Retain the corresponding foreign term, and use the genitive case.

¹³ *Exploring party*, Expedition.

¹⁴ *When examined*, bei genauer Untersuchung. For the construction of the whole clause see Extr. 5, note b.

¹⁵ In German the accusative case would not be used here; we must therefore supply the preposition zu after *invite*.

¹⁶ Turn here *in* by 'after.'

¹⁷ *Was ... moored*, lag ... vor Anker. Retain the name of the boat—*Mayflower*—using it as a fem. noun.

¹⁸ *In memory of*, zur Erinnerung an.

¹⁹ Use the singular of *hospitalities*, and turn *received* by 'enjoyed.'

²⁰ *At*, in; *port*, Hafen.

²¹ Turn *this*—*colony* by 'this oldest colony in New England.'

XVI.

THE SLAVE-MAKING¹ INSTINCT OF ANTS.

— This remarkable instinct was first discovered in¹ the *Formica (Polyerges) rufescens*² by Pierre Huber, a better observer even³ than his celebrated father.⁴ This ant is absolutely dependent on its slaves; without their aid the species⁵ would certainly become extinct in a single year. The workers, though most energetic and courageous in capturing slaves,⁶ do no other work. They are incapable of making⁷ their own nests, or of feeding their own larvæ.

When⁸ the old nest is found inconvenient, and they have to⁹ migrate, it is the slaves which determine¹⁰ the migration, and actually¹¹ carry their masters in their jaws. So utterly helpless are the masters, that when Huber shut up¹² thirty of them without a slave, but with plenty¹³ of the food which they like best, and with their larvæ and pupæ to stimulate¹⁴ them to work, they did nothing; they would not even feed themselves, and many perished¹⁵ of

¹ A literal translation of the epithet *slave-making* would here be inapplicable; we must therefore turn the above by 'the instinct of the ants to make slaves.' *In*, say bei.

² The *Formica rufescens*, or 'red ant,' is called die röthliche Ameise. The suffix *isch* modifies, like the English *ish*, the intensity of colours.

³ Turn *a—even* by 'a (use dative) yet sharper observer.'

⁴ Supply here *was*. The father of the naturalist Pierre Huber was Francis Huber, born at Geneva in 1750.

⁵ *Species*, Art; *become extinct*= die out.

⁶ *In capturing slaves*, im Eßlavenfange; *do*, here verrichten.

⁷ We say in German 'to build a nest.' See Extr. 9, note a.

⁸ See page 41, note 9.

⁹ *Have to* = must.

¹⁰ Supply here the preposition *über*, and see for the construction of *it is*, &c. page 34, note 13.

¹¹ *Actually*, thatsächlich, or, more idiomatically, factisch. Use for *jaws* the singular of 'mouth.'

¹² *To shut up*, einsperren; *of them*, say derselben.

¹³ *With plenty*, mit einer Menge; *food*, Nahrung; *and with*, say sammt.

¹⁴ *To stimulate*, anregen; use *supine* with *um*. *To work*, zum Arbeiten.

¹⁵ *Perished* = died; *of* in the above phrase is rendered by *vor*, or it may be omitted in the translation.

hunger. Huber then introduced¹ a single slave² (*Formica fusca*³), and she instantly set to work,⁴ fed and saved the survivors, made⁵ some cells and tended the larvæ, and put all to rights.⁶ What can be⁷ more extraordinary than these well-ascertained⁸ facts. If we had⁹ not known of¹⁰ any other slave-making¹¹ ant, it¹² would have been hopeless to have speculated¹³ how so wonderful an¹⁴ instinct could have been perfected.¹⁵—DARWIN, *The Origin of Species*.

tion, and the term *hunger* put in the genitive case.

¹ Render here *introduced* by *gestellte* dann zu ihnen.

² Use the masculine form of *slave*, but retain the feminine pronoun *she*, the same referring to 'ant' in general.

³ The *Formica fusca* is called in German die schwarzgraue Ameise.

⁴ *To set to work*, sich an die Arbeit machen.

⁵ Turn *made*, as with nests, by the verb 'to build;' *to tend*, here pflegen.

⁶ *To put all to rights*, brachte Alles in Ordnung.

⁷ Turn here *be* by 'give,' supplying the pronoun *es* before it.

⁸ *Well-ascertained*, völlig erwiesen.

When the word *fact* denotes 'a deed or action,' it must be rendered in German by That; and when it is synonymous with 'event,' as is the case here, by Thatfache. The term Factum, which has in the plural the two forms Facta and Facten, is sometimes used for *fact* in both significations.

⁹ It is a matter of course that the conditional mood is also to be used here in German, because a supposition is expressed which is contrary to reality. The conjunction *if* may, however, in similar cases be omitted in German (as also in English), and the condi-

tional clause given in an inverted form: e.g. Wären diese Lords wie Ihr sie schiltet, verstummen müßt ich; hoffungslos verloren wär' meine Sache, sprächen sie mich schuldig.—Schiller. *If these Lords were as you represent them, I must remain silent; my cause would be hopelessly lost if they pronounced me guilty.* From the two last clauses will also be seen that the hypothetical clause may be placed after the principal one.

¹⁰ *To know of* means here 'to have a knowledge of,' and may, therefore, be rendered by wissen von.

¹¹ Here we might employ for *slave-making* the expression facktent, i.e. to enslave, to enthrall; or turn the expression by 'an ant which makes slaves.'

¹² See the note to Ext. 7.

¹³ In German we can avoid the frequent repetition of the auxiliary verb haben by using the supine of nachtenten, preceded by the adverbial compound darüber.

¹⁴ The words *so wonderful* qualify in the above clause the term *instinct*. See, therefore, page 31, note 18.

¹⁵ The agent performing the action not being expressly mentioned, we ought to use here, according to the rule mentioned in Ext. 41, n. b, the reflective form of *to perfect*—here ausbilden—in the infinitive.

XVII.

THE BATTLE OF¹ THE ALMA.²

The French seized³ the empty ground which divided⁴ the enemy from the sea, and then undertook to assail the enemy's⁵ left wing; but were baffled⁶ by the want of a road for Canrobert's artillery, and by the exceeding cogency⁷ of the rule which forbids them⁸ from engaging⁹ their infantry on open ground without the support of cannon.¹⁰ Their failure¹¹ placed them in jeopardy; for they had committed¹² so large a¹³ proportion of their force to the distant part of the West Cliff¹⁴ and the sea-shore, that

¹ The preposition *of* before the name of a place near which a battle was fought is generally rendered by the preposition *bei* when the place is a town, village, island, &c.; by the preposition *an* when the place is a mountain, hill, stream, river, &c.: e.g. *the battle of Leipzig*, die Schlacht bei Leipzig; *the battle of the Katzbach*, die Schlacht an der Katzbach.

² The proper name *Alma* is, like that of most rivers, feminine.

³ *To seize*, the military expression, is in German *sich bemächtigen*; *the — ground*, des freien Terrains.

⁴ When *to divide* is synonymous with 'to keep apart,' render it by *trennen*; *undertook*, machten sich daran.

⁵ See page 14, note 4.

⁶ The verb *to baffle*, in the sense in which it is used here, cannot be applied in German to persons, since *vereiteln* is applicable to actions only, and not to the agents performing them. We can, therefore, say of a plan that it has been *vereitelt*, but not of a person. For this reason we should supply here the words 'their plans' before the verb.

⁷ *Exceeding cogency*, übermäßiger

Zwang. For the translation of the preposition *by*, occurring above twice, see the note to Ext. 46.

⁸ The German construction of the above sentence will be greatly simplified by omitting the pronoun *them*, and by construing *which forbids their infantry*, &c.

⁹ *From engaging*, sich . . . auf einen Kampf einzulassen; *open ground* = free field.

¹⁰ When *cannon* denotes artillery in general, it is rendered by the collective noun *Geschütz*, and by *Kanone* when it signifies the guns considered singly.

¹¹ One rendering of the comprehensive term *failure* has been given page 32, note 4. Here, however, it may be rendered by *vereiteter Versuch*.

¹² *Committed* = sent.

¹³ The article must in German be placed before the adjective, and the adverb. expression qualifying the same. *Proportion*, here *Anzahl*; *force* = troops.

¹⁴ The expression *West Cliff* forms in German a compound term. The Cliff, which lies near the sea-shore, is a height measuring 350 feet.

for¹ nearly an hour they lay much at the mercy² of any³ Russian general who might have chosen⁴ to take advantage of their severed condition.⁵

But instead of turning to his own glory⁶ the mistake the French had been making, Prince Mentschikoff hastened⁷ to copy it, wasting⁸ time and strength in a march towards the sea-shore and a counter-march⁹ back to the Telegraph.¹⁰ Still the sense¹¹ the French had of their failure,¹² and the galling fire which Kiriakoff's two batteries were by this time bringing to bear on them,¹³ began to create¹⁴ in their army a grave discontent and sensations scarce short of despondency.¹⁵ Seeing¹⁶ the danger to which¹⁷ this condition¹⁸ of things was leading, and becoming for¹⁹ other reasons impatient, Lord Raglan determined to order the²⁰ final advance of the English infantry, without waiting any longer for²¹ the time when²² Canrobert and Prince Napoleon should be established on

¹ Turn *for* by 'during.'

² *Lay*—*mercy*, sich ganz in der Gewalt...befinden.

³ When the pronoun *any* is used in the sense of 'every,' it must be rendered by jeder.

⁴ *Who*—*chosen*, dem es beigelallen wäre.

⁵ *Severed condition*, isolirte (or vereinzelte) Stellung.

⁶ Place the clause of *turning* (auszubeuten) to *his own glory* after *had been making*.

⁷ *To hasten*, here sich beeilen; *to copy*, say: zu wiederholen.

⁸ *To waste*, vergeuden. Cf. Int. p. xv., II., a, and use the imperfect.

⁹ We use also in German the military expression Contremarsch.

¹⁰ The *Telegraph* or *Telegraph Height* is a height joined on to the West Cliff, which was crowned during the time of the war by an unfinished turret, intended for a telegraph.

¹¹ *Sense* = consciousness. See the note to Ext. 23, and, further on, note 13.

¹² *Render of their failure*, by vom

Wegfliegen ihres Planes, i.e., ill success of their plan; *'galling* by lästig.

¹³ *Were*—*them*, jetzt auf sie richteten. The imperfect *began* is here the principal verb, and since the sentence does not begin with the subject itself, it should be placed after *still* (dennoch).

¹⁴ *To create* (feelings), hervorrufen. erwecken.

¹⁵ Turn *sensations*—*despondency* by 'feelings which nearly bordered on despondency.'

¹⁶ Turn *seeing*...*Lord Raglan* by 'since Lord Raglan...saw.'

¹⁷ *To which*, wozu.

¹⁸ We should use in German in phrases like the above the term *Lage* for *condition*.

¹⁹ Render the preposition *for* in the above phrase by aus, before which the adverb auch should be placed by way of expletive.

²⁰ Turn *to order the* by 'to give the order to the;,' final, endlich.

²¹ *To wait for*, here abwarten.

²² The adverb *when*, referring to general to any period of time, may also be rendered by wo.

the plateau.¹ So the English infantry went forward,² and in a few minutes³ the battalions which followed Codrington had not only defeated one of the two heavy "columns of attack"⁴ which marched down to assail them, but had⁴ stormed and carried⁵ the Great Redoubt.

From that moment the hill-sides⁶ on the Alma were⁷ no longer a fortified position; but they were still a battle-field, and a battle-field on which, for a time,⁸ the combatants were destined to meet⁹ with checkered fortune: for¹⁰ not having been supported at the right minute, and being encompassed by great organized numbers, Codrington's disordered force was made to fall back¹¹ under the weight¹² of the Vladimir column; and its retreat involved¹³ the centre battalion¹⁴ of the brigade of Guards.¹⁵

Nearly at the same time Kiriakoff, with his great "column of the eight battalions," pushed¹⁶ Canrobert down from the crest¹⁷ he had got to, obliging or causing him¹⁸ for a time to hang back¹⁹ under the cover of the steep.

At that time the prospects of the Allies were overcast.²⁰ But then the whole face of the battle was suddenly changed²¹ by the two guns which Lord Raglan had brought

¹ Should — plateau, das Plateau besetzt hätten.

² So . . . went forward, demgemäß rückte . . . vor.

³ The clause does not begin here with the subject.

⁴ Column of attack, Angriffssäule. Supply 'also' after had.

⁵ To carry (a place, &c.), einnehmen. The Great Redoubt — Große Redoute — was a breastwork thrown up by Prince Mentschikoff at a distance of about 300 yards from the river, on the jutting rib which goes round the front of the Kowrgané hill.

⁶ Hill-sides, Hügelabhänge.

⁷ Turn here were by 'formed,' and fortified by 'firm.' The term position may be retained in German.

⁸ For a time, eine Zeitlang.

⁹ Were — meet, zusammentreffen sollten; checkered, here abwechselnd.

¹⁰ Turn for—force, by 'for since Codrington's disordered (in Unordnung gerathene) troops were not supported at the right moment and were encompassed by great organized numbers (organisirten Massen).' Use to support, (unterstützen) in the passive voice, but not the verb to encompass (einschließen).

¹¹ Was—back, so wurden sie (i.e. the troops) . . . zurückgedrängt.

¹² Under the weight, durch die Wucht.

¹³ Involved, zog auch . . . mit hinein.

¹⁴ Centre battalion, here Centrum.

¹⁵ Brigade of Guards, Leibgarden-Brigade.

¹⁶ Pushed, transl. drängte.

¹⁷ Crest, Gipfel; to get to, erreichen.

¹⁸ Obliging—him; und zwang, oder veranlasste, ihn.

¹⁹ To hang back, zu zögern; cover, Schutz.

²⁰ Overcast, trübe.

²¹ Turn the clause But—changed

up¹ to the knoll; for not only did their fire extirpate² the Causeway batteries,³ and so lay open the pass,⁴ but it tore through⁵ the columns of Prince Mentschikoff's infantry reserves, and drove them at once from the field. This discomfiture of the Russian centre could not but govern the policy of Kiriakoff,⁶ obliging him to conform⁷ to its movement of retreat;⁷ and he must have been the more ready to acknowledge to himself⁸ the necessity of the step he was taking,⁹ since by¹⁰ this time he had suffered the disaster¹⁰ which was inflicted upon¹¹ his great "column of the eight battalions" by the French artillery. He retreated without being molested¹² by the French infantry, and took up¹³ a position at a distance of two miles from the Alma. Meanwhile, after a sheer¹⁴ fight of infantry, the whole strength¹⁵ that the enemy had on the Kowrgané hill¹⁶ was broken and turned to ruin¹⁷ by the Guards and the Highlanders. Thenceforth the

by 'but suddenly the battle assumed another face' (Gestalt).

¹ *Had brought up*, hatte...bringen lassen. We use here lassen for ge-lassen, in accordance with the rule that the auxiliary verbs of mood—dürfen, mögen, können, müssen, wollen, sollen, and lassen—are generally used in the infinitive instead of in the past participle when immediately following another infinitive.

² *To extirpate*, here vernichten.

³ *Causeway batteries*, Chaussee-Batterien. This refers to the two batteries which were placed by Prince Mentschikoff "astride the great road, and disposed along the chain of hillocks which runs across the pass, looking down on the bridge."

⁴ *So—pass*, machte auf diese Weise den Paß frei.

⁵ *Tore through*, zersprengte; *infantry reserves*, Infanteriereserve.

⁶ *Could—Kiriakoff*, mußte natürlich Kiriakoff's Strategik beeinflussen.

⁷ *To conform*, here sich anschließen; *movement of retreat*, rückgängige Bewegung.

⁸ *To acknowledge to himself*, sich eingestehen.

⁹ The whole of the above sentence might in German be condensed by turning it by 'and he must the more readily (um so eher) acknowledge to himself the necessity of this step.'

¹⁰ *By—disaster*, er von dem Unheil schon betroffen war.

¹¹ *To inflict upon*, zufügen, which v. governs the dat. of the person.

¹² Use the supine.

¹³ *To take up*, here einnehmen; *at—from*, zwei Meilen weit von... entfernt.

¹⁴ *Sheer*, here bloß. The two following nouns form in German a compound term.

¹⁵ *Strength*, here Macht.

¹⁶ The troops stationed on the Kowrgané hill were to oppose the Guards, the Highlanders, and the Light Division.

¹⁷ *To turn to ruin*, here vernichten. The preposition *by* is rendered by *von* when it refers to the agent or cause from which an action or effect proceeds.

slaughter¹ that is wrought by artillery upon retreating² masses was all that remained to be fulfilled.³—KINGLAKE, *The Crimean War*.

XVIII.

THE APOSTLE OF THE GOTHs.

Ulphilas,⁴ the Bishop and Apostle of the Goths, acquired their love and reverence by his blameless life and⁵ indefatigable zeal; and they received with implicit⁶ confidence the doctrines of truth and virtue which he preached and practised.⁷ He executed the arduous task of translating⁸ the Scriptures⁹ into their native tongue,¹⁰ a dialect of the German, or Teutonic, language; but he prudently¹¹ suppressed the four Books of Kings, as¹² they might tend¹³ to irritate the fierce and sanguinary¹⁴ spirit of the barbarians.

The rude, imperfect idiom¹⁵ of soldiers and shepherds, so ill qualified¹⁶ to communicate *any* spiritual ideas, was improved and modulated¹⁷ by this genius; and Ulphilas,¹⁸

¹ *Slaughter* (in fights, &c.), *Ge-
metzel*; *is wrought...upon*, *unter...
angerrichtet wird*. For the rendering
of *by* see page 52, note 17.

² *Retreating* = fleeing.

³ *That — fulfilled*, was noch zu
thun übrig blieb.

⁴ Ulphilas, the son of Christian
captives from Cappadocia, was born
about the year 318. Ulphilas, signi-
fying in Gothic 'Little Wolf,' is spelt
in German as in English, but some-
times the letter *f* is substituted for
ph. The Gothic spelling was, to
judge from Jornandes, *Vulfila*.

⁵ It is almost a matter of course
that the possessive pronoun must
here be repeated, on account of the
difference of gender of the qualified
noun.

⁶ *Implicit*, unbetingt.

⁷ *To practise*, here ausüben.

⁸ Use the Supine.

⁹ *The Scriptures*, die heilige Schrift,
or die Bibel.

¹⁰ *Native tongue*, Muttersprache.

¹¹ *Prudently*, vorsichtiger Weise.

¹² See page 43, note 11.

¹³ *Might tend*, translate dazu bei-
tragen konnten; *to irritate*, aufregen.

¹⁴ *Sanguinary*, lit. blutig, blut-
gierig; transl. here kriegerisch.

¹⁵ We use the same expression
in German.

¹⁶ *So ill qualified*, das sich so schlecht
dazu eignete; *to communicate* = to
express; *spiritual*, here abstract.

¹⁷ *To modulate*, here verfeinern.

¹⁸ Insert here the words *was
obliged*, and turn *frame* by 'make.'

before he could frame his version, was obliged to compose¹ a new alphabet of twenty-four letters, four² of which he invented to express the peculiar sounds³ that were unknown to the Greek and Latin pronunciation.

The character of Ulphilas recommended him to⁴ the esteem of the Eastern⁴ Court, where he twice appeared as the minister of peace;⁵ he pleaded the cause⁶ of the distressed Goths who implored the protection of Valens;⁷ and the name of Moses was applied⁸ to this spiritual guide, who conducted his people⁹ through the deep waters of the Danube to the Land of Promise.¹⁰ The devout shepherds, who were attached to his person and tractable to his voice,¹¹ acquiesced in their settlement at the foot of the Mæsan¹² mountains, in a country of woodlands and pastures,¹³ which supported¹⁴ their flocks and herds,¹⁵ and enabled¹⁶ them to purchase the corn and wine of the more plentiful provinces.¹⁷ These harmless barbarians multiplied¹⁸ in obscure peace and the profession¹⁹ of Christianity.—GIBBON, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*.

¹ To compose, here bilden.

² Place the numeral *four* after *he*.

³ *Peculiar sounds*, eigenthümliche Laute; *unknown*, say fremd.

⁴ Turn *The—to* briefly by 'Ulphilas gained by his character.'—*Eastern*, here: östlich.

⁵ *Minister of peace*, Friedensbote.

⁶ To plead a cause, eine Sache führen; *distressed*, here bebrängt.

⁷ Proper names—especially those of foreign origin—terminating in a sibilant, i.e. s, ß, x, [ch], z, are not declined, but have the case pointed out by the definite article.

⁸ To apply (a name), beilegen; *spiritual*, here geistlich.

⁹ See page 41, note 11. *Waters*, Gewässer.

¹⁰ The Biblical expression for the *Land of Promise* is in German das gelobte Land; *devout* = pious.

¹¹ *Tractable—voice*, translate auf seine Stimme hörten; *acquiesced—the*, ließen sich ruhig nieder am.

¹² *Mæsan*, mössisch.

¹³ The expression of *woodlands and pastures* may be rendered by the terms waldig und wiesenreich, used as attributive adjectives before the noun *country*.

¹⁴ To support, here nähren.

¹⁵ The two synonyms *flocks and herds* might here be rendered by the single expression *Herde*, though the term *Rudel* is also used for *herd*, especially when referring to deer and pigs.

¹⁶ To enable, here in den Stand setzen.

¹⁷ *Plentiful provinces* = blessed countries.

¹⁸ To multiply, here sich vermehren. *obscure*, unbeachtet.

¹⁹ *Profession*, Bekenntniß.

XIX.

THE PRAIRIE.¹

In truth there is nothing² to describe about the prairie except its vastness, and that is indescribable. * * * East,³ west, north, and south—on the right *hand* and on the left—in front and behind—stretched⁴ the broken, woodless upland. Underneath the foot a springy⁵ turf, covered with scentless violets and wild prairie roses; overhead⁶ a bright, cloudless sky, whence the sun shot down beams that would have scorched up the soil long ago but for⁷ the fresh, soft prairie breeze blowing from across the Rocky Mountains; ⁸ low, grassy slopes on every side, looking like waves of turf⁹ rising and falling gently. Not a tree to be seen¹⁰ in the far distance; not a house in sight,¹¹ far or near; not a drove¹² of sheep or a herd of cattle; no sign of life except the dun-coloured prairie chickens¹³ whirring through the heather as we drove along,¹⁴—nothing but the broken, woodless upland.

¹ The term *prairie* is also used in German, where it retains the original feminine gender.

² *There is nothing*, transl. es läßt sich...nicht; *about*, here von.

³ Supply *nach* before *East*; *in—behind*, vor uns und hinter uns.

⁴ *To stretch*, here sich ausdehnen; *broken*, with reference to land, uneben; *woodless*, waldblos.

⁵ Turn *underneath*—*springy* by 'under the feet elastic.'

⁶ *Overhead*, say: über dem Haupte.

⁷ The expression *but for*, referring to a present participle, must be turned by 'if not,' and the present participle changed into the conditional. The sense of the passage must determine which tense is to be employed. Here we should use the present conditional, i.e. 'if ...did not blow.'

⁸ *From — Mountains*, von dem

Felsengebirge her. The original English name *Rocky Mountains* is not unfrequently met with in German books. Humboldt employs it in his „Ansichten der Natur."

⁹ Turn *waves of turf* by the compound 'grass-waves,' using *rising and falling gently* (sanft auf- und niederwogend) as an attributive clause.

¹⁰ Turn *to be seen* by 'is to see.'

¹¹ *In sight*, sichtbar. For *far and near* we use in German the alliterative expression *weit und breit*, to which the English 'far and wide' corresponds.

¹² *Drove*, Trieb, from *treiben*, to drive.

¹³ *Prairie chickens*, amerikanische Feldhühner. The word *dun-coloured* may here be rendered by *dunkelfarbig*; whirring, *die ... schwirrten*.

¹⁴ *To drive along* and, further on, to pass on, dahinfahren.

So we passed on, coming from time to time upon¹ some break² in the monotony of the vast, dreamlike³ solitude. Sometimes it was a prairie stream, running⁴ clear as crystal between *its* low, sedgy banks, through⁵ which our horses forded knee-deep, and then again the broken, woodless upland; sometimes it was a lone Irish shanty,⁶ knocked up roughly with⁷ planks and logs, and wearing a look⁸ as though it had been built by shipwrecked settlers⁹ stranded on the shore of the prairie-sea. Farther on we came upon¹⁰ a herd of half-wild horses, who as we approached dashed away¹¹ in a wild stampede; then upon a knot of trees,¹² whose¹³ seeds had been wafted from the distant forest, and taken root¹⁴ kindly on the rich prairie soil; now upon an emigrant's team, *with* the women and children under the canvas awning,¹⁵ and the red-shirted and brigand-looking miners¹⁶ at its side, travelling across the prairie in search of¹⁷ the land of

¹ *To come upon* (anything), stoßen auf. See Int. page xv., II., a.

² *Break*, here Abwechslung.

³ *Dreamlike*, traumhaft.

⁴ *Running* may here be rendered by the present participle dahinfließend, placing it after *banks*.

⁵ *Through...forded*, durchwateten.

⁶ *Shanty*, Blockhaus or Hütte. Some German writers employ the English expression. *Knocked up*, translate zusammen gezimmert. The verb zimmern is applied to work done by carpenters.

⁷ Translate *with* by aus; cf. the note to Extr. 3.

⁸ *To wear a look*, aussehen.

⁹ The German for *settler* is Ansiedler, but the English word is also used; *shipwrecked*, schiffbrüchig.

¹⁰ See above, note 1.

¹¹ *To dash away*, fortstürzen. Render the Americanism *stampede*—from the Spanish *estampido*—denoting a sudden scamper of large bodies of cattle or horses on the prairies, by Flucht.

¹² *Knot of trees*, Baumgruppe.

¹³ In German we could not use

here the relative pronoun, because it would imply that it was the seeds which the trees themselves had produced that were wafted from the distant forest. We should therefore, in order to avoid an ambiguity, render *whose*—*wafted*, freely by die ihr Dasein dem Samen verbannt, der...hergetragen worden.

¹⁴ *To take root*, Wurzel fassen; *kindly*, here schnell, and *rich*, üppig; *emigrant's team*, Auswanderergeräth.

¹⁵ *Canvas awning* (of vehicles), Plane. In some parts of Germany people say Blau.

¹⁶ There are no single equivalents for the adjectives *red-shirted* and *brigand-looking*, and the expression *miners* could not be rendered here by Bergleute, as this term is generally applied to professional miners only. The whole clause must, therefore, be turned by 'the gold-diggers with their red shirts and brigand-like appearance' (räuberhaftem Aussehen).

¹⁷ *In search of*, um... aufzusuchen; *land of gold* forms in German a compound term.

gold; and then again the silent solitude and the broken, woodless upland.—E. DICEY, *Six Months in the Federal States*.

XX.

CHIVALRY¹ IN SPAIN.

Spain was indeed the land of chivalry. The respect for the sex² which had descended³ from the Visigoths⁴ was mingled⁵ with the religious enthusiasm which had been⁶ kindled in the long wars with the Infidel.⁷ The apotheosis⁸ of chivalry in the person of their apostle and patron, St. James,⁹ contributed still further to this exaltation of sentiment,¹⁰ which was maintained¹¹ by the various military orders, who devoted themselves, in the bold language of the age, to the service “of God and the ladies.” So that the Spaniard may be said to have put in action¹²

¹ *Chivalry*, here das Ritterthum, or das Ritterwesen, and not die Ritterschaft; for the latter denotes the ‘body or order of knights,’ whilst the former expressions signify the ‘system or practice of knighthood.’

² The expression *sex*, alone, cannot be used in German, as is done in English, to denote ‘womankind;’ the adjectives ‘female’ or ‘fair’ must, therefore, be supplied before the noun.

³ *To descend*, herkommen.

⁴ The Visigoths have, like all other members of the great German family, at all times displayed the deepest respect towards women, to whom they attributed an almost sacred character. *Visigoths*, Westgothen.

⁵ Turn *was mingled* by the reflexive form ‘united itself.’

⁶ See Extr. 4, note *b*; *to kindle*, fig. anfachen; use the imperf.

⁷ The term *Infidel*, used here collectively for unbelievers, is in

German employed in the plural.

⁸ Retain here the corresponding foreign term. *Patron*, Schutzheilige.

⁹ *St. James* standing here in apposition to the preceding nouns, we must render it by Sanct Iago or des heiligen Jacob. The patron of the Spanish knights was the Apostle St. James (Spanish *Jago*), said to be buried in the Spanish town called after him Santjago di Compostella. The *shrine* (Schrein) of the patron is in that place.

¹⁰ The whole clause *contributed—sentiment* must in German be rather freely paraphrased by *trug noch mehr dazu bei, diesem Gefühle einen höhern Aufschwung zu verleihen*.

¹¹ *To maintain*, here nähren; *orders*, here Orden; *to devote oneself*, sich widmen; *age*, here Zeit; *ladies*, Damen.

¹² Turn *so—action* by ‘so that one can say that the Spaniard put in action.’ *To put in action*, that, sächlich ausführen.

what, in other countries, passed for the extravagances¹ of the minstrel. An example of this² occurs in the fifteenth century, when² a passage of arms was defended³ at Orbigo, not far from the shrine of Compostella, by⁴ a Castilian knight, named Suero de Queñones, and his nine companions, against all comers,⁵ in the presence of John the Second and his court.

The object was⁶ to release the knight from the obligation, imposed on him by his mistress,⁷ of publicly wearing an iron collar round his neck⁸ every Thursday. The jousts⁹ continued for thirty days, and the doughty champions¹⁰ fought, without shield or target,¹¹ with weapons bearing points of Milan steel.¹² Six hundred and twenty-seven encounters¹³ took place, and *one* hundred and sixty-six lances were broken,¹⁴ when the emprise¹⁵ was declared to be fairly achieved. The whole affair¹⁶ is narrated with becoming¹⁷ gravity by an eye-witness, and the reader may fancy himself¹⁸ perusing the adventures of a Launcelot or an Amadis.—PRESCOTT, *History of the Reign of Ferdinand and Isabella*.

¹ Passed—extravagances, für die Ueberschwenglichkeiten...galt.

² Of this, hievon; to occur, vorkommen. See page 50, note 22.

³ A—defended, ein Ritterkampf... aufgenommen wurde.

⁴ See page 52, note 17.

⁵ Transl. all comers by alle Welt.

⁶ The object was, dies hatte zum Zweck; to release, befreien.

⁷ Turn the clause *the—mistress* by 'the on him by his lady imposed obligation (auferlegten Verpflichtung).

⁸ Collar round his neck, say simply Halsband.

⁹ Joust, Turnier. Use here the singular only. Continued = lasted.

¹⁰ Champion, here Kämpfe.

¹¹ The term target denoting here a shield, formerly used as a defen-

sive weapon, must be rendered by Tartsche.

¹² Bearing — steel, deren Spitzen aus Mailänder Stahl waren.

¹³ Encounter, here Kampf.

¹⁴ To break, here brechen.

¹⁵ Translate *emprise*, by Aufgabe; and render to *be fairly achieved* by für vollständig gelöst.

¹⁶ When the expression *affair* is synonymous with 'incident,' it is rendered by Ereigniß; when with 'occurrence,' by Vorfall; and when with 'event,' as is the case here, by Begebenheit.

¹⁷ *Becoming*, here geziemend. The corresponding foreign term of *gravity* may here be retained.

¹⁸ Transl. *may fancy himself* by könnte glauben, and turn the present part. *perusing* by 'that he reads.'

XXI.

CHARLES THE GREAT.

1.

CORONATION OF CHARLES¹ AT ROME.

Charles remained in the city for² some weeks; and on Christmas-day, A.D. 800, he heard mass in the basilica of St. Peter.³ On the spot where now the gigantic dome of Bramante and Michael Angelo towers⁴ over the buildings of the modern city, the spot⁵ which tradition had hallowed as that of the Apostle's martyrdom,⁶ Constantine the Great had erected the oldest and stateliest⁷ temple of Christian Rome.

Out of the⁸ transept a flight of steps led up to the high altar,⁹ underneath and just beyond the great arch, the Arch of Triumph,¹⁰ as it was¹¹ called: behind in the semi circular apse¹² sat the clergy, rising tier above tier

¹ See Ext. 11, note *a*.

² The literal translation of the preposition *for* would here be an Anglicism, duration of time being generally expressed in German, as in Latin, by the accusative only. Sometimes the word *lang* is added, if the length of time is to be denoted emphatically, as: vierzig Jahre lang, *for forty years*. For the constr. of *in—weeks*, cf. Ext. 4, n. *a*.

³ Turn here *the—St. Peter* by 'the St. Peter's Church.' The abbreviation *St.* is in accordance with the Latin *sanctus*, for which it stands, pronounced in German 'Sanct'; *gigantic dome*, Riesendom.

⁴ *To tower*, emporragen.

⁵ *The spot*, say: an jener Stelle.

⁶ Turn *which—martyrdom* by 'which the tradition *has* hallowed as that wherethe martyrdom of the Apostle *has* taken place.' Accord-

ing to tradition, the Apostle Peter was crucified on that spot A.D. 67.

⁷ *Stately*, here prächtig.

⁸ *Out of the*, vom.

⁹ *High altar* is in German a compound substantive; and the principal member—that is, the component which determines the other—being an adjective, it is joined without any inflection to the subordinate member. Place *out—transept* before *up to the* (*bis zum ...hinauf*); *just beyond*, gerade hinter.

¹⁰ Turn *Arch of Triumph* by the compound term 'triumph-arch.' In German compound expressions the principal, or qualifying, member always precedes the other, as is also the case with the English compounds forming one word.

¹¹ See Extr. 4, note *b*.

¹² *Semi circular apse*, halbkreisförmige Apsis. The word *apsis* is

around its walls;¹ in the midst, high above the rest,² and looking down, past the altar, over³ the multitude, was placed² the Bishop's throne, itself⁴ the curule chair of some⁵ forgotten magistrate.⁶ From that chair the Pope now rose,⁷ as the reading of the Gospel ended,⁸ advanced to⁹ where Charles—who had exchanged his simple Frankish dress for the sandals and the chlamys¹⁰ of a Roman patrician—knelt in prayer by¹¹ the high altar; and as in the sight¹² of all he placed upon the brow¹³ of the barbarian¹⁴ chieftain the diadem of the Cæsars, then bent in obeisance¹⁵ before him, the church rang to the shout¹⁶ of the multitude,¹⁷ again free, again the lords¹⁸ and centre of the world: "*Karolo Augusto, a Deo coronato, magno et pacifico Imperatori, vita et victoria.*"¹⁹

In that shout, echoed by the Franks without,²⁰ was

sometimes rendered by *Chernische*, i.e. niche of the choir, or by *Abseite*, off-side; *clergy*, *Geistlichkeit*.

¹ Render the clause *rising—walls* by in aufsteigenden Reihen an den Wänden herum.

² Transl. *high above the rest*. . was placed, bystand, alles Andere überragend.

³ *Looking—over*, über den Altar hinweg . . . übersehend.

⁴ The pronoun *itself* should here be rendered freely by *chmalig*, 'former,' to be used as an attributive adjective, with the definite article. *Curule*, *curulisch*.

⁵ *Some* is here synonymous with 'any one,' and is to be rendered by irgend ein.

⁶ Translate here *magistrate* by Staatsbeamten; the *curule chair* having been the seat of honour of the highest dignitaries of the ancient Roman State.

⁷ *To rise*, in the sense of 'to get up from a seat, &c.' is rendered in the more elevated style by sich erheben, instead of aufstehen.

⁸ *As—ended*, transl. so wie das Evangelium verlesen war.

⁹ Render *advanced* to by schritt bis zu dem Platze vor; *Frankish*, fränkisch.

¹⁰ There is no exact and single

German equivalent for the Greek term *chlamys*. We may retain the original expression, die Chlamis, or render it by Staatsmantel.

¹¹ Turn *knelt—by* by 'praying knelt at: ' as, here wie.

¹² *Sight*, here Angesicht.

¹³ *Brow*, transl. Haupt, which is the more dignified expression for Kopf, head.

¹⁴ The adjective *barbarian* would in German be too strong an epithet here: use, therefore, the less harsh expression *Barbarenhäuptling* for *barbarian chieftain*. Turn *diadem* by 'crown.' *Cæsars*, denoting 'Emperors,' is in German Cäsaren.

¹⁵ *Bent in obeisance*, sich tief.. verneigte.

¹⁶ *To ring to the shout*, von dem Rufe erschallen.

¹⁷ Turn *multitude* by 'people, and add 'which was.'

¹⁸ For *lords* use Beherrscher, in the singular only; *centre*, Mittelpunkt.

¹⁹ Turn the above Latin phrase by 'Long life and victory to Charles Augustus, the crowned by God, great and peace-loving Emperor.' *Vita* might also be rendered here by Heil, i.e. hail.

²⁰ *Echoed—without*, in welchen die

pronounced the union, so long in preparation,¹ so mighty in its consequences, of the Roman and the Teuton, of the memories² and the civilization of the South with the fresh energy of the North, and from that moment modern³ history begins.³

2.

CHARACTER OF CHARLES THE GREAT.

No claim can be more groundless⁴ than that which the modern French, the sons of the Latinised Kelt, set up to⁵ the Teutonic Charles. At Rome he might⁶ assume the chlamys⁷ and the sandals, but at the head⁸ of his Frankish host he strictly adhered to⁹ the customs of his country, and was beloved by his people as the very¹⁰ ideal of their own character and habits.¹⁰ Of strength and stature almost superhuman,¹¹ in swimming and hunting¹² unsurpassed, steadfast¹³ and terrible in fight, to¹⁴ his friends gentle and condescending, he was¹⁵ a Roman, much less a Gaul, in

Franken von außen einstimmt. The literal wiederhellen, for *to echo*, cannot be used with reference to persons.

¹ Turn *in preparation* by 'prepared,' and render *so mighty in its consequences* by the expressive compound term *folgenreich*; placing both adjectives as attributes before *union* (*Verbindung*); *of—Teutons*, 'between the Romans and Teutons.'

² *Memories*, say: *historischen Vergangenheit*.

³ Render *from that moment modern---begins*, by *von diesem Augenblicke an datirt die neue*.

⁴ *Groundless*, here *unbegründet*; *Latinised*, *latinisirt*.

⁵ *To set up a claim to anything*, einen Anspruch auf etwas machen. Recent historical investigations have conclusively proved that Charles the Great was born in the country formerly called *Austrasia*; consequently, on genuine German soil.

⁶ Use here for *might* the imperfect of *mögen*; *to assume*, here *ansthun*.

⁷ See page 60, note 10.

⁸ We say in German, in the above and similar phrases, an der Spitze; *host* = army.

⁹ *To adhere strictly to anything*, streng an etwas halten.

¹⁰ *Very* may here be rendered by the expressive term *verförpert*, i.e. embodied. Cf. p. 42, n. 9.

¹¹ Turn *of—superhuman* by 'of nearly superhuman strength and stature' (*Statur*).

¹² See page 15, note 1.

¹³ *Steadfast*, *standhaft*.

¹⁴ *To* is here to be rendered by the preposition *gegenüber*, which is put after the noun to which it refers; *gentle*, *milde*.

¹⁵ The expression *in nothing* is to be placed in the translation after *he was*, and the indefinite article before *Roman* and *Gau*, omitted.

nothing but¹ his culture and his width of view,²—otherwise a Teuton. The centre of his realm was the Rhine; his capitals Aachen and Engilenheim;³ his army German; his sympathies, as they are shown⁴ in the gathering of the old hero-lays,⁵ the composition⁶ of a German grammar, the ordinance against confining prayer to⁷ the three languages—Hebrew, Greek, and Latin—were all for the race from which he sprang,⁸ and whose advance,⁹ represented by the victory of Austrasia, the true Frankish fatherland,¹⁰ over Neustria and Aquitaine, spread a second Germanic wave¹¹ over the conquered countries.—JAMES BRYCE, *The Holy Roman Empire*.

XXII.

LOVE OF¹² FLOWERS.

Perhaps it may be thought, if we understood flowers better, we might love them less.¹³ We do not love them

¹ *But*, referring here to the term *nothing*, is to be rendered by *als*, and the preposition *in* repeated after it.

² *Width of view*, umfassende Anschauungsreise; otherwise, sonst

³ *Engilenheim*, now called *Ingelheim*, lies between Mentz and Bingen, not far from the left bank of the Rhine.

⁴ *Are shown*, transl. sich fundgeben.

⁵ *Hero-lay*, Heldenlied.

⁶ *Composition*, transl. Ausarbeitung, i.e. elaboration. We might also use the infinitive *verfassen* substantively, and render *the* by *im*. It may not be quite superfluous to remark here, that although the verb *to compose* (a book) is rendered by *verfassen*, we rarely use the noun *Verfassung* for *the composition* (of a book), but employ it for the 'state or mood of the mind,' and more particularly for the political constitution of a country.

⁷ *The—to*, in der Verordnung das Gebet nicht bloß auf...zu beschränken.

⁸ *Were—sprang*, waren sämtlich für die Rasse aus welcher er stammte.

⁹ Translate *advance* by *Ausdehnung*, and *represented* by *wie sie...* bezeichnet wird. *Austrasia*, Aufrasien.

¹⁰ *The—fatherland*, dem eigentlichen Heimatland der Franken. *Neustria*, Neustrien; *Aquitaine*, Aquitanien.

¹¹ *Wave*, in the sense in which it is used here, *Woge*.

¹² The objective genitive, i.e. the genitive which stands as an object of some action or feeling, is frequently expressed in German by a preposition, in order to avoid all ambiguity. The governing substantive or the verb from which it is derived will in such instances show which preposition is required. The noun *love* is in German followed by the preposition *an*.

¹³ Turn *Perhaps—less* by 'one

much as it is.¹ Few people care about² flowers. * * * I have never³ heard of a piece of land which would let well on a building lease remaining unlet because it was⁴ a flowery piece. I have never heard of parks being kept for⁵ wild hyacinths, though often of their being kept⁶ for wild beasts. And the blossoming time⁷ of the year being principally spring, I perceive it to be the mind of most people⁸ during that period to stay in towns.

A year or two ago⁹ a keen-sighted and eccentrically-minded friend of mine¹⁰ having taken it into his head¹¹ to violate this national custom, and go to *the* Tyrol in spring, was passing through a valley near Landeck with several similarly headstrong companions. A strange mountain appeared¹² in the distance, belted about its breast with a zone of blue,¹³ like our English Queen. Was it a blue cloud? * * * Was it a mirage—a meteor? Would it stay to be approached?¹⁴ (Ten miles of winding road¹⁵ yet

could perhaps believe, that we should love the flowers less if we understood more of them.'

¹ Translate *as it is* by auch so, and place the same at the beginning of the clause.

² *Care about*, in the above sense, machen sich etwas aus.

³ Supply here *davon*, and turn of—*unlet* by 'that a piece of land which would let well on a building lease (das sich zu Bauzwecken gut vermieten ließe) remained unlet.'

⁴ Use here the present tense, and translate *a flowery piece* by ein blumenreicher Boden.

⁵ Turn here *for* by 'on account of,' and construe the clause according to note 3 above.

⁶ Turn of *their being kept* by 'that one kept them.'

⁷ *Blossoming time*, Blüthezeit. See Int. page xvi., c, and supply *im* before *spring*. To *perceive*, bemerken.

⁸ Turn *it—people* by 'that most people like' (mögen).

⁹ Turn the above clause by 'before one or two years,' and in construing the following clauses remember that the sentence does not begin

with the subject, and that the expression *was passing through* (fam... durch) contains the principal verb.

¹⁰ *A—mine*, ein scharfsichtiger und excentrischer Freund von mir. In similar phrases the dative is used in German for the genitive.

¹¹ *To take anything into one's head*, sich etwas vornehmen; *to violate*, here entgegen handeln.

¹² *To appear*, here sich zeigen.

¹³ *Belted—blue*, in der Mitte mit einem blauen Gürtel geschmückt; *like*, here wie.

¹⁴ *Would—approached*, wird es bei der Annäherung nicht verschwinden? i.e. will it not disappear at our approaching it? Some free version of the kind is necessary in German, partly because *to approach* is an intransitive verb, and cannot be used in the passive voice, and partly because it seems more in accordance with the genius of the German language to ask whether the *blue zone* will not disappear, as a rainbow would, than to inquire whether it would stay, since this verb would imply a voluntary action.

¹⁵ *Of—road*, einer sich hinwindenden

between them and the foot of its mountain.) Such questioning¹ had they concerning it. My keen-sighted friend alone maintained it to be substantial;² whatever it might be, it was not air, and would not vanish. The ten miles of road³ were overpassed, the carriage left,⁴ the mountain climbed. It stayed⁵ patiently, expanding⁶ still into richer breadth and heavenlier glow⁷—a belt of gentians. Such things⁸ may verily be seen among the Alps in spring, and in spring only.⁹ Which being so,¹⁰ I observe most people prefer going in autumn.—JOHN RUSKIN, *Modern Painters*.

XXIII.

LIFE¹¹ AMONG THE BEDOUINS.

1.

If a Bedouin tribe¹² be moving in great haste before an enemy,¹³ and should be unable to stop for many hours,¹⁴ or be making a forced march to avoid pursuit over¹⁵ a desert where the wells are very distant from each other, the

Straße. Supply *lagen* before *yet* (noch), and turn *its* by 'the.'

¹ *Questioning* = questions; *had* —it, stellten sie darüber auf.

² *Substantial*, transl. etwas Wirkliches. Cf. Int. page xvii., III. *Whatever*—was, was immer es auch sei, so war es.

³ Turn *road* by 'way,' putting it in the genitive case without any article; *overpassed*, zurückgelegt. Here the action may be considered as quite past.

⁴ Supply here the imperfect of *werden*; *to climb*, erklimmen. The prefix *er* denotes here the achieving of an action.

⁵ *Stayed*, transl. lag...da.

⁶ Use in German the reflexive form, retaining the present participle; *into richer*, zu völlerer.

⁷ *Heavenlier glow*, transl. tieferer Himmelsbläue; *gentians*, Enzianen.

⁸ *Such things*, Dergleichen; *may verily be seen* = can one verily see.

⁹ *Only* should be placed before *in spring*.

¹⁰ *Which being so*, und da dies der Fall ist; supply 'that' before *most*, and 'it' before *prefer*; *going*, zu reisen.

¹¹ *Life*, here Lebensweise; *among* = of.

¹² *Bedouin tribe*, Beduinestamm.

¹³ Turn *be—enemy* by 'flees before an enemy in great haste.'

¹⁴ Render *should—hours* by viele Stunden lang nicht Halt machen kann.

¹⁵ Turn *be—over* by 'if he, in order to avoid pursuit (um der Verfolgung zu entgehen), makes a forced march (Eilmarsch) through.'

women sometimes prepare¹ bread whilst riding on camels. The fire is then lighted in an earthen vessel. One woman kneads the flour, a second rolls out the dough, and a third bakes, boys or women on foot passing the materials, as required,² from one to the other. But it is very rare that the Bedouins are obliged to have recourse to this process,³ and I have only once witnessed⁴ it.

2.

The common Bedouin can rarely get⁵ meat. His food⁶ consists almost exclusively of wheaten bread⁷ with truffles, which are found in great abundance during the spring, a few wild⁸ herbs, such as asparagus, onions, and garlic; fresh butter, curds,⁹ and sour milk.

But at certain seasons even these luxuries¹⁰ cannot be obtained: for months together¹¹ he often eats bread alone. The Sheikhs¹² usually slay¹³ a sheep every day, of which their guests, a few of their relatives, and their immediate adherents partake.¹⁴ The women prepare the food,¹⁵ and always eat after the men,¹⁶ who rarely leave them much wherewith to satisfy¹⁷ their hunger.

¹ Cf. the note to Ext. 7.

² *Passing* — required, bringen die Sachen so wie sie gebraucht werden.

³ *Process* being here synonymous with 'proceeding,' is to be rendered by Verfahren.

⁴ Turn here *witnessed* by 'seen.'

⁵ *To get*, here bekommen.

⁶ When *food* expresses in a general sense all that is eaten for nourishment, we use in German Nahrung; but when it is a synonym of *dish*, denoting a particular kind of food, the German equivalent is Speise.

⁷ Form here a compound expression from *wheat* and *bread*.

⁸ *A few wild*, aus einigen wildwachsenden; such as, wie.

⁹ *Curds*, Quarg, for which the

expression Käsebutter is used in some parts of Germany.

¹⁰ *Luxuries*, here Lederbissen; cannot be obtained, sind...nicht zu haben.

¹¹ Substitute in the translation 'long' for *together*, and omit *for*.

¹² *Sheikh* is written in German either Scheif or Scheich, and pronounced as a German word.

¹³ *To slay* (an animal for eating), schlachten.

¹⁴ *Of which...partake*, transl. an dessen Genuß...Theil nehmen.

¹⁵ See above, note 6.

¹⁶ *Men* denotes here male individuals; we must therefore use the plural of Mann. Compare the Latin *vir* and the Greek *άνήρ*.

¹⁷ Turn *wherewith to satisfy* by 'with which they could satisfy.'

3.

The dish¹ usually seen in a Bedouin tent² is a mess³ of boiled meat, sometimes mixed with onions, upon which a lump of fresh butter is placed and allowed to melt.⁴ The broad tail of the Mesopotamian⁵ sheep is used for grease when there is no butter. Sometimes cakes of bread⁶ are laid under the meat, and the entertainer,⁷ tearing up the thin loaves into small pieces, soaks⁸ them in the gravy⁹ with his hands. The Anezza¹⁰ make very savoury dishes of chopped meat and bread mixed with sour curds, over which when the huge platter¹¹ is placed before the guest is poured a flood of melted butter. Roasted meat is very rarely seen in a Bedouin tent. Rice is only eaten by the Sheikhs, except among¹² the tribes who encamp¹³ in the marshes of Southern Mesopotamia,¹⁴ where rice of an inferior quality¹⁵ is very largely cultivated.¹⁶ There it is boiled with meat and made into pilaws.¹⁷

¹ See page 65, note 6. *Usually* *seen* = which one usually sees.

² *Bedouin tent*, Beduinenzelt.

³ *Mess*, here Gericht; *lump* = piece.

⁴ *Turn and—melt* by 'which one lets melt.'

⁵ *Mesopotamian*, mesopotamisch. By means of the suffix *isch*—the English *ish*—we form in German adjectives from the proper names of countries, nations, persons, &c., *For*, here als; *grease*, Fett.

⁶ *Cakes of bread*, transl. platte Brodfuchen.

⁷ *Entertainer*, Wirth; *tearing up*, bricht.

⁸ *To soak*, here tunfen. Supply the conjunction *und* before *soaks*.

⁹ The equivalent for *gravy* is not the same in all parts of Germany. It is called Sauce, Brühe, or Jus. The first term, in which *au* has the sound of *o* in *große*, and the *e* is also pronounced, is the more usual. The last expres-

sion is pronounced as in French.

¹⁰ The plural is in German Anezzaß. *Savoury*, schmackhaft.

¹¹ *Huge platter*, riesige Schüssel; *flood*, here Ström.

¹² *Among*, here bei.

¹³ *To encamp* may here be rendered by the corresponding foreign term, campiren.

¹⁴ Proper names of countries preceded by adjectives generally require in German the definite article. The names themselves are by some authors not declined, in analogy with the rule for the decl. of proper names of persons preceded by the def. art. *Southern Mesopotamia*. Süd-Mesopotamien.

¹⁵ Render an *inferior quality* by eine schlechtere Art, placing this expression before the term *rice*, and omitting the preposition *of*.

¹⁶ *Is—cultivated*, in großer Menge gebaut wird.

¹⁷ *Made into pilaws*, Pilaws daraus zubereitet.

4.

The Bedouins are acquainted with¹ few medicines. The desert yields² some valuable simples, which are, however, rarely used.

Dr. Sandwith hearing³ from Suttum that the Arabs had no opiates, asked⁴ what they did with one who could⁵ not sleep. "Do!"⁶ answered the Sheikh: "why,⁷ we make use of him, and set⁸ him to watch the camels."—LAYARD, *Discoveries in the Ruins of Nineveh and Babylon*.

XXIV.

SIR SIDNEY SMITH AT BATH.

Not even a rumour of Sir Sidney's⁹ escape had or could have run before him,¹⁰ for at the moment of¹¹ reaching the coast of England¹¹ he had started with post-horses¹² to Bath. It was about dusk when he arrived;¹³ the postilions were directed¹⁴ to the square¹⁵ in which his mother lived;

¹ *Are acquainted with*, kennen.

² *To yield*, liefern; *simples*, Heilfräuter.

³ *Hearing*, als ... hörte; Sheikh Suttum accompanied the author.

⁴ Supply 'he' after *asked*; *did with one*, mit Jemand thaten.

⁵ *Could* is here the conditional of 'can,' and not the imperfect. This remark may seem superfluous; still the distinction between konnte, the imperfect, and könnte, the conditional, of können is very often neglected even by advanced students of German.

⁶ Supply 'with him' before *do*.

⁷ *Why*, here nun.

⁸ *Render make use of*, by benutzen; *set by* lassen, and *watch* by hüten.

⁹ That famous Admiral had been

taken prisoner by the French in a naval combat near Havre in 1796.

¹⁰ *Had—him*, war ihm vorgegangen oder hätte ihm vorgehen können. In German the repetition of the verb vorgehen is preferable on account of the different auxiliary verbs which are required in the above clause.

¹¹ Turn of—*England* by 'when (wo) he reached the English coast.'

¹² *Post-horses*, here Extrapost.

¹³ Begin the German version by *he arrived*, and transl. *it—when* by ungefähr in der Dämmerstunde.

¹⁴ *Render were directed* by er ließ ... fahren.

¹⁵ The term *square* denoting a thing peculiar to England, may

in a few minutes he was in his mother's arms,¹ and in fifty minutes more² the news had flown to the remotest suburb of the city.

The agitation³ of Bath on this occasion was indescribable. All the⁴ troops of the line then quartered⁵ in that city and a whole regiment of volunteers immediately got under arms,⁶ and marched to the quarter in which Sir Sidney lived. The small square overflowed with⁷ the soldiery; Sir Sidney went out,⁸ and was immediately lost to us⁹ who¹⁰ were watching for him, in the closing¹¹ ranks of the troops. Next¹² morning, however, I, my younger brother, and a schoolfellow of my own age, called formally upon¹³ the naval hero. Why, I know not, unless as *alumni*¹⁴ of the school at which Sir Sidney Smith¹⁵ had received his own education, we¹⁶ were admitted without question or demur; ¹⁶ and I may record¹⁷ it as an amiable

be retained in German, and used as a masculine noun. *Maß* would not be the exact equivalent.

¹ Turn 'in the arms of his,' &c.

² Turn in... more by 'after; flown, transl. sich verbreitet.

³ Agitation, Aufregung.

⁴ The definite article after the numeral *all* is not required in German, except in emphatic speech. For *troops of the line* form in German the compound expression 'lines-troops,' and supply the words 'which were.'

⁵ To quarter, here *einquartieren*; volunteers, *Freiwillige*.

⁶ To get under arms, *ins Gewehr treten*; quarter, here *Stadttheil* or *Stadtviertel*.

⁷ Overflowed with, *war gebrängt voll von*; soldiery = soldiers.

⁸ Went out, *trat heraus*.

⁹ Turn to us by 'for us.' The author refers here to himself and his schoolfellows at the Bath Grammar School.

¹⁰ When a relative pronoun refers to a personal pronoun of the first or second person — singular or plural — the personal pronoun must, for the sake of grammatical dis-

tinctness, be repeated after the relative which, in this case, is never to be rendered by *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, but by *der*, *die*, *das*. The verb in the relative clause agrees in such cases, generally, with the personal pronoun. Render, therefore, *who—him*, by *die wir auf ihn warteten*.

¹¹ Closing, transl. *geschlossen*.

¹² When *next* refers, as is the case here, to a period of time past, it is usually rendered by *folgend*, and when referring to the future by *nächst*. See also page 59, note 2.

¹³ To call formally upon, *einen förmlichen Besuch machen*. For *naval hero* use the compound expression *Seeheld*.

¹⁴ Unless as *alumni*, *es sei denn daß wir Alumnien...waren*.

¹⁵ Supply the word *selbst*, which will convey the meaning of the word *own* occurring in the original.

¹⁶ *Demur*, *Aufenthalt*. Place the words *we—demur*, which form here the principal clause at the beginning of the sentence, viz., before *why, I know not, &c.*; *admitted*, here *vorgelassen*.

¹⁷ May record, *kann...anführen*.

trait in¹ Sir Sidney, that he received us *then* with great kindness, and took us down with him² to the pump-room.³ Considering, however,⁴ that we must have been most afflicting bores⁵ to Sir Sidney—a fact which no self-esteem could even then disguise from us⁶—it puzzled me at first to understand the principle⁷ of his conduct. Having⁸ already done more than enough in courteous⁹ acknowledgment of our fraternal claims as fellow-students at the Bath Grammar School,¹⁰ why should he think it necessary¹¹ to burden himself further¹² with our worshipful¹³ society? I found out¹⁴ the secret, and will explain it. A very slight¹⁵ attention to Sir Sidney's deportment in public revealed to me that he was morbidly afflicted¹⁶ with nervous sensibility and with *mauvaise honte*.¹⁷ * * *

And yet there was a¹⁸ necessity that Sir Sidney should gratify¹⁹ the public interest, so warmly expressed, by presenting himself somewhere or other to the public eye.²⁰ * * *

¹ *In* = from; kindness, Freundlichkeit.

² Turn took—him briefly by 'went with us.'

³ The expression *pump-room* may be considered as a proper name of the place where the mineral waters at Bath are drunk. The corresponding designation for similar places is in German Trinfhalle, or simply Brunnen.

⁴ *Considering, however*, da ich aber in Erwägung zog.

⁵ *Must—bores*, äußerst lästig gefallen sein mußten, or, wie entsetzlich langweilig...sein mußten.

⁶ *Render a—us* by ein Factum welches wir bei der besten Meinung von uns selbst, uns schon damals nicht verbergen konnten.

⁷ *It—principle*, so zerbrach ich mir zuerst den Kopf darüber (i.e. I racked my brains about) den Grund...zu entdecken.

⁸ See Int. p. xvi., c.

⁹ Use def. art. before courteous.

¹⁰ The English Grammar School corresponds in a great measure to the German Gelehrtenschule, which term should here be followed by the words *at Bath*.

¹¹ *To think anything necessary*, eine Sache für nöthig halten.

¹² *Further* = still longer. *To burden himself* may be rendered literally, or by sich aufbürden lassen.

¹³ The expression *worshipful*, used here ironically, may be rendered in German by hochlöblich or hochachtbarlich.

¹⁴ *Turn found out*, and further on revealed, by 'discovered.'

¹⁵ Supply 'degree of;' *to*, auf; *deportment in public* = public deportment (Benehmen).

¹⁶ *Was morbidly afflicted*, auf krankhafte Weise...litt; *with*, here an.

¹⁷ The French expression *mauvaise honte* corresponds to the German falsche Scham. The term Befangenheit would here be equally applicable.

¹⁸ Use here the definite article, and place the adverb *there* (vorhanden) after necessity.

¹⁹ *To gratify*, here Genüge thun, which governs the dative. The expression *so warmly expressed* (bezeigte) qualifies the term *interest* (Theilnahme). See Int. p. xiv., I.

²⁰ Turn the whole clause by

The thing¹ was unavoidable, and the sole palliation² that it admitted was to break³ the concentration of the public gaze⁴ by associating Sir Sidney with some alien⁵ group, no matter of what cattle.⁶ We, the schoolboys, being three,⁷ intercepted and absorbed⁸ part of the enemy's fire. —DE QUINCEY, *Autobiographic Sketches*.

XXV.

OF STYLE.⁹

The eloquent Buffon says that the style is the man; by which he means that we may¹⁰ see what the man is when we see his style. If this is true, every man should think¹¹ well what he is before he begins to write, and whether it is wise to expose himself.¹² It is true that nobody may¹³ read his book, and that is often the best¹⁴ luck that may befall him.

The first rule in good writing¹⁵ is to know what you¹⁶ are

‘whilst he showed himself publicly in (an) the one or the other place.’

¹ There are two terms in German for the word *thing*, viz. Ding and Sache. For the present purpose it will suffice to mention one characteristic distinction between these synonyms — namely, that when *thing* is synonymous with ‘matter, affair,’ &c. as is the case here, it must be rendered by Sache, and not by Ding.

² *Palliation*, here Erleichterung.

³ Render *to break* by abzulenken, and retain the term *concentration*, pronouncing it like a German word.

⁴ The expression *public gaze* may be rendered, somewhat freely, by allgemeine Angafferei, and *by associating* by indem . . . sich . . . zugesellte.

⁵ *With some alien*, einer fremdar-tigen.

⁶ *No—cattle*, transl. von welcher Art sie auch sei.

⁷ Turn *being* by ‘were,’ and see page 68, note 10.

⁸ *Intercepted*, &c., fingen auf und abfürbirten (einen); *enemy's* = hostile.

⁹ We should in German say lieber den Stil, as in French *sur le style*.

¹⁰ *We may*, say: man . . . kann.

¹¹ *To think*, here erwägen.

¹² *To expose oneself*, here sich bloßstellen.

¹³ Use here the present conditional of dürfen, and in the last clause that of können.

¹⁴ Turn here *best* by ‘greatest;’ *to befall*, here widerfahren.

¹⁵ *In good writing*, einer guten Schreibweise.

¹⁶ See page 38, note 4, and render *are going* by will; *to go*, expressing futurity, is generally translated by the corresponding tense of wollen.

going to write about,¹—a plain,² simple rule, but one that³ is very much neglected. If a man makes a good choice of his subject,⁴ he will not fail⁵ to have the best words at his command,⁶ and to put all in the best order.⁷ So Horace says,⁸ and he may be right; but it strikes me⁹ that a man might¹⁰ choose a good subject and yet¹¹ spoil it, of which we have notable¹² examples in our own days. The Roman, however, tells us that we must well consider¹³ what our shoulders will bear, and what they will not;¹⁴ and so¹⁵ the rule is this: choose a good subject, if you¹⁶ are able to handle it. If you are not,¹⁷ need I tell you that you had¹⁸ better let it alone?¹⁹—*An Old Man's Thoughts about Many Things.**

¹ *What...about*, worüber.

² *Plain*, schlicht.

³ Render *but one that* by *die abrr. Much* = often.

⁴ Turn *if—subject* by 'if any one chooses a good subject.'

⁵ The verb *to fail* cannot, in the sense in which it is used here, be employed personally; we must therefore turn the clause *he will not fail* by 'so it is certain.'

⁶ *To have...at his command*, daß ihm...zu Gebote stehen werden.

⁷ *To—order*, er Alles aufs beste zusammenstellen wird.

⁸ The above and the following allusions refer to the verses of Horace:—

*Sumite materiam vestris, qui scribitis, aquam
Viribus; et versate diu quid ferre recusent,
Quid valeant humeri. Cui lecta potenter erit res,
Nec facundia deseret hunc nec lucidus ordo.*

(Epist. ii. 3, v. 38.)

⁹ The idiomatic phrase *it strikes me* may be rendered here by *es will mir scheinen*.

¹⁰ When *might* expresses a supposed possibility, it is translated

by the indicative of *können* or by the present conditional of *dürfen*.

¹¹ When *yet* is used as a conjunction, and synonymous with 'nevertheless,' it is generally translated by *dennoch*.

¹² Render *notable* by the corresponding foreign term *notoriſch* (Lat. 'notorius'), and turn *in—days* by 'in our time.'

¹³ When *to consider* is a synonym of 'to reflect, to deliberate,' it is usually rendered by *überlegen*, or by *erwägen*; the latter expression is here preferable.

¹⁴ Turn *what—not* by 'what our shoulders can bear, and what not.'

¹⁵ Render here *so* by *demnach*; and transl. *this* by *folgendes*, placing it before *the rule*.

¹⁶ In similar apostrophes we use in German the familiar second person singular, unless an author addresses his readers collectively. *To handle* (a subject), *behandeln*.

¹⁷ Turn *If—not* by 'if thou canst it not;' *to need*, here *brauchen*.

¹⁸ Use for *had* the present conditional of *thun*.

¹⁹ The idiomatic phrase *to let a thing alone* is rendered in German by *eine Sache sein* or *bleiben lassen*, i. e. *to let it be, or remain, what it is*.

* The above extract is taken from a work full of wit, humour, and original thought, which has been published anonymously, but is attributed to Professor George Long.

XXVI.

THE BORDER FEUDS.¹

For² twenty miles on either side of the Border *there* grew up a population who were³ trained from their⁴ cradles in licensed marauding.⁵ Nominal amity between the countries operated as but a slight check upon⁶ habits inveterately lawless; and though the Governments affected⁷ to keep order, they could not afford⁸ to be severe upon offences committed⁹ in time of peace¹⁰ by men on whom they chiefly depended for the defence¹¹ of the frontiers in time of war. The scanty¹² families in the fortified farms

¹ In analogy with the expressions *Landkrieg, war on land, Seekrieg, naval war*, &c. we may also form a compound term of the words *Grenze, border*, and *Feude, feud*, by simply joining them together without any connecting link, after suppressing the final vowel of *Grenze*.

² *For*, here *auf*; *either* = both.

³ Collective nouns occurring without any sign of the plural require in German, as a rule, the verb and pronoun referring to them in the singular only. *Trained*, *erzogen*; *from*, *von...an*.

⁴ See note *b* to Extract 34, and use *cradles* in the singular.

⁵ *In licensed marauding*, *zu autorisirter Plünderung*. *Nominal*, *nomineell*.

⁶ *Operated — upon*, *that den... nur geringen Gehalt*. Turn the adverb *inveterately* by the adjective *eingewurzelt*, and place the same, together with *lawless*, *zügellos*, as attributes before *habits*.

⁷ *Affected* being here synonymous with 'pretended,' is to be rendered by *sich stellen*; *to keep* = as if (ob) they kept.

⁸ The verb *to afford* is one of

those comprehensive English expressions which can be hardly in any other modern idiom rendered by a single equivalent. Render here, *they — afford*, by *so konnten sie es dennoch nicht wagen*.

⁹ Turn *to — committed* by 'to punish severely offences (*Vergehen*) which were committed.'

¹⁰ The expressions *time of peace* and *time of war* are to be rendered here by compound substantives formed by adding in the first instance the term *times* to the genitive of *peace*, and in the second instance by adding the term *times* to the genitive of *war*. The first mode of forming compound expressions, *i.e.* by simply joining them together—especially when both members are substantives—has been alluded to before; and the present instances furnish an example of the second mode, which consists in adding the subordinate member to the genitive of the principal one.

¹¹ *On — defence*, *auf welche sie sich...als Vertheidiger...vorzüglich verlassen mußten*.

¹² *Scanty* = few.

and granges¹ in Roxburgh and Northumberland slept with their² swords under their pillows,³ and their horses saddled⁴ in their stables. The⁵ blood of the children by the fireside was stirred by tales of wild adventure in song and story;⁵ and perhaps⁶ for two centuries no boy ever grew to man's estate⁷ along a strip of land forty miles across and joining the two seas⁸ who had not known the midnight⁹ terror of a blazing homestead,¹⁰ who had not seen his father or brother ride out¹¹ at dusk harnessed and belted for some night foray, to be brought back before morning,¹² gory and stark, across the saddle, and¹³ been roused from *his* bed by his mother to swear with his child's lips¹⁴ a vow of revenge over the corpse.

And the fierce feuds of the Mosstroopers¹⁵ were but an expression in its¹⁶ extreme form of the animosity between the two nations. The English¹⁷ hated Scotland because Scotland had successfully¹⁸ defied them: the Scots hated

¹ Farms, Farmhäuser; granges, Gehöfte.

² See page 35, note 13.

³ Use the singular, and see for the possessive pronouns n. b to Ext. 34.

⁴ Saddled, transl. stanten gesattelt.

⁵ Turn *The—story* by 'the blood of the children was through narrations by the fire-side (am Herde) of wild adventures in song and story (Sage) stirred up.'

⁶ *Perhaps* is to be placed after *centuries*, and *for* turned by 'during.'

⁷ Grew to man's estate, erwuchs... zum Mannesalter.

⁸ Turn *along—seas* by 'upon a forty miles wide and on the two seas (Meere) bordering strip of land' (Landstrich).

⁹ Use for *midnight* the attributive adjective mitternächtlich.

¹⁰ Homestead, transl. Heimstätte.

¹¹ Ride out, here fortreiten; harnessed—for, geharnischt und gerüstet zu; night = nightly.

¹² Before morning, here vor Tagesanbruch; across, transl. über... siegend.

¹³ Supply 'who had not.' The verb aufwecken, for *to rouse*, would be here hardly expressive enough. Besides, we should then have to paraphrase the words *from his bed* by 'from his sleep.' But we may properly use here the very expressive and poetical term aufschrecken, somewhat corresponding to the verb *to startle*.

¹⁴ Child's lips, kindliche Lippen; vow of revenge, Rachgelübde.

¹⁵ The only adequate expression for the term *Mosstrooper*, peculiar to Scotland of bygone times, seems to be Grenzräuber.

¹⁶ Turn *its* by 'the,' and retain the expression *form*; of, here von, animosity, Erbitterung.

¹⁷ When the term *English* stands for 'the people of England,' we must render it by the equivalent of the word 'Englishmen:' when it is used adjectively, however, it is translated by englisch. The rule applies to the names of other nations.

¹⁸ Turn *successfully* by 'with success'; *to defy*, Trotz bieten.

England as an enemy on the watch¹ to make² them slaves. The hereditary hostility strengthened³ with time, and each generation⁴ added fresh injuries to the accumulation of bitterness.

Fortunately for mankind,⁵ however, the relations between nations are not eventually⁶ determined by sentiment and passion.⁷ The⁸ mutual sufferings inflicted by the existing condition of things⁸ produced its effect⁹ in minds where reason was admitted to influence.¹⁰—FROUDE, *History of England*.

XXVII.

A GERMAN HAUTOY-PLAYER.¹¹

About¹² the year 1760, as Miller¹³ was dining at Pontefract with the officers¹⁴ of the Durham militia, one¹⁵ of them, knowing his love of music, told him they had¹⁶ a

¹ *On the watch*, translate *der auf die Gelegenheit lauerte*.

² See page 36, note 4.

³ Turn *strengthened* by 'became stronger.'

⁴ Retain here the term *generation*, pronouncing the same as a German word; *to—bitterness*, *der aufgesammelten Erbitterung...hinzu*.

⁵ *Mankind*, here *Menschheit*, to be used with the definite article.

⁶ *Eventually* being here used in the sense of 'ultimately,' is to be rendered by *schließlich*.

⁷ Turn *sentiment and passion* by 'feelings and passions.'

⁸ The contracted construction of the above clause *The—things* makes it in German necessary to give it in a completely different form. Turn therefore by 'the sufferings which through the existing order (*Thatbestand*) of things were inflicted upon (*zugefügt*) both parties.'

⁹ *To produce an effect*, *eine Wirkung hervorbringen (auf)*; *mind*, here *Gemüth*.

¹⁰ *Was—influence*, *Einfluss fand*.

¹¹ *Hautboy-player* and, further on, *performer on the hautboy*, *Soboenbläser*, or simply *Soboist*.

¹² Translate here the adverb *about* by *um*, and turn the sentence by 'as (*als*) Miller about, &c.'

¹³ The above refers to Dr. Miller, organist at Pontefract, known as the historian of Doncaster.

¹⁴ Military and naval officers are called *Offiziere*, and civil officers *Beamte*. *Durham militia* = militia of Durham.

¹⁵ The subordinate clause of the above sentence preceding the principal one, we must give the latter in an inverted form, *i.e.* begin with the principal verb, *told (him)*. For *love of music* see page 62, note 12.

¹⁶ According to the rule mentioned page 29, note 3, we should

young German in their band,¹ as performer on the hautboy, who had only² been *a* few months in England, and yet spoke³ English almost as well as⁴ a native, and who was also an excellent performer on the violin:⁵ the officer added⁶ *that* if Miller would⁷ come into another room this German should entertain him with⁸ a solo.

The invitation was gladly⁹ accepted, and Miller heard a solo of Giardini's¹⁰ executed in¹¹ a manner that surprised him. He afterwards took¹² an opportunity of having some private conversation with the young musician, and asked him whether he had engaged himself¹³ for any long period to the Durham militia. The answer was,¹⁴ "Only from month to month."¹⁵ "Leave them then," said the organist,

use here the present conjunctive: the preference ought, however, to be given to the present conditional, which is frequently used in dependent clauses containing the quotation, when the verb of the principal clause is employed in the imperfect or pluperfect.

¹ A regimental *band* is called in German *Musikcorps* or *Musikbante*.

² Insert here the preposition *seit*, *since*, which denotes in German 'the whole period of an event, including the present time,' and use the aux. verb *sein* in the pres. conjunctive. *Only*, here *erst*.

³ See preceding page, note 16.

⁴ *As well as*, *eben so gut wie*. It may here be mentioned as a caution that the general similarity between the English words *good*, *well*, and the German *gut*, *wohl*, very frequently misleads the students of German in their translations. It will in this place be sufficient to point out in general that the German adverb *wohl* does by no means stand in the same relation to the adjective *gut* as the English *well* does to the adjective *good*. *Gut* is in German, like every other adjective, also used as an adverb, and the use of *wohl* in its adverbial capacity is limited

to a few verbs only, more particularly to those relating to the moral and physical condition of a person; as, *sich wohl befinden*, *es ist mir wohl*, &c. The adverb *wohl* is, besides, used in compound terms, and still more frequently as an expletive.

⁵ *Performer on the violin* = violin-player.

⁶ *To add*, here *hinzusetzen*.

⁷ Use the present conditional of *mögen*.

⁸ *Entertain him with*, transl. *ihm ein...vorspielen*.

⁹ *Gladly*, here *mit Freuden*.

¹⁰ The genitive relation being in German expressed with sufficient distinctness by means of the preposition *von*, *of*, the proper name itself need not be put in the genitive case.

¹¹ We use in German, in the above phrase, the preposition *auf* with the accusative.

¹² *To take* (an opportunity), *ergreifen*; *some private conversation*, *eine Privatunterhaltung*.

¹³ *To engage oneself*, *sich binden*; *for—period*, *auf längere Zeit*; *to*, here *bei*.

¹⁴ *Was*, transl. *lautete*. Cf. page 23, note 14.

¹⁵ Turn *from month to month* simply by 'monthly;' *them*, here *sie*.

“*and come and live*¹ with me. I am a single man,² and think we shall be happy together; and doubtless your merit will soon entitle³ you to a more eligible situation.”

The offer was accepted as frankly⁴ as it was made: and the reader may imagine⁵ with what satisfaction⁶ Dr. Miller must have remembered⁷ this act of generous feeling when he hears that this young German was Herschel the astronomer.⁸—SOUTHEY, *The Doctor*.

XXVIII.

CRANFORD.

In the first place⁹ Cranford is in possession of the¹⁰ Amazons: all the holders¹¹ of houses above a certain rent

¹ When *to live* is synonymous with *to reside*, it is translated by *wohnen*; *with*, here *bei*.

² *Single man*, *Junggesell*. Supply after *and* the first personal pronoun, and turn *think* by ‘believe,’ as in most cases when it stands for ‘to conclude, imagine,’ &c.

³ *Entitle*, transl. *verhelfen*; *eligible situation*, *passende Stelle*.

⁴ *Frankly*, *freimüthig*. Construe ‘the offer was as frankly accepted as it was made.’ When *as...as* is used to express an equality of two compared actions, we must translate it by *so* or *eben so...als*. When the equality refers to nouns, we generally use *wie* instead of *als*.

⁵ Turn here *imagine* by the reflective form of ‘to think.’

⁶ *Satisfaction*, *Befriedigung*, i.e. gratification.

⁷ *To remember*, *sich erinnern*, governs the genitive; *act—feeling*, transl. *großmüthige Handlung*.

⁸ Place *the astronomer* before *Herschel*. The celebrated astronomer, Wilhelm Herschel, was born at Hanover in 1738. His

father, himself a musician, gave him instruction in music, and sent him over to this country to seek his fortune. The Earl of Darlington engaged him for the regimental band of the Durham militia, and afterwards Herschel settled in the neighbourhood of Leeds, Pontefract, and Durham as a teacher of music, devoting himself at the same time to that science which has made his name so illustrious.

⁹ *In—place*, *vor Allen*.

¹⁰ The above clause may serve to illustrate a characteristic difference in the use of the article in German and in English. The term *possession* requires the definite article, on account of the object being singled out definitely, whilst the expression *Amazons* does not require it, because the statement does not refer to them in a definite manner, but only in a general way, in which case the preposition *von* is quite sufficient.

¹¹ *Holders*, transl. *Bewohner*; *rent* (of houses, &c.), *Miethe*; *Mietthins*.

are women. If a married couple¹ come to settle in the town, somehow the gentleman² disappears: he is either fairly frightened to death³ by being the only man in the Cranford evening parties,⁴ or he is accounted for⁵ by being with his regiment, his ship, or closely engaged in business⁶ all the week in the great neighbouring commercial town⁷ of Drumble, distant only twenty miles on a railroad.⁸ In short,⁹ whatever does become of the gentlemen, they are not at Cranford: what could they¹⁰ do if they were there?

The surgeon¹¹ has his round of thirty miles,¹² and sleeps at Cranford; but every man cannot be a surgeon. For keeping¹³ the trim gardens full of choice flowers, without a weed to speck them,¹⁴ for frightening away¹⁵ little boys who look wistfully at the said¹⁶ flowers through the railings, for rushing out at¹⁷ the geese that occasionally venture into the gardens if the gates are left open, for deciding all questions of literature and politics¹⁸ without

¹ *Married couple*, Ehepaar; *come to settle*, briefly sich niederläßt.

² Translate the word *gentleman*, standing here for *Ghemann*, *husband*, simply by Mann. Further on it should be translated by Herr.

³ *He—death*, entweder es überfällt ihn eine wahre Todesangst; *by being* = because he is.

⁴ *Evening parties* = evening-societies.

⁵ *He—for*, transl. es heißt. The words *by being* must here be turned by 'that he is;' *with*, here bei.

⁶ *Closely—business*, von Geschäftten sehr stark in Anspruch genommen; *all the* = the whole.

⁷ *Commercial town*, Handelsstadt.

⁸ *Distant—railroad*, die nur zwanzig Meilen weit an der Eisenbahn liegt.

⁹ *In short*, kurz; *whatever*, was auch immer. The adverb *also* is here an expletive. The emphatic *does* remains in German untranslated.

¹⁰ Here, too, we should make use of the expletive *also*.

¹¹ When the noun *surgeon* is

used, as is the case here, in a general sense for a 'medical man,' it must be rendered simply by Arzt, and not by Wundarzt, which latter term corresponds to the word *surgeon* in its primary sense only, viz. 'one who cures by manual operation.' The more dignified expression for the latter signification is now in German Chirurg.

¹² The clause *his—miles* may be freely rendered by eine Praxis die sich auf dreißig Meilen in die Runde erstreckt.

¹³ *To keep*, erhalten, to be used here with the *supine* preceded by um. *Trim*, zierlich; *of choice*, transl. der schönsten.

¹⁴ Turn *without—them* by 'free from every weed.'

¹⁵ *To frighten away*, verscheuchen; *wistfully*, here sehnsüchtig.

¹⁶ *Said*, in the sense of 'before-mentioned,' besagt.

¹⁷ *To rush out at*, losstürzen auf; *venture*, here sich wagen; *gate*, Thüre.

¹⁸ Turn of *literature and politics* by 'literary and political,' employ-

troubling themselves with¹ unnecessary reasons or arguments, for obtaining clear and correct knowledge of everybody's affairs² in the parish, for keeping their neat maid-servants³ in admirable order, for kindness (somewhat dictatorial) to the poor,⁴ and real, tender, good offices to each other⁵ whenever they are in distress,⁶ the ladies of Cranford are quite sufficient.⁷ "A man," as one of them observed to me once, "is so in the way⁸ in the house!"

Although the ladies of Cranford know all each other's proceedings,⁹ they are exceedingly indifferent to each other's¹⁰ opinions. Indeed, as each has her own individuality, not to say eccentricity,¹¹ pretty strongly developed, nothing is so easy¹² as verbal retaliation; but somehow¹³ good-will reigns among them to a considerable degree. The Cranford ladies have only an occasional¹⁴ little quarrel, spirted out¹⁵ in a few peppery words and angry jerks of the head; just enough to prevent the even tenor¹⁶ of their lives from becoming too flat.¹⁷ Their dress¹⁸ is very

ing these terms as attributive adjectives to questions.

¹ *To trouble oneself with*, here sich befummern um; *reason*, Grund; *argument*, Beweis; *clear*, say genau.

² *Affair*, Angelegenheit; *in the parish*, in ihrem Kirchspiel.

³ *Maid-servant*, Dienstmädchen; *admirable*, transl. musterhaft.

⁴ The clause *for—poor* must be rendered somewhat freely, viz. um den Armen (wenn auch auf etwas dictatorialische Weise) Gutes zu thun.

⁵ *Real—other*, um sich gegenseitig wahrhaft freundschaftliche Dienste zu leisten.

⁶ *Distress*, Noth.

⁷ *To be sufficient*, ausreichen, which verb is to be preceded here by the expletive *dazu*. *To observe* (to), bemerken (gegen).

⁸ *Is—way*, ist einem...so sehr im Wege. The adverb *so* has been italicised by the author, and not by the editor: it has therefore been translated.

⁹ *All—proceedings*, sämmtlich ihr gegenseitiges Thun und Lassen.

¹⁰ *To each other's*, gegen ihre gegenseitigen.

¹¹ *Turn as—eccentricity* by 'since the individuality, not to say eccentricity, of each (einer Jeden) is.' The corresponding foreign forms of *individuality* and *eccentricity* may be retained in German.

¹² *Render so easy* by ihnen nichts leichter, and *as verbal retaliation* by als mündliche Repressalien (reprisals) zu nehmen.

¹³ *But somehow*, transl. dennoch fügt es sich so; *good-will*, Wohlwollen; *to a considerable* = in a high.

¹⁴ *Occasional*, gelegentlich.

¹⁵ *Spirted out*, transl. der sich... Lust macht; *peppery* = sharp; *jerks of the head*, Kopfbewegungen.

¹⁶ *Even tenor*, ruhige Gang. For the expression *lives* compare Extract 25, note c.

¹⁷ *Turn from—flat* by 'that...becomes too flat' (schal).

¹⁸ When the term *dress* stands, as is the case here, for 'clothing in general,' we render it by Kleidung, somewhat corresponding to the

independent of fashion, as they observe, "What does it signify¹ how we dress² here at Cranford, where everybody knows us?" And if they go from home,³ their reason is equally cogent: "What does it signify how we dress here, where nobody knows us?"—MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*.

XXIX.

BEFORE THE BATTLE OF⁴ KÖNIGGRÄTZ.

Long before midnight the troops were all in motion, and at half-past one in the morning⁵ the general staff⁶ left Kamenitz. The moon occasionally⁷ shone *out* brightly, but was generally hidden behind clouds, and then could be distinctly seen⁸ the decaying⁹ bivouac fires in the places which had been occupied¹⁰ by the troops along the road.

These fires looked like large will-o'-the-wisps as¹¹ their flames flickered about¹² in the wind, and stretched for many a mile,¹³ for there were 100,000 soldiers with the

French *habillement*; but when it signifies a single garment, it is to be rendered by *Kleid*.

¹ *Does it signify*, liegt daran.

² *To dress*, sich kleiden. In German the reflective form occurs far more frequently than in English, there being but few German verbs which can be used both in a transitive and intransitive sense.

³ *Go from home*, verreisen; *cogent*, triftig.

⁴ See page 49, note 1.

⁵ Use for the adverbial expression *in the morning* the genitive *des Morgens*, which case is generally used, with or without the article, when the point of time is indicated in an indefinite manner.

⁶ *General staff*, Generalstab.

⁷ The idiomatic rendering for

occasionally is here *bann und mann*.

⁸ The agent from whom the activity proceeds not being expressed, we should not employ here the passive voice in German; but since the reflective form, requisite in similar cases, would not be applicable in the present instance, the active voice, with the indefinite pronoun *man*, ought to be used.

⁹ *Decaying*, here *erlöschend*. *Bivouac fires* is in German a compound term.

¹⁰ *To occupy* (used as a military expression), besetzen.

¹¹ *As*, da. Turn *their* by 'the.'

¹² *To flicker about*, hin und her flackern.

¹³ *For many a mile*, transl. *meilenweit*. Turn *soldiers* by 'men,' and see n. d to Extr. 32; *with*, *hier bei*.

First Army alone, and the bivouacs of so great a force¹ spread over a wide extent of country. Day gradually began to break,² but with the first symptoms³ of dawn a drizzling rain came on, which lasted⁴ until late in the afternoon. The wind increased and blew coldly upon the soldiers,⁵ for they were short of both sleep and food,⁶ while frequent gusts⁷ bore down to the ground the water-laden corn in the wide fields alongside⁸ the way.

The main road⁹ from Horitz to Königgrätz sinks into a deep hollow near the village of Milowitz. On the side of this hollow furthest from¹⁰ Horitz is placed near the road the village of that name,¹¹ and on the left of the road, on the same bank, stands a thick fir-wood. A little after¹² midnight the army of Prince¹³ Frederick Charles was entirely concealed in this hollow, ready to issue¹⁴ from its ambush and attack the Austrians if they should advance.

Soon after dawn a¹⁵ person standing between the village of Milowitz and the further hill of Dub could see no

¹ Force will here best be rendered by *Truppenmasse*; to spread, *sich ausbreiten*; extent of country, *Landstrecken* (pl.).

² To break (referring to day), *anbrechen*. Use the imperfect.

³ Symptoms, *Zeichen*; drizzling rain, *feiner Regen* or *Nebelregen*; came on = *begann*.

⁴ To last, here *anhalten*; in the, *am*.

⁵ The phrase *blew coldly upon the soldiers* must in German be rather freely rendered by *und die Soldaten fühlten seine Schärfe*, in order to express distinctly that the soldiers felt the wind the more keenly in consequence of want of sleep and food.

⁶ The clause *they—food* may be turned by 'they had had neither enough sleep nor food' (*Nahrung*).

⁷ Gust, *Windstoß*; to bear down to the ground, briefly *zu Boden werfen*.

⁸ Alongside, *längs*.

⁹ Main road, *Hauptstraße*; to sink, here *sich senken*; hollow, *Hohlweg*.

¹⁰ Furthest from, *die von... am weitesten entfernt liegt*; is placed, *befindet sich*.

¹¹ Render of that name by *genannte*, placing it before *village*. *Stands* = *is*; *thick*, here *dicht*.

¹² Translate a little in the above phrase by *halb*.

¹³ The German language has two expressions for the word *prince*, viz. *Prinz* and *Fürst*. The former title, to be used here, is given to descendants of sovereign princes as long as they do not exercise any sovereign power; and the latter, in a general sense, to all sovereign rulers, as kings, emperors, dukes, &c., and, in a more limited sense, to rulers of principalities, and to those who have been raised to the titular dignity of prince.

¹⁴ To issue, *hervorbrechen*.

¹⁵ See next page, note 1.

armed men¹ except a few Prussian vedettes² posted along the Dub ridge,³ whose lances stood in relief⁴ above the summit against the murky sky. A few dismounted⁵ officers were standing below a fruit-tree in front of Milowitz, with their horses held by some orderlies behind them.⁶ These were Prince Frederick Charles and his staff. All was still except when⁷ the neigh of a horse or a loud word of command,⁸ as the last division formed, rose mysteriously from the hollow of Milowitz.

Until nearly four o'clock the army remained concealed. * * * To hold the Austrian army in front⁹ of the Elbe was absolutely necessary for the success of the Prussian plans,¹⁰ and Prince Frederick Charles resolved with his own army alone¹¹ to engage the whole of Benedek's forces,¹² and, clinging to¹³ the Austrian commander,

¹ *A—men.* The whole of the above clause must be given in German, where we should use the conditional, in a different form; arrange therefore: 'would a person (hätte Jemand), who between the village of Milowitz and the further hill of Dub (entferntern Dubhügel); and insert here the verb 'stood' (gestanden) for *standing*, and *could see* (sehen können) after *men* (Mannschaft). On the omission of the aux. verb after *gestanden*, cf. Ext. 47, n. c.

² We use also in German the foreign military expressions *Vedette* for 'a sentinel on horseback,' and *postiert* for *posted*.

³ *Dub ridge*, Rücken des Dubhügels.

⁴ *Stood in relief*, stark abstachen; *murky*, trüb.

⁵ The adjective *dismounted* must in German be turned into a regular clause with a finite verb, viz. die von ihren Pferden abgestiegen waren. We also use the foreign military expression *dementiren*, but more in its transitive meaning, i.e. 'to unhorse soldiers,' or 'to disable cannon.'

⁶ Turn *with—them* by 'whilst some orderlies (Ordonanzen) held their horses behind them.'

⁷ See page 41, note 9.

⁸ *Word of command*, Commando-mot; *as*, während; *to form*, sich aufstellen; *rose*, here herausscholl.

⁹ *In front*, transl. dießseits.

¹⁰ The German version of the above clause can be made more emphatic by employing the grammatical subject *es*, which, besides with impersonal verbs—as *es regnet*, &c.—is used for the sake of emphasis, or to impart more poetic colouring to a construction,—as *es heult der Sturm*, *es braust das Meer*. The real subject follows in such a case the inflected verb, and sometimes even other far less important parts of the sentence. Turn, therefore, the above clause by 'it was for the success of the Prussian plans absolutely (durchaus) necessary to hold,' &c.

¹¹ The adverb *alone*, bloß, has in the above clause the emphasis: place it, therefore, at the beginning of the clause, viz. *alone with*, &c. *To engage* = to attack.

¹² *The whole of...forces*, die Gesamtmacht.

¹³ *To cling (to)*, sich klammern (an). The preposition *an* governs here the accusative case.

to hold¹ him on the Bistritz until the Prussian flank attacks² could be developed. A few short words passed³ from the commander of the First Army to the chief of his staff; a few aides-de-camp, mounting⁴ silently, rode quietly away; and, as it were by the utterance of a magician's spell,⁵ one hundred thousand Prussian warriors springing into sight, as if from the bowels⁶ of the armed earth, swept⁷ over the southern edge⁸ of the Milowitz ravine towards the hill of Dub.—H. M. HOZIER, *The Seven Weeks' War*.

XXX.

A DISPUTED⁹ BOUNDARY.

A peculiar¹⁰ interest attaches itself at the present time to¹¹ everything which throws light upon the debated question of¹² the boundary between the two kingdoms;¹³ a question which is not less keenly debated¹⁴ among naturalists than that of many a disputed frontier *has been* between adjacent nations.

¹ *To hold*, here festhalten or beschäftigen. *Bistritz* is in German feminine, most names of rivers belonging to the feminine gender.

² *Flank attacks*, Flankenangriffe; *be developed*, sich entfalten.

³ *Passed*, transl. wurden...an... gerichtet; *chief of his staff*, Chef seines Generalstabs.

⁴ *Mounting*, bestiegen...ihre Pferde.

⁵ *As—spell*, wie auf den Ausdruck eines Zauberwortes; after which clause ought to be placed the words *springing into sight*, to be turned by 'appeared suddenly.'

⁶ *As—bowels*, gleichsam aus dem Schoße.

⁷ Transl. *swept* by strömten, connecting it with the preceding clause by means of the conjunction 'and.'

⁸ *Edge*, here Abhang; *towards*—*Dub*, dem Dubhügel zu.

⁹ *Disputed*, streitig.

¹⁰ *Peculiar*, here besonderes.

¹¹ *Attaches*—*to*, knüpft sich jetzt (or gegenwärtig) an.

¹² *Debated question of*, Streitfrage in Bezug auf.

¹³ *Kingdoms*, transl. Naturreiche, the expression referring here to the animal and vegetable kingdoms.

¹⁴ *Which—debated*, über die...nicht minder lebhaft gestritten wird. *That of must*, in accordance with the translation given of the preceding clause, be rendered by über; *disputed*, streitig gemacht; *adjacent* = neighbouring. The auxiliary verb *has been* need not be expressed in the German translation. If it were retained, it would be necessary to supply the verb gestritten, which would make the sentence much too long.

For many parts of this border-country¹ have been taken and retaken several times; their inhabitants, so to speak,² having³ first been considered on account of their general⁴ appearance to belong to the⁵ vegetable kingdom; then in consequence of some movements being observed in⁶ them being⁷ claimed by the zoologists; then, on *the* ground of their evidently plant-like⁸ mode of growth, being transferred back⁹ to the botanical side; then, owing to the supposed¹⁰ detection of some new feature in their structure or¹¹ physiology, being again claimed as members of the animal kingdom; and lastly,¹² on the discovery of a fallacy in these arguments, being once more turned over¹³ to the botanist, with¹⁴ whom for the most part they remain. For the attention which has been given¹⁵ of late years to the study of the humblest¹⁶ forms of vegetation has led to the knowledge among¹⁷ what must be 'un-

¹ *Border-country*, Grenzland; transl. here taken by *erobert*, and *retaken* by *zurückerober*. See page 89, note 8.

² Turn here *speak* 'say.'

³ Compare Int. p. xvi., c. The frequent occurrence of the present participle in the above extract will afford the student an excellent opportunity for practice in the construction so commonly occurring in English, and so very rarely in German.

⁴ Render *general* by *im Allgemeinen*, to be placed after the term *appearance* (*Aussehen*).

⁵ *To belong to the*, als zum...gehörig; *vegetable kingdom*, Pflanzenreich.

⁶ *To observe in*, wahrnehmen an. Turn *being observed* by 'which one observed.'

⁷ The present participle *being*, referring to *claimed* (*reclamirt*), should be turned by a finite verb, viz. *wurden sie*, and inserted after *then*.

⁸ The term *like*, joined to another expression and employed in its compound form as an attributive adjective, is frequently rendered by *mäßig* or *artig*. The latter expression added to the plural of *plant*

ought to be used here. *Mode of growth*, Wachsthum.

⁹ *To transfer back*, zurückbringen. The present participle *being* may be omitted in the translation, both in this clause and the next.

¹⁰ *Owing—supposed*, in Folge der vermeintlichen; *feature*, Umstand, i.e. circumstance.

¹¹ The possessive pronoun must here be repeated on account of the difference of the gender of the nouns *structure*, Bau; and *physiology*, Physiologie.

¹² *Lastly*, schließlich. The following present part. (*being*) should here be inserted according to note 7, above. *On, bei*; *fallacy*, Trugschluß.

¹³ *To turn over*, überliefern.

¹⁴ Translate *with* by the preposition *bei*, and *for the most part* by *größtentheils*.

¹⁵ Render *has been given* by *man ...schenkte*, and *of late* by *in letzteren*.

¹⁶ *Humblest*, here *untersten*. The expression *forms of vegetation* may be translated by the compound term *Pflanzenformen*, i.e. 'forms of plants.'

¹⁷ For the rendering of the whole clause from *has to phenomena* see next page, note 1.

doubtedly' regarded as plants of so many phenomena¹ which would formerly have been considered² unquestionable marks³ of animality, that the discovery of the like phenomena among⁴ the doubtful beings in question,⁵ so far from being evidence⁶ of THEIR animality, really affords⁷ a probability of the opposite kind.—DR. W. B. CARPENTER, *The Microscope and its Revelations*.

XXXI.

THOMAS CARLYLE TO GOETHE.*

Craigenputtoch, Sept. 25, 1828.

You inquire⁸ with such warm interest⁹ respecting our present abode and occupations that I am obliged to say a few words¹⁰ about both while there is still room left.¹¹

¹ Translate the clause *has—phenomena* by *hat bei dem was unzweifelhaft als Pflanze angesehen werden muß, zur Erkenntniß so vieler Phänomene geführt*.

² See page 85, note 2.

³ *Mark*, here *Werkmal*; *animality*, *Animalismus*.

⁴ *Of—among*, transl. ganz ähnlicher Phänomene bei.

⁵ Translate *in question* by *betreffend*, placing it as an attributive adjective before *doubtful*; *so far from*, weit entfernt.

⁶ *Being evidence*, zu beweisen. The word *animality* being used after this verb in the accusative case, the preposition *of* must, as a matter

of course, be omitted in the translation.

⁷ *Affords*, here *darthut*; *of—kind*, des Gegentheils. Compare with the above passage, Ext. 27.

⁸ *To inquire... respecting*, *for-schen...nach*.

⁹ *Interest*, here *Theilnahme*; *occupation*, *Beschäftigung*, to be used here in the singular only. Cf. p. 83, 11.

¹⁰ When the expression *words* denotes 'single, unconnected terms,' it is translated by *Wörter*, and when it stands for 'connected terms, having a coherent meaning,' as is the case here, by *Worte*.

¹¹ *While—left*, da noch Raum dazu übrig bleibt.

* Goethe took such a lively interest in Carlyle, on account of his being one of the first to make his British countrymen acquainted with modern German literature, that the veteran poet wrote a preface to the German edition of his "Life of Schiller," inserting at the same time a translation—of which some use has been made in the notes—of the above letter, chiefly, as it would seem, in explanation of a woodcut, representing the writer's secluded residence in Scotland, which was added to the German edition.

Dumfries is a pleasant town, containing¹ about 15,000 inhabitants, and is to be considered² the centre of the trade and judicial system³ of a district which possesses some importance in the sphere of Scottish activity.⁴ Our residence⁵ is not in the town itself, but fifteen miles to the north-west,⁶ among the granite hills and the black morasses which stretch⁷ westward through Galloway almost to the Irish Sea. In this wilderness of heath and rock our estate⁸ stands forth a green oasis, a tract of⁹ ploughed, partly enclosed,¹⁰ and planted¹¹ ground, where corn ripens and trees afford¹² a shade, although surrounded by sea-mews and rough-woolled¹³ sheep. Here, with no small¹⁴ effort, have we¹⁵ built and furnished¹⁶ a neat, substantial dwelling; here,¹⁷ in the absence of

¹ This present participle might here be rendered according to rule *b*, Int. page xvi.

² *To consider*, here *ansehen*, to be followed by *als*, as is the case with *betrachten*, to consider, and *darstellen*, to represent, when used in the signification pointed out page 36, note 4. These verbs require the accusative; but this case is changed into the nominative in passive constructions and after the supine. See page 45, note 20.

³ *Judicial system*, *Gerichtsbarkheit*.

⁴ *Activity*, here *Betriebksamkeit*.

⁵ When the expression *residence* refers to the private dwelling of an individual, it is rendered by *Wohnort*, *Wohnsitz*, or *Wohnung*; but when signifying the capital of a ruling sovereign, it is in German *Residenz* or *Residenzstadt*.

⁶ *North-west*, *nordwestlich*, which is to be followed by *davon entfernt*, as an equivalent for the words *to the*. *Granite hills* forms in German a compound expression.

⁷ *To stretch*, here *sich ziehen*.

⁸ Render here *estate* by *Besitzthum*, and *stands forth* by *bildet*.

⁹ *Tract of . . . ground*, *Strecke . . . Landes*, stands here in apposition to *oasis*, and should, therefore, be used

in the accusative, in accordance with the rule that the apposition always agrees with the term which it qualifies in number and case: the apposition agrees also in gender when the qualifying expression is the name of a person, the gender of which is distinctly marked.

¹⁰ *Enclosed*, here *umzäunt*, compounded from the noun *Saun*, *hedge*, and the preposition *um*, *round*.

¹¹ Use here the past participle of *bebauen* as an attributive adjective.

¹² *To afford*, *gewähren*, forms here with *Schatten* a kind of compound verbal expression, thus making the indefinite article superfluous.

¹³ *Rough-woolled*, *hartwollig*.

¹⁴ The epithet *small*, referring to *effort*, is to be rendered by *gering*.

¹⁵ It is an idiomatic peculiarity of the German language to point out distinctly the subject to the advantage of which an action has been done, by means of the dative of the personal pronoun. Supply here, therefore, the dative *uns*.

¹⁶ *To furnish* (a house, &c.), *einrichten*. The expression *substantial* may here be rendered by *dauerhaft*, or still better by *solid*.

¹⁷ The words *we live* are to be inserted here.

professional or other office,¹ we live to cultivate² literature according to our³ strength, and in our peculiar way. We wish *a* joyful growth⁴ to the rose and flowers of our garden; we hope *for* health and peaceful thoughts⁵ to further our aims. The roses, indeed, are still in part⁶ to be planted, but they blossom already in anticipation.⁷

Two ponies,⁸ which carry⁹ us everywhere, and the mountain air,¹⁰ are the best medicines¹¹ for weak¹² nerves. This daily exercise, to which I am much devoted,¹³ is my only recreation; for this nook *of ours* is the loneliest in Britain—six miles removed from any one likely to visit me.¹⁴ * * *

I came hither solely with the design¹⁵ to simplify my way of life,¹⁶ and to secure the independence through which I could be enabled¹⁷ to remain true to myself. This bit¹⁸ *of earth* is our own: here we can live, write, and think,

¹ The above clause, *in—office*, must in German be rendered freely by in Ermanglung irgend eines Berufs oder Amtes, where we take the expression Beruf in the sense of 'professional occupation,' and not in that of 'vocation.'

² *To cultivate* (a science, &c.), sich befeßigen, or sich befeßigen, which belongs to that class of reflexive verbs which govern the genitive of the thing, having the reflexive pronoun in the accusative.

³ *According to our*, transl. nach eigenen, and use in German the plural of Kraft for strength.

⁴ *Joyful growth*, fröhliches Gedeihen.

⁵ *Peaceful thoughts*, friedliche Gemüthsstimmung; *aim*, Streben, to be used in the singular only.

⁶ *Still in part*, zum Theil noch.

⁷ Turn *anticipation* by 'hope.'

⁸ Goethe renders *ponies* by leichte Pferde, but we use now the word Ponies also in German.

⁹ The primary sense of *to carry* is in German simply tragen: here, however, we ought also to express the

direction of the action. Add therefore the pronominal adverb hin.

¹⁰ The words *mountain air* form in German a compound term.

¹¹ *Medicine*, Arznei. We use in German also the word Arzt, physician, figuratively in the sense in which *medicine* is employed here.

¹² Translate here *weak* by zart, and *exercise* by Bewegung.

¹³ *Devoted*, here ergeben; *recreation*, Zerstreuung.

¹⁴ *Removed*—me, von einer jeden Person entfernt, die mich allenfalls besuchen möchte.

¹⁵ *With the design*, zu dem Zwecke.

¹⁶ *Way of life*, Lebensweise. Translate here *to secure* by erwerben, and *the* by the demonstrative pronoun jene.

¹⁷ The clause *through—enabled* might be rendered with literal fidelity by durch die ich in den Stand gesetzt werden könnte, or, far more briefly, die es mir möglich machte. *True*, in the above sense, treu.

¹⁸ *Bit*, here Stück. The words *our own* may be simply turned by the possessive pronoun 'ours.'

as best¹ pleases ourselves, even though² Zoilus himself were to be³ crowned the monarch⁴ of literature.

Nor is the solitude of such great importance;⁵ for a stage-coach takes us speedily to Edinburgh, which we look upon as our British Weimar. And⁶ have I not, too, at this moment piled up⁷ upon the table of my little library a whole cart-load of⁸ French, German, American, and English journals⁹ and periodicals—whatever may be their worth. Of antiquarian studies, too, there is no lack.¹⁰ From some of our heights I can descry, about a day's journey¹¹ to the west, the hill where Agricola¹² and his Romans left a camp behind *them*. At the foot of it¹³ I was born, and there *both* father and mother still live to love me.

¹ The relative superlative (or superlative of comparison) of adverbs is formed by prefixing *am* = *at the*, and adding *en* to the simple form of the superlative: *e.g.* *He runs quickest of all, er läuft am schnellsten von Allen.*

² *Even though*, transl. *und wenn*. *Zoilus* lived in the time of Philip of Macedon. He was celebrated for his carping criticisms, and his name has become proverbial for a cynical, malignant critic.

³ *Were to be*, werden sollte.

⁴ Render here *monarch* by *König*, and see page 36, note 4.

⁵ *Of*—*importance*, transl. *so bedeutend*; *takes* = brings; *to look upon*, ansehen.

⁶ The conjunction *and* may be omitted in translating the above exclamation, which can be made more expressive in German by

means of the expletive *denn*, to be inserted between *I* and *not*.

⁷ *To pile up*, aufhäufen; *cart-load*, Ladung.

⁸ The preposition *of* is here to be rendered by *von*, as is frequently the case with *partitive genitives*, viz. when an entire number or quantity, from which a part is taken, occurs in the genitive case.

⁹ *Journal*, *Journal*, pronounced as in French; *periodical*, Zeitschrift.

¹⁰ *There is no lack*, fehlt es nicht. The objective relation of verbs expressing *want* requires the preposition *an* with the dative.

¹¹ Form here the compound term 'day's-journey.' *To the west* = westward.

¹² The Roman Consul Cn. Julius Agricola was governor of Britain from 78 to 85 A.D.

¹³ Turn *of it* by 'of the same.

XXXII.

A STURDY SQUIRE.¹

King David² was taken prisoner on his homeward³ retreat, but not without making⁴ the most gallant⁵ resistance. When the Queen of England heard that her army had⁶ gained the victory, she mounted on⁷ her white charger,⁷ and went to the battle-field. She was informed on the way⁸ that the King of Scots was⁹ the prisoner of a squire¹⁰ named John Copeland, who had rode off¹¹ with him, no one knew whither. The Queen ordered¹² him to be sought out, and told¹³ that he had done what was not agreeable to her in carrying off¹⁴ her prisoner without leave. Next¹⁵ day Philippa wrote with her own hand¹⁶

¹ *A sturdy squire*, transl. ein troziger Vasall.

² The above extract refers to an incident which occurred in 1346, after the battle at Nevil's Cross, which was fought between the brave Philippa of Hainault (Fleming), Queen of Edward III., and David Bruce, King of Scotland.

³ *Homeward*, transl. in die Heimath, to be placed after *retreat*.

⁴ In participial constructions like the above we frequently depart in German from the rule requiring the supine by translating *without* by ohne daß, and employing a regular sentence with a finite verb in the conditional mood. The sense of the passage will show which tense is to be used. In the present case the verb *to make*, here leisten, is to be employed in the perfect conditional.

⁵ *Gallant*, here tapfer.

⁶ Compare Ext. 47, note c.

⁷ *Mounted on*, bestieg sie; *charger*, Eschachtross. Use for *went* the imperfect of sich begeben; *to*, here auf.

⁸ Turn *She—way* by 'on the way' was communicated to her.

⁹ See page 29, note 3.

¹⁰ Render here *squire* by Edelmann, and turn *named* by the genitive singular of Name.

¹¹ *To ride off*, davonreiten. The assertions *had rode off* and *no one knew* are included in the indirect quotations.

¹² *To order*, here den Befehl geben, which is a more dignified expression than befehlen. Use the two following verbs in the supine of the active voice.

¹³ The verb sagen governing the dative of the person, we must supply here the pronoun ihm before told.

¹⁴ *To carry off*, wegführen. Construe 'whilst (intem) he...carried off.'

¹⁵ The point of time of the predicated action may in German also be expressed by the preposition an with the dative. The definite article should here be used, whether the accusative or an with the dative be employed; but if the preference be given to the latter, the adjective *next* might be rendered here for euphony's sake by folgend.

¹⁶ The phrase *with her* (his, &c.)

to John Copeland, commanding him to surrender¹ the King of Scots to her. John answered in a manner most contumacious² to the female Majesty³ then swaying the sceptre⁴ of England with so much ability and glory.

He replied to Philippa that he would not give up⁵ his royal prisoner to⁶ woman or child, but only to his own lord⁷ King Edward, for⁸ to him he had sworn allegiance,⁹ and not to any woman.

Philippa wrote immediately to the King her husband,¹⁰ relating¹¹ all that had occurred.

When the King had read the Queen's letter, he ordered John Copeland to come to him at Calais, who, having placed¹² his prisoner in a strong¹³ castle in Northumberland, set out and landed near¹⁴ Calais.

When the King of England saw the squire, he took him by the hand, saying, "Ha! welcome, my squire,¹⁵ who¹⁶

own hand is, more briefly than in most other languages, expressed in German by the single term *eigenhändig*, which students of Greek will be able to compare with the compound *αὐτόχειρ*.

¹ *To surrender*, *ausliefern*. The verb *befehlen* always requires the supine, since the verb to which it refers expresses the object of the sentence.

² The phrase *in a manner most contumacious* may be turned in German by 'in a most contumacious (*trübsige*) manner,' or rendered briefly and forcibly by the adverbial expression *äußerst trübsig*.

³ The epithet *female* would, in German, not be applicable here, since it would not be considered, as is the case in English, as forming with the noun *majesty* one expression, equivalent to 'Queen,' but merely as an attribute qualifying the noun *majesty*. We may employ, however, the expression *königliche Frau* as an elegant equivalent for *female Majesty*.

⁴ *To sway the sceptre*, *den Zepter führen*. See note to Ext. 23, and use the verb in the imperfect.

⁵ *To give up*, here *auszuliefern*.

⁶ *To...or*, say: *weber einer...noch einem*.

⁷ Translate here *lord* by *Herrn*, and connect it with *King* by the conjunction 'and.'

⁸ *For* used as a conjunction—in which case it is synonymous with 'because'—is rendered by *denn*, but when occurring as a preposition—corresponding to the French *pour*—it is generally translated by *für*. The expletive *nur* may here be inserted after *for*.

⁹ *To swear allegiance*, *den Lehnseid leisten*. Turn *any* by 'a.'

¹⁰ Render the phrase *to—husband* by the attributive expression *ihrem königlichen Gemahl*.

¹¹ Render *relating* by *theilte ihm mit*, connecting this clause with the preceding one by the conj. 'and.'

¹² *To place*, here *unterbringen*. Use the pluperfect with the conjunction *nachdem*.

¹³ *Strong*, here *fest*.

¹⁴ *Near*, transl. *unweit* or *in der Nähe von*.

¹⁵ Translate here *squire* as given in page 88, note 1.

¹⁶ See page 68, note 10.

by thy valour hast captured¹ mine adversary, the King of Scots!" John Copeland fell² on one knee, and replied, "If God out of³ His great kindness has given⁴ me the King of Scotland, and permitted⁵ me to conquer him in arms, no one ought⁶ to be jealous⁷ of it; for God can, if He pleases,⁸ send His grace to a poor squire as well⁹ as to a great lord. Sire, do not take it amiss¹⁰ if I did not surrender King David to the orders¹¹ of my *lady* Queen, for I hold my lands¹² of you, and not of her, and my oath is to you,¹³ and not to her—unless, indeed, through choice."¹⁴

King Edward answered, "John, the loyal¹⁵ service you have done¹⁶ us and our esteem for your valour is¹⁷ so great, that it¹⁸ may well serve you as¹⁹ an excuse; and shame fall on²⁰ those who bear you any ill-will!²¹ You will now return home, and take²² your prisoner, the King of Scotland, *and convey him* to my wife;²³ and by way

¹ *To capture*, gefangen nehmen.

² *Fell*, transl. ließ sich...nieder.

³ *Turn out of* by 'in;' kindness, here Gnade.

⁴ *Given*, transl. überliefert.

⁵ *To permit*, gestatten; *in arms*, transl. die Waffen in der Hand.

⁶ See the note to Ext. 7.

⁷ *Jealous* requires in German the preposition auf.

⁸ *If He pleases*, wenn es ihm so gefällt. The verb *send* may here be rendered by *angebeihen lassen*.

⁹ Place in German the adverbial expression *as well before to a poor*, &c.; *great lord*, vornehmer Herr.

¹⁰ The usual rendering for *to take amiss*, viz. *übel nehmen*, would not be in keeping with the elevated tone of the above speech: transl. the phrase *do—if* by *zürnet mir nicht darob, daß*.

¹¹ *To the orders*, auf Befehl.

¹² *I—lands*, ich trage meine Güter zu sehen. The pronoun *you* should be rendered here by the second person plural, which pronoun was used from about the beginning of the thirteenth to about the middle

of the seventeenth century in addressing persons of rank.

¹³ *Is to you*, transl. Euch habe ich...geleistet.

¹⁴ *Turn unless—choice* by 'it be then out of (aus) free choice.'

¹⁵ Retain this identical expression also in German.

¹⁶ *To do* (a service), leisten.

¹⁷ Use here the plural, since the verb refers to two subjects, viz. *service* and *esteem*.

¹⁸ Render here *it* by *dieses*, the abbreviated form of *dieses*, which is used indefinitely, without regard to the gender or number of the persons or things spoken of.

¹⁹ Render *as* in the above phrase by *als*, without any article, or by the preposition *zu* contracted with the definite article.

²⁰ *Fall on*, transl. treffe.

²¹ *To bear anyone ill-will*, Jemand übel wollen.

²² Suppress the verb *take* in the translation, supplying its place by the subsequent verb *convey* (*über= liefern*).

²³ *Wife*, here Gemahlin.

of¹ remuneration I assign² lands as near your house as you can choose them to the amount³ of £500 a year for you and your heirs.—AGNES STRICKLAND, *Lives of the Queens of England*.

XXXIII.

THE HISTORY OF SCIENCES.

There is⁴ a certain uniformity⁵ in the history of most⁶ sciences. If we read *such* works as⁷ Whewell's "History of the Inductive⁸ Sciences" or Humboldt's "Kosmos," we⁹ find that the origin, the progress,¹⁰ the causes of failure¹¹ and success, have been the same for almost¹² every branch of human knowledge. There are¹³ three marked periods, or stages,¹⁴ in the history of every one of them,¹⁵ which we may call the 'empirical,' the 'classificatory,' and the 'theo-

¹ *By way of*, say briefly als.

² *To assign*, here anweisen; *lands*, Ländereien. The clause *for*—*heirs* ought to be placed in German after *to assign*, and *for you* rendered by the dative.

³ *To the amount*, zu dem Werthe.

⁴ Render here *is* by herrscht, i.e. reigns.

⁵ *Uniformity*, Gleichförmigkeit, which must be distinguished from Einförmigkeit; the latter expression indicating 'monotony,' or 'tedious sameness in all details.'

⁶ The superlative *most* requires in German, contrary to the usage in English, the definite article.

⁷ Render here *as* by wie.

⁸ We use also in German the neo-Latin expression inductiv, derived from the verb *inducere*.

⁹ See the note to Ext. 7.

¹⁰ The article must be repeated in German before all substantives, although they are of the same gender, whenever they are placed side by side in a kind of antitheti-

cal order. That it must be repeated here in German before *causes* is, besides, a matter of course, since it is not used in the same number as the preceding substantives.

¹¹ Translate here *failure* by Mißlingen, and *success* by Gelingen. The antithesis would greatly lose in force by rendering the latter expression by Erfolg.

¹² Place *almost* before the preposition *for*, and *the same* after *knowledge* (Wissen).

¹³ See page 25, note 7. *Marked*, transl. bestimmt.

¹⁴ For the expression *stage*, denoting a 'degree of progression in any change of state,' we use the Latin word Stadium, from the Greek στάδιον, denoting fixedness, firmness, and also a fixed standard of length (about 600 ft.), and figuratively a race-course. Neuter nouns having the Latin termination *ium* take in German *ien* in the plural.

¹⁵ Render of *them* by the genitive plural of derselbe.

retical.’¹ However² humiliating it may sound,³ every one of our sciences, however grand⁴ their present titles, can be traced back to the⁵ most humble and homely⁶ occupations of half-savage tribes.

It was not the true,⁷ the good, and the beautiful which spurred⁸ the early philosophers to deep researches and bold discoveries. The foundation-stone of⁹ the most glorious structures of human ingenuity in ages to come¹⁰ was supplied¹¹ by the pressing wants of a patriarchal and semi-barbarous society.

The names of some of the most ancient departments¹² of human knowledge tell their own tale. Geometry,¹³ which at present declares itself free¹⁴ from all sensuous impressions, and treats of its points and lines and planes as¹⁵ purely

¹ The above terms are also used in German; viz. *empirical*, *empirisch*, *classificatory*, *classificierend*, and *theoretical*, *theoretisch*.

² *However*, *so...auch*. The verb *may* in the preceding sentence is synonymous with ‘can,’ whilst here it corresponds to the German *mögen*.

³ *To sound*, *flingen*. The other usual equivalents of *to sound*, as *schallen*, *hallen*, *tonen*, would not be applicable here.

⁴ *However grand*, *wie großartig auch*; *titles* = names.

⁵ The whole of the above sentence might be rendered, almost literally, with grammatical correctness; but we should obtain a far more elegant version by turning it by ‘the trace of all (sämmtlicher) sciences, however grand their present names, can, however humiliating it may sound, be followed back (verfolgt) to the,’ &c.

⁶ When two or more adjectives, placed side by side, occur in the comparative or superlative degree, the respective termination must be added to each of them.

⁷ Abstract substantives, or such as denote things, formed from adjectives, take in German the

neuter gender. For the construction it was... which see page 34. note 13.

⁸ *To spur* (*to*), *anspornen* (*zu*); Turn here *early* by ‘the oldest.’

⁹ In phrases like the above we use in German the preposition *zu* with the dative, instead of the preposition *of*.

¹⁰ The clause *the—come* must be rendered somewhat freely, since the expression *in ages to come* makes it here necessary to supply in German a verb distinctly expressing ‘the future glorious development of the structures of human ingenuity.’ Translate therefore, *den glorreichsten Gebäuden des menschlichen Geistes, die für alle künftige Zeiten bestehen sollen*.

¹¹ *To supply*, *liefern*; *by*, *von*; *want*, here *Bedürfnis*.

¹² *Department* (referring to sciences, &c.), *Fach*; *tell their own tale*, *sprechen für sich selbst*, i.e. *speak for themselves*.

¹³ Use the definite article.

¹⁴ Adjectives referring to the verb *erklären* (or to *halten*, *annehmen*, &c.) must be preceded by the preposition *für*. Cf. page 36, note 4.

¹⁵ The preposition *von* must here be repeated. Translate *purely* by

ideal conceptions, not¹ to be confounded with the coarse and imperfect representations,² as they appear on paper to the human eye,—geometry, as its very name declares,³ began with measuring a garden or a field. It is derived⁴ from the Greek ‘gē,’ land, ground, earth, and ‘metron,’ measure. Botany, the science of plants, was originally the science of ‘botanē,’ which in Greek⁵ does not mean⁶ a plant in general, but fodder, from ‘boskein,’ to feed. The science of plants would have been called ‘phytology,’ from the Greek ‘phyton,’ a plant.

The founders⁷ of astronomy were not the poet or the philosopher, but the sailor and the farmer.⁸ The early⁹ poet may have admired the “mazy¹⁰ dance of planets,” and the philosopher may have speculated¹¹ on the heavenly harmonies;¹² but *it was* to¹³ the sailor alone *that* a knowledge of the glittering guides of¹⁴ heaven became a question of life and death.¹⁵ It was he who calculated their risings and settings¹⁶ with the accuracy of a merchant and the shrewdness of an adventurer; and the names that were given to single stars or constellations clearly¹⁷ show that they were invented by the ploughers of the sea and of the land. The moon, for instance, the golden hand¹⁸ on the

rein, and ideal by idealen. *Conception*, here Begriff.

¹ Cf. the note to Ext. 23, and page 45, note 20. *To confound*, here verwechseln.

² Transl. here *representations* by Figuren, and use the definite article before *paper*.

³ *As—declares*, wie der Name schon bezeugt; *with measuring a*, mit dem Ausmessen eines.

⁴ *It is derived*, derselbe stammt her. Retain the Greek terms, given in inverted commas, also in German.

⁵ *In Greek*, im Griechischen.

⁶ *To mean*, here bedeuten.

⁷ *Founder*, here Begründer.

⁸ Translate here *sailor* by Seefahrer, and *farmer* by Landmann.

⁹ Turn here *early* by ‘old.’

¹⁰ *Mazy*, verschlungen.

¹¹ *To speculate*, here grübeln (über).

¹² The *heavenly harmonies* are called in German Harmonie der Sphären.

¹³ Translate here *to* by für, and place before it the word erst as an equivalent for *alone*.

¹⁴ Render here *of* by am.

¹⁵ Translate *a—death* briefly by zur Lebensfrage.

¹⁶ *Their—settings*, ihren Auf- und Untergang. When two compound expressions having the same subordinate member are placed side by side, the latter is generally omitted in the first expression, the principal member of which is connected with the second compound term by means of hyphens.

¹⁷ *Clearly*, here deutlich.

¹⁸ The word *hand*, denoting the ‘index of a watch,’ is rendered by Zeiger or Weiser; the latter ex-

dark dial of heaven, was called by them the measurer—the measurer of time; for time was measured by¹ nights and moons and winters long before it was reckoned by days and suns and years. — MAX MÜLLER, *The Science of Language*.

XXXIV.

THE WARTBURG.

In the midst of the wild upland tract which forms the centre of Germany, between Frankfort and Leipsic, is² one spot³ distinguished from all the surrounding country⁴ by its singular and romantic beauty. The unmeaning⁵ downs rise into bold, rocky hills; the patches of wood⁶ sink into unfathomable depths of forest;⁷ and from the midst of these⁸ towers the cluster of heights,⁹ on the highest of which¹⁰ stands the ancient castle of the Wartburg, or Watchtower, of Eisenach.

pression being more used in higher diction, should be employed in the above metaphor.

¹ *By*, referring to 'measure,' is rendered in German by *nach*.

² The verb *to be* is generally rendered by *sich befinden*, not only when it refers to the state of health of a person, but also when it denotes 'being in a place.' Compare the French *se trouver*.

³ *Spot*, here *Stelle*. Turn distinguished by 'which distinguishes itself, and all by *whole*.

⁴ *The surrounding country*, briefly in German, *die...Umgegend*. Singular, here *eigenthümlich*.

⁵ *Unmeaning*, *unbedeutend*; *downs*, here *Hügelland*, to be used in the singular only; *rise into*, transl. *geht...über*.

⁶ We say also in German *ein Fleckchen Land* for a *patch of ground*;

but in the above clause the literal translation of *patch* would not be applicable; we must therefore render the expression *patches of wood* freely by *zerstreut liegenden Gehölze*. *To sink into*, here *sich entfalten zu*; turn *unfathomable* by 'impenetrable.'

⁷ *Depths of forest*, *Waldestidicht*. Use the singular only.

⁸ Turn of these by the genitive singular of the pronoun 'the same'; *to tower*, here *emporragen*.

⁹ Turn *cluster of heights* by the compound term 'mountain-group.'

¹⁰ *On—which*, *auf deren höchster Spitze*. The above clause offers an illustration of the second instance (compare page 68, note 10) in which we must use the relative pronoun *der, die, das*, instead of *welcher, welche, welches*—viz. when the pronoun occurs in the genitive case.

In that castle *there* lived at the beginning of the thirteenth century one of the most saintly characters¹ of the Middle Ages, Elizabeth, Duchess of Thuringia. Her life, which was consumed² partly in deeds³ of unbounded charity to the surrounding⁴ poor, partly in patient endurance of⁵ oppression and affliction of all kinds,⁵ is one of the most instructive records⁶ of those times that can be read.⁷ It abounds with⁸ all the extravagance and superstition which mark⁹ the lives of so many *Roman Catholic* saints; but¹⁰ it is also one of the best examples of¹¹ the character which marks¹² so many of the holy men, and especially of the holy women, of the *Roman Catholic Church*, and which is still to be seen¹³ in the hospitals of foreign countries¹⁴—that devotion,¹⁵ namely, which spends¹⁶ itself in the service and condition of the poor,¹⁷ the sick, and the afflicted. There she lived and suffered, and there her memory¹⁸ was long preserved in the grateful recollection¹⁹ of the Thuringian²⁰ peasants.

¹ *One—characters*, translate eine der frömmsten Persönlichkeiten. For the expression *Middle Ages*, cf. the note to Ext. 26. *Thuringia*, Thüringen.

² Turn *which was consumed* by 'which she passed' (dahinbrachte). Why the preference is here given to the active voice will be seen from the note to Ext. 8.

³ *In deeds*, in der Ausübung.

⁴ The attribute *surrounding* cannot be translated literally in the above clause, which must be rendered by gegen die Armen in der Umgegend; *endurance*, here Ertragen.

⁵ *Of—kinds*, jeder Art von Unterdrückung und Betrügniß; *is* = forms.

⁶ *Records*, translate Schilderung. For *times*, cf. note *a* to Ext. 50.

⁷ Turn *that—read* by 'which one can read.'

⁸ Turn *it abounds with* by 'it is full of; ' *extravagance*, here Ueberschwenglichkeit, to be used in the plural.

⁹ *To mark*, here charakterisiren. For *lives* see Ext. 25, note *c*.

¹⁰ The conjunction *but* is to be placed after *is*.

¹¹ *Of*, here von.

¹² The verb *to mark* may here be rendered by kennzeichnen.

¹³ Render here the verb *to see* by finden, and see page 45, note 20.

¹⁴ For the expression *foreign countries* we have in German the convenient single term Ausland, corresponding somewhat to the French l'étranger.

¹⁵ *Devotion*, here Hingebung.

¹⁶ *Spends—condition*, sich im Dienste und in der Pflege...erschöpft.

¹⁷ For this and the two following adjectives, employed here substantively, use in German the plural; *afflicted*, Betrübt.

¹⁸ *Memory*, here Andenken.

¹⁹ *Recollection*, Erinnerung.

²⁰ *Thuringian*, Thüringer. Adjectives formed from the proper names of places frequently take the suffix er, instead of the usual adjective suffix, isch, more particularly if the name consists of more than one syllable.

Up¹ the rugged pathway to that same castle three hundred years afterwards² *there* rode at the dead of night a troop of five horsemen, leading behind them³ in custody a man closely muffled in a cavalier's cloak,⁴ who was brought in silence⁵ into the court of the fortress, and the gates closed⁶ immediately behind him. That⁷ man was Luther; those horsemen were the guard sent⁸ by the Elector of Saxony to carry him off on his return from Worms,⁹ and conceal him in this lonely and secluded spot¹⁰ till the fury of his enemies was¹¹ overpast: and there, in what¹² he called his Patmos,¹³ he lived¹⁴ unknown and in disguise¹⁵ *for* some of the most critical months of his career, and began that great work of his life—which¹⁶ alone would make his name famous to all after ages¹⁷—the translation of the Bible¹⁸ into the German *language*.

¹ *Up*, hinauf, to be placed after *castle*; *rugged*, rauh. Use in the above clause the accusative case, there being indicated direction together with motion, and turn *pathway* simply by 'way.'

² Turn *afterwards* by 'later,' and *at-night* by 'in the stillness of the night.' The German version will read far more elegantly if the clause *up—castle* is placed after the word *night*.

³ *Leading behind them*, transl. *bie...mit sich führten*; *closely*, dicht.

⁴ Turn *cavalier's cloak* by the compound term 'rider-cloak.' The clause *closely—cloak* qualifies the word *man*. See Int. p. xiv., l.

⁵ *In silence*, stillschweigend.

⁶ *To close*, sich schließen.

⁷ Turn here *That* by 'this.'

⁸ See the note to Ext. 23, and use the pluperfect of the passive voice. *To carry...off*, zu entführen.

⁹ The above refers to a well-known incident in the life of Luther, whose personal safety was in danger after his memorable attendance at the Diet of Worms in 1521, before the Emperor Charles V.

¹⁰ *Spot*, here Ort

¹¹ Use here the present condi-

tional of sein, this mood being generally required in adverbial clauses of time which are introduced by the conjunctions *biß, ehe, als, ob, &c.* *Overpast*, vorbei. The expression *was overpast* may, however, also be rendered, rather freely and idiomatically, by *sich gelegt hätte*.

¹² Turn *in what* by 'in the place which,' *called* = named.

¹³ *Patmos*, one of the islands called Sporades, is celebrated as the place where the Apostle John wrote the Apocalypse.

¹⁴ The verb *to live* may here be rendered by the expressive term *verleben*, which denotes 'to spend a certain time in living.' The prefix *ver* (compare the Latin *præ, pro, and per*), expresses 'a consuming, spending, destroying,' &c.

¹⁵ *In disguise*, verborgen.

¹⁶ Insert here the expletive *schon*, which gives greater force to the word *alone*.

¹⁷ *To—ages*, für alle künftigen Zeiten.

¹⁸ By means of his unsurpassed version of the Bible Luther became the founder of the glorious New-High-German idiom, which has since his times become the general literary language of Germany.

This castle, then,¹ is remarkable² as combining³ *in itself*, more than any other spot, the associations⁴ of the old and the new—of the Middle Ages and of the Reformation which destroyed⁵ them; and, accordingly, in the popular tradition⁶ Luther and St. Elizabeth still hold divided sway.—
DEAN STANLEY, *The Reformation. (A Lecture.)*

¹ Render here *then* by *also*.

² Supply the adverb *dadurch* before *remarkable*, in accordance with the rule that, if the adjective or verb upon which the objective clause or the supine depends be followed by a preposition, the latter is added to the demonstrative adverb *da* or *dar*, as *darin*, *damit*, *darauf*, *dazu*, &c. These compound adverbs are always placed before the dependent clause; and if a 'verbal form in *ing*' occurs in the latter, it is generally changed into a regular sentence with a finite verb: *e.g.* *We rely upon your keeping your word*, *wir verlassen uns darauf, daß Sie Ihr Wort halten werden*. The adjective *merkwürdig*, in the above clause, requires the preposition *durch*; it must, therefore, be preceded by *dadurch*. The reason for

the above rule is to be found in the characteristic feature of the German language, to give all constructions with unequivocal grammatical distinctness, and to employ, as a rule, distinct forms and inflections.

³ Render *as combining* by 'that it...combines' (*verbindet*), placing the verb after *new*.

⁴ *Association*, transl. *Erinnerung* (*an*); *the old*, *das Alte*; *the new*, *das Neue*.

⁵ *To destroy*, *vernichten*.

⁶ *In—tradition*, transl. *das Reich der Volks Sage*. We use here in German the accusative case, because the expression *hold...sway* will, in the above clause, best be translated by the transitive verb *beherrschen*. Translate *still* by *noch immer*, and *divided* by *gemeinschaftlich*.

VOCABULARY,¹

WITH

GRAMMATICAL INDEX TO THE NOTES.

a or an, ein, eine, ein; £500 a year, £500 des Jahres; as an excuse, als or zur Entschuldigung; without a weed, frei von jedem Unkraut; not a tree, kein Baum

a coming between an adjective and noun in English precedes the adjective in German, e.g. quite as promising a sign, ein ebenso vielversprechendes Zeichen

a (omitted): I am a single man, ich bin Junggesell; to be a surgeon, Arzt sein; it is a thousand to one, es ist tausend gegen eins; in a few minutes, in wenigen Minuten; in a wild stampede, in wilder Flucht; as day dawned, a war-whoop announced, bei Tagesanbruch, verkündigte Kriegsgeschrei

A.D., N.C.S.

abandon (to give up), aufgeben

abbey, die Abtei

ability, die Fähigkeit; das Geschick

able, adj. fähig

abode, der Aufenthaltsort

aborigines, die Eingebornen

abound with, voll sein von

about (nearly), ungefähr; about dusk, ungefähr in der Dämmerstunde; about 20 men, an 20 Mann

about (to write about a subject), über; what (you write) about, worüber; there is nothing to describe about the prairie, es läßt sich nichts von der Prairie beschreiben

about: (men who were) about him, bei ihm; to flicker about, hin und her flackern; to get (a ship) about, umwenden; about with her! wendet!

about: to be about (to), im Begriff sein; to be about (to do a thing, to purpose doing it), wollen; an injustice about to be done him, eine Ungerechtigkeit die man ihm anthun will. See also p. 40, note 12

¹ The Vocabulary is based upon Dr. Buchheim's Key to the work, and therefore gives in each case the German word which expresses the meaning of the English word in the special sense in which it is used in the passages selected. This often differs from the ordinary meaning, and the German word given therefore is not always that which is to be found most readily in the dictionaries.

above (more than), über; — (the summit), über; high above (surrounding persons or things), überragend; high above (higher up), hoch über; rising tier above tier, in aufsteigenden Reihen

abreast, neben einander

absence (of anything), die Ermangelung

absolutely (completely), vollständig; — (necessary), durchaus

absorb, absorbiren

abstract, abstrakt

abundance: in abundance, in great abundance = in large numbers, in großer Menge

abyss, der Abgrund

accept, annehmen

accident, der Zufall

accompany, begleiten

accomplishment: in a fair way of accomplishment, auf gutem Wege erfüllt zu werden

according to, nach; gemäß

accordingly, deshalb

account: on account (of), wegen; or he is accounted for, oder es heißt daß er

accumulation of bitterness, die aufgesammelte Erbitterung

accuracy, die Genauigkeit

accurate (exact), genau

Accusative, used in elliptical clauses, 35, n. 13

Accusative, with infinitive, construction of, Gr. Int. xvii. III.

Accusatives, two, not used with verbs of choosing, appointing, etc., 36, n. 4

accustomed, *adj.*, gewöhnlich

achieve (a task), lösen

acknowledge (to one's self), sich eingestehen

acknowledgment, die Anerkennung
acquaint: to be acquainted with, kennen

acquiesced in their settlement = settled peacefully, ließen sich ruhig nieder

acquire (for one's self), sich erwerben

across (the prairie), durch; (forty

miles) across, breit; across the saddie, über dem Sattel liegend; from across the mountains, vom Gebirge her

act: in the act of freezing, im Gefrieren; act of generous feeling,

die großmüthige Handlung

action, die Wirkung; to put in action, thatächlich ausführen

active (energetic), energisch; active sports, die Leibesübungen

actively: to keep actively engaged, beschäftigen

activity, die Thätigkeit; die Thatkraft; (industry), die Betriebsamkeit

actually, thatächlich; faktisch

acute, scharf

add (to say further), hinzusetzen; hinzufügen; (he) adding that, indem er hinzufügte; add to, hinzufügen; add to (the heat), erhöhen

address = to speak before an audience, vor einer Versammlung sprechen

adhere, zusammenhalten; (to a custom), anhalten; (to an opinion), bei (der Meinung) bleiben

adherent, *sb.*, der Anhänger

adjacent (nations), benachbart

Adjectives denoting colour, use of, 2, n. 10

Adjectives, formation of, from proper names; (1) by *ich*, 66, n. 5; (2) by *er*, 95, n. 20

Adjectives referring to erklären, halten, etc., 92, n. 14

Adjectives, repetition of terminations of comparative and superlative of, 92, n. 6

Adjectives upon which the objective clause or supine depends followed by a preposition, 97, n. 2

Adjective Sentences. Caution about the formation of them, Gr. Int. xiv., etc., I.

admire, bewundern

admirable, musterhaft

admit, zulassen; — (to see a person), vorlassen; (where reason)

was admitted to influence, Eingang fand

advance, *sb.*, das Vorrücken; (spreading out), die Ausdehnung

advance, *vb.*: to order to advance (*mil.*), vorrücken lassen; to advance (to step forward), vor= schreiten; (to put forth), vor= bringen; (the season) advancing = advanced, vorge= schritten

advantage, der Vortheil; to set at advantage, Vortheile gewähren

advantageous, günstig

adventure, das Abenteuer

adventurer, der Abenteuerer

Adverbial Expressions. I. Place of, (1) of *manner*, 7, n. 32 (a), (2) of *place and time*, 1, n. 4 (a)

II. — of *time*, rendered by the genitive, 27, n. 6

III. Elliptical use of *adv.* expres. of place, 36, n. 12

Adverbs, relative superlative of, how formed, 87, n. 1

adversary, der Gegner

advice, der Rath

advocate, der Advokat

affable, herablassend

affair (incident), das Ereigniß; (tournament, &c.), die Begeben= heit; *see also* p. 58, note 16

affairs (everybody's affairs), Angelegenheiten; busy with his own affairs (*i.e.* eating and drinking), mit sich selbst beschäftigt

affect (the nerves, &c.), afficiren; (to pretend), sich stellen (als ob)

affection, die Liebe

affinity, die Verwandtschaft

afflict: to be afflicted with, leiden an; to be most afflicting bores, äußerst lästig fallen; entsetzlich lang= weilig sein

afflicted (the), die Betrübten

affliction, die Bedrängniß

afford (a shade), gewähren; — (a probability), darthun; could not afford = could not risk (wagen)

after, nachdem; after some hours' sailing = after they had sailed some hours, nachdem sie einige Stunden gesegelt waren

after (great difficulty), mit after ages, künftige Zeiten

afternoon, der Nachmittag; in the afternoon, am Nachmittag

afterwards, nachher; (later), später; (after an event), darauf

again, wieder; (yet again), aber= mals; to find again, wiederfinden;

to give thanks again, von Neuem danken; and back again, und zurück

against, gegen; against all comers, gegen alle Welt; ordinance against

confining, die Verordnung nicht zu beschränken

age, das Alter; at the age of, im Alter von

ages: after ages, ages to come, künftige Zeiten

agile, behend

agitation, die Aufregung

ago: a year or two ago, vor ein oder zwei Jahren

agoing: to set agoing, in Bewe= gung bringen

agree, übereinkommen

agreeable, angenehm

aid, die Hilfe

aide-de-camp, der Adjutant (eines Generals)

aim (for which one strives), das Streben

air, die Luft; mountain air, die Bergluft

alarm: in alarm, voll Bestürzung

Albert N'yanza, der Albert N'yanza

alien, fremdartig

all, all; (everything), Alles; all the people (were in movement), Alles; all the Namidians, alle Nambier; all the holders (of houses), alle Bewohner; all kinds, jede Art; all the rest, der ganze übrige Theil; all the surrounding country, die ganze Umgegend; all that day, den ganzen Tag; all the week, die ganze Woche; all the (officials), sämmtlich; the troops were all = all the. (sämmtliche) troops were; all (their proceed= ings), sämmtlich; all (together) sämmtlich; no (light) at all, none

- at all, gar kein; all at once (suddenly), plötzlich; all but (almost), fast; it is all the same to him, es gilt ihm gleich; to score all over, über und über kerben
- allegiance: to swear allegiance, den Fehenseid leisten
- alligator, der Alligator
- allow, lassen; (no man) is allowed, darf. (See also p. 9, note 22 (b))
- allure it out of the path, es vom Wege ablocken
- ally, der Verbündete
- Alma, die Alma
- almost, beinahe; fast
- alone, allein; (solely), bloß; a kick alone has, nur ein Fußtritt hat; but it was to the sailor alone, aber erst für den Seemann; to let it alone, es bleiben lassen
- along (the road, &c.), längs (des Weges); along (a strip of land) = on, auf; seeing as he rode along, als er beim Dahinreiten bemerkte; along with, bei
- alongside (the way), längs (des Weges)
- alphabet, das Alphabet
- Alps, die Alpen
- also, auch
- altar, der Altar; high altar, der Hochaltar
- although, obwohl; obgleich
- alumni, Mummer (*plur.*)
- always, immer; stets
- Amazon (female), die Amazone
- ambush, der Hinterhalt
- American, *adj.*, americanisch
- amiable, liebenswürdig
- amid, unter
- amiss, do not take it amiss (if) = do not be angry with me about it (if), zürnet mir nicht darob (daß)
- amity, die Freundschaft
- among, unter; — (nations, tribes, plants, &c., in a general sense), bei; (between), zwischen; among (the hills), zwischen; had taken refuge among the people, hatte ihre Zuflucht zu dem Volke genommen; life among the Bedouins, die Lebensweise der Beduinen
- amount (value), der Werth
- ample (fortune), groß
- amply, vollständig
- ancient (castle), alt
- and, und; (slept with their swords under their pillows) and their horses (saddled), während die Pferde —; a few men and the Ligurian with them, einige Männer sammt dem Figurier; a man and a horse, ein Mann sammt einem Pferde; (a lump of butter is placed) and allowed to melt, welches man schmelzen läßt
- anecdote, die Anekdote
- Anezza (*plur.*), die Anezza
- angry (jerks of the head), heftig
- animal, das Thier
- animal kingdom, das Thierreich
- animality, der Animalismus
- animosity, die Erbitterung
- another, ein anderer, &c.; ein Zweiter, &c.
- answer, *sb.*, die Antwort; to make no answer, antworten nichts
- answer, *vb.*, antworten; to answer very well for his assertion, die Wahrheit seiner Behauptung zu bestätigen
- ant, die Ameise
- anticipation: (to blossom) in anticipation, in der Hoffnung
- antiquarian, antiquarisch
- any, irgend welcher, welche, welches; (every), ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes; more than any other spot, mehr wie jeder andre Ort; for any long period, auf längere Zeit; not to any woman (*p. 89*), nicht einer Frau
- any (*omitted*): without waiting any longer, ohne länger abzuwarten
- any one, Jemand; eine jede Person
- apart: a few feet apart, einige Fuß von einander
- Apollo, Apollo
- apologue, die Sage
- apostle, der Apostel
- apotheosis, die Apotheose
- apparel, die Kleidung
- appeal: to make appeal, to appeal, appelliren

appear, erscheinen; sich zeigen; — conspicuous, zeichnen sich besonders aus; — (above water), auftauchen; (seem), scheinen
 appearance (outward), das Aussehen; (personal), äußere Erscheinung; first appearance, erstes Auftreten

appendage (feathery), die Anhängsel; (appurtenance), das Zubehör

applause, der Beifall

apple, der Apfel

apply (a name), beilegen

appoint (a day), bestimmen

Apposition, agreement of, with the nouns qualified, Gr. Int. xix. IV., 85, n. 9

apprehend (to dread), befürchten

approach, *sb.*, there was only one approach to, nur ein Weg führt nach

approach, *vb.*, sich nähern; Would it stay to be approached? Wird es bei der Annäherung nicht verschwinden? [April

April: on the 2nd April, den 2ten

apse, die Apsis

aquiline: slightly aquiline (nose), leichtgebogen

Aquitaine, Aquitanien

Arab, der Araber

Arabic, das Arabisch

arch, der Bogen; Arch of Triumph, der Triumphbogen

arched, gewölbt

archipelago, der Archipel

arduous, schwierig

argue, disputiren

argument, das Argument; der Beweis; (subject of a discourse), der Gegenstand; (dispute), der Streit; die Discussion

arise from, entstehen aus

arm: in his mother's arms, in den Armen seiner Mutter

arm (weapon), das Gewehr; die Waffe; in arms, die Waffen in der Hand; passage of arms (between knights), der Ritterkampf

armed, gewaffnet; armed men (soldiers), gewaffnete Mannschaft

armour, die Rüstung

army, die Armee; the First Army, das erste Armee-corps
 around its walls, an den Wänden herum

arrest, der Arrest; a week's arrest, eine Woche Arrest

arrive, ankommen

arrival (introduction), die Einführung

arrow, der Pfeil

art, die Kunst

article (of table furniture), das Stück

Article. I. Use of *def.* (1) with abstract nouns, 1, n. 1, and 8, n. 35 (a); (2) with common names, 1, n. 2; (3) with names of materials, 2, n. 5 (a); (4) with names of mountains, 6, n. 30; (5) instead of possessive pronouns, 8, n. 34 (b); (6) with names of countries preceded by adjectives, 66, n. 14; (7) with foreign proper names, 3, n. 15 (a), and 9, n. 40 (b); (8) with adjs. 31, 18; (9) after *alle*, 68, n. 4; (10) before *meiste*, 91, n. 6

II. Omission of —, with common names used as titles, 28, n. 6

III. *General definition* of —, 76, n. 10

IV. *Place* of —, when used with *adj.*, 31, n. 18; 49, n. 13

V. *Repetition* of —, Gr. Int. xix. IV., 42, n. 9; 91, n. 10

artillery, die Artillerie

as, als; wie; so; ebenso (*the as preceding the first or only adjective in a phrase* = so or ebenso; *the second* as = wie or als); da; während, &c.: as an excuse, als or zur Entschuldigung; operate as but a slight check, nur geringen Einhalt thun; as far as (the gate), bis zu; as if it had been made so, als wäre es so gemacht; as if (springing from), gleichsam; as if to (complain), als ob es wollte (*see also* p. 39, n. 5); as the day dawned, bei Tagesanbruch; as (the division formed), während;

(we do not love them) as it is, auch so (*placed at beginning of sentence*); as (the reading ended), so wie; as the thing more perfect is, the = the more perfect anything is, the, je vollkommener Etwas ist, desto; as to (with regard to), was . . . betrifft; as well as, sowie; almost as well as, fast ebenso gut wie, quite as, ebenso. (*See also p. 43, n. 11; p. 76, n. 4*)

ascent, die Besteigung

ascertain: well-ascertained, völlig-
ermiesen

ashes, die Asche

aside: to turn aside, ablenken

ask, fragen

asparagus, der Spargel

aspect, das Aussehen

assail, angreifen

assault (him), angreifen

assembly, die Versammlung

assertion, die Behauptung

Assertion, placed (1) *after* the subject, 2, n. 5 (b); (2) *before* the subject, 3, n. 12 (a)

assiduously improve (one's abilities), durch Fleiß pflegen

assign, anweisen

assistance, die Hülfe

associate, zugefessen; beigesessen

associations of (remembrances of),
die Erinnerungen an

assume, annehmen; — (a dress);
an thun

Assyrian, *sb.*, der Assyrier

astronomer, der Astronom; Herschel
the astronomer, der Astronom
Herschel

astronomy, die Astronomie

at, zu; an; in; auf; bei, &c.: at a depth, in einer Tiefe; at a distance, in der Ferne; (arrive, be, descend, take place at a town), in; (to land at a town), bei; to set at advantage, Vortheile genießen; no . . . at all, none at all, gar kein; at all events, auf alle Fälle; at certain seasons, zu gewissen Jahreszeiten; at dusk, in der Dämmerung; at first, zu-

erst; night is at hand, die Nacht rückt heran; at his side, zur Seite; at his tailor's, bei seinem Schneider; at length, endlich; to set at liberty, in Freiheit setzen; at once, sofort; at present, jetzt; at the age of, im Alter von; at the battle, in der Schlacht; at the beginning (lived), zu Anfang; at the foot, am Fuß; at the head (of an army, &c.), an der Spitze; to sit at the king's side, sich neben den König setzen; at the school, an der Schule; at the moment, in dem Augenblick; at the right minute, im rechten Moment; at (the same time), um; at six (o'clock), um sechs Uhr; at the time (just then), im Augenblicke; at this day (up to this day), bis auf diesen Tag; at this moment, in diesem Augenblick; at whatever risk, auf jede Gefahr hin; at which = where, wo

atmospheric, atmosphärisch

atom: (without caring) an atom,
im Geringsten

attach, anhängen; attach itself,
sich anknüpfen

attack, *vb.*, angreifen

attack, *sb.*: flank attack, der Flankenangriff; column of attack, die Angriffskolonne; plan of attack, der Angriffsplan

attempt (to take a fort), *sb.*, der
Angriff

attempt, *vb.*, versuchen

attendance: to be in close attendance on him, sich stets um ihn befinden

attendant, der Begleiter

attention, die Aufmerksamkeit; attention (to), Aufmerksamkeit (auf)

attitude, die Stellung; an attitude of opposition to, eine feindliche Stellung gegen

audience (an assembly of regularly appointed members), die Versammlung. (*See also p. 32, n. 6*)

Augustus, Augustus

Austrasia, Aufrastia

Austrian, *adj.*, österreichisch
 authenticated, als authentisch er-
 wiesen
 author, der Autor; der Schriftsteller;
 der Verfasser
 autobiographi, autobiographisch
 autumn, der Herbst
 auxiliary cohort, die Auxiliarcohort
 avert, abwenden
 avoid, entgehen
 awaken, wecken
 aware: well aware, überzeugt; to
 be aware of, sich bewußt sein
 away, hinweg; to be cast away
 (driven on shore), an den Strand
 treiben; to dash away (to take
 flight), fortstürzen; to ride away,
 fortreiten
 axe, die Axt
 axis, die Achse
 baby (child), das Kind
 Babylon, Babylon
 back (*in conjunction with verbs*),
 wieder—; zurück—; to go
 back, zurückgehen; to turn back,
 zurückkehren; to find the way
 back; den Weg wiederfinden; to
 trace back, verfolgen; there and
 back, hin und zurück
 back, *sb.*: turned their backs
 (fled), flohen; back (of a build-
 ing, of the town), die Rückseite
 bad (worse than his reputation),
 schlimm
 baffle (to frustrate), vereiteln. (*See*
p. 49, n. 6)
 bake, backen
 baker, der Bäcker
 ball, die Kugel
 band (music), das Musikcorps
 bank (of a river), das Ufer; (side
 of a hollow), der Abhang
 banquet, das Bankett
 barbarian, *sb.*, der Barbar
 barbarian chieftain, der Barbaren-
 hauptling
 barometer, der Barometer
 basilica of St. Peter, die Peters-
 kirche
 Bath, Bath
 battalion, das Bataillon
 battery, die Batterie

battle, die Schlacht; battle of, die
 Schlacht bei, or an. (*See p. 49, n. 1*)
 battle-field, das Schlachtfeld
 baying (of a hound), das Bellen
 be, *insep. prefix, transforms intransi-*
sitive verbs into transitive ones,
 39, n. 1
 be, sein; werden (*see p. 1, n. 4 (b)*);
 sich befinden (*see p. 94, n. 2*); &c.:
 the treasury was (in an ex-
 hausted condition), die Schatz-
 kammer befand sich; to be (to con-
 sist of), bestehen aus; the drink
 is water, milk, and tea, das Ge-
 tränk besteht aus Wasser, &c.; to be
 (a strong position, &c.), bilden;
 (her life is (forms) a record),
 bildet; what can be (more ex-
 traordinary), was kann es geben;
 to be of (to belong to), angehören;
 to be without result, keine
 Folge haben; the object was, dieß
 hatte zum Zweck; night is at
 hand, die Nacht rückt heran; the
 answer was, die Antwort lautete;
 to be (in the nature of things),
 liegen; the future was, die Zu-
 kunft lag; to be on the back (of
 a camel, &c.), auf dem Rücken
 sitzen; to be at stake, auf dem
 Spiele stehen; to be (in favour),
 stehen; to be (in one's —rd year),
 stehen
 be: there is, *see* there
 be: being: though the blossoming
 time being spring, obgleich die
 Blüthezeit im Frühling ist;
 I being referee, ich als Schieds-
 richter; (I) being a gentile, da ich
 ein Heide bin; which being so,
 und da dieß der Fall ist; the moon
 being bright, da der Mond hell
 schien; they being so many, wäh-
 rend ihrer so viele waren; no words
 being spoken, da kein Wort ge-
 sprochen wird; without being
 made a prisoner, ohne zum Ge-
 fangenen gemacht zu werden; by
 being the only man = because
 he is the only man; he is ac-
 counted for by being, es heißt,
 daß er sei

be (*followed by a past participle*), see under *Passive Voice*; declared to be fairly achieved, für vollständig gelöst erklärt; (the roses) are to be planted, müssen gepflanzt werden; (though he) were to be crowned, gekrönt werden sollte; it may be suspected, man kann annehmen; to be moored (in harbour), vor Anker liegen; not a tree to be seen, kein Baum ist zu sehen

be: it was (*omitted*): but it was to the sailor alone, aber erst für den Seeman. (*See also p. 34, n. 13*)

beam (from the sun), der Strahl

bear, *vb.*, tragen; (to hold up), emporhalten; to bear (sail), aufspannen; weapons bearing points of, Waffen deren Spitzen aus . . . waren; to bear down to the ground, zu Boden werfen; borne down by the current, von der Strömung fortgerissen; to bear ill-will, übel wollen; to bring (guns) to bear on (a position), aufrichten

beast, das Thier

beat: the rain beats furiously, der Regen strömt heftig nieder

beautiful, schön; beautiful (youth), herrlich

beautiful, *sb.*, das Schöne

beauty, die Schönheit

because, weil; da

become, werden; whatever does become of the gentlemen, was auch immer aus den Herren wird; has become (now), ist jetzt

becoming, *adj.*, geziemend

bed (place of rest), das Lager

Bedouin, der Beduin; — tribe, der Beduinestamm

bedürfen, governs genitive case, 6, n. 29

befall, widerfahren

befehlen, requires the supine, 89, n. 1

befleissen (sich), governs gen. case, 86, n. 2

before, *prep.*, vor; *conj.*, ehe; *adv.*

(had been there before), schon früher

beggary (poverty), die Armuth
begin, anfangen; beginnen; from that moment history begins, to begin = datiren; a storm begins, ein Sturm erhebt sich; day gradually began to break = day gradually broke

beginning, der Anfang; at the beginning (lived), zu Anfang

behind, hinter; to lead behind them, mit sich führen; to leave behind, zurücklassen

behold, erblicken

being, *sb.* (creature), das Wesen

beleaguer (to afflict), heimsuchen

believe, glauben

bell, die Glocke

belong, gehören; belong to the vegetable kingdom, zum Pflanzenreich gehörig

beloved, geliebt

below (under), unter

belt, der Gürtel

belted (knight), gerüstet; belted about with a zone of blue = decorated with a blue girdle, mit einem blauen Gürtel geschmückt

bend, die Biegung

bend back, zurückbiegen; bend in obeisance, sich tief verneigen

Benedek, Benedek

Berber language, die Berbersprache

besides, außerdem

best, *adj.*, best; best luck, das größte Glück; to have the best of the struggle, die Oberhand bekommen

best, *adv.*: as best pleases ourselves, wie es uns am besten gefällt; to like the best, am liebsten mögen

better, besser; better (observer), schärfer; to understand flowers better, mehr von Blumen verstehen

between, zwischen

beyond (one's comprehension), zu hoch für; beyond (the arch), hinter; to get beyond the reach, aus dem Bereich kommen

bill (parliamentary), die Bill
 bird, der Vogel
 bishop, der Bischof
 Bistritz, die Bistritz
 bit, das Stück; bit of land, das Stück Land
 bit by bit, allmählich
 bite, beißen; to bite a stick, in einen Stoch beißen
 bitter, bitter
 bitterness (of feeling), die Erbitterung
 bivouac, das Bivouac; bivouac fire, das Bivouacfeuer
 black, schwarz
 black (lead) pencil, der Bleistift
 blameless, tadellos
 blazing, brennend
 blood, das Blut; (descent), die Abstammung
 bloodhound, der Schweißhund
 blossom, *vb.*, blühen
 blossoming time, die Blüthezeit
 blow (a knock), der Schlag
 blow, *vb.*: but for the wind blowing, wenn nicht der Wind her wehte; it (the wind) blew coldly upon the soldiers = the soldiers felt its keenness
 blue, blau
 boar, der Eber
 boast: it was the just boast of Schiller, Schiller war mit Recht stolz darauf
 boat, das Boot; boat's crew, die Schiffsmannschaft
 body, der Körper; (denoting matter as opposed to spirit), der Körper
 boil, *vb.*, kochen; boiled, *adj.*, gekocht
 bold, kühn
 boldly, kühn; boldly proportioned, in kühnen Proportionen
 bombard, bombardiren
 book, das Buch; Books of Kings, die Bücher der Könige
 border, die Grenze; border-country, das Grenzland; border feud, die Grenzfehde
 bore: to be a bore, lästig fallen; langweilig sein

born, geboren
 borough, der Flecken; borough of Poole, der Flecken Poole
 borrow, entlehnen
 botanical, botanisch
 botanist, der Botaniker
 botany, die Botanik
 both, beide; to be short of both sleep and food, weder Schlaf noch Nahrung genug haben
 boundary, die Grenze
 bowels (of the earth), der Schoß
 boy, der Knabe
 branch, der Zweig
 bravely, tapfer
 bread, das Brod; cake of bread, der platte Brodluchen
 break, brechen; zerbrechen; (to divert), ablenken; day gradually began to break = day gradually broke (to break, anbrechen)
 break (in the monotony), die Abwechslung
 breakers, brandende Wogen
 breast (of a mountain), die Mitte
 breeze, der Wind
 brigade of guards, die Gardes-Brigade
 brigand-looking, mit räuberhaftem Aussehen
 bright, hell; the moon being bright, da der Mond hell schien; bright (sky), klar; bright side (of affairs), die Lichtseite
 brightly, hell
 bring, bringen; bring back, zurückbringen; bring down (shoot), herabschießen; bring up (guns, &c.) = to cause or to order (guns, &c.) to be brought up, aufbringen lassen; bring (guns) to bear on (a position), aufrichten
 Britain, Britanien
 British, *adj.*, britisch
 broad, breit
 broken (land), uneben
 brother, der Bruder
 brotherhood, die Brüderschaft
 brow (forehead), die Stirn; (head), das Haupt
 brown, braun

Bruges, Brügge
 build, bauen; (land which would let) on a building lease, zu Bauzwecken
 building, *sb.*, das Gebäude
 bully, *vb.*, übel mitspielen
 burden himself, sich aufbürden
 burgher, der Bürger
 burn (to destroy by fire), verbrennen; burn (down), niederbrennen
 burning, *adj.*, glühend
 business, das Geschäft; closely engaged in business, von Geschäften sehr stark in Anspruch genommen
 bust, die Büste
 busy, beschäftigt
 but, aber; (*following a negative clause*), sondern; (only), nur; operate as but a slight check upon, nur geringen Einhalt thun; saw but one, sah nur ein; give but (an indication), geben nur; nothing but, nicht als; but for the wind blowing, wenn nicht der Wind her wehte; but somehow, dennoch fügt es sich so (daß —)
 but, *transl. of*, (1) *by* aber, or sondern, 24, n. 8; (2) *by* als, 62, n. 1; (3) *by* nur or bloß, 41, n. 14
 but for, *when turned by* if not, 55, n. 7
 butter, die Butter
 buy (freedom), erkaufen
 by (whom or what), von; by (means of, or owing to), durch; (knelt) by the altar, am Altar; by the bank (of a river), am Ufer; by (the utterance) = at, auf; by order, auf Befehl; by (*referring to measure*), nach; (the time was) measured by nights, nach Nächten gerechnet; by Allah, bei Allah; by no means, durchaus nicht; (to make an attack) by the part (of the hill), von der Seite aus; by night, zur Nachtzeit, in der Nacht; by this time, jetzt; nun; schon; by turns, abwechselnd; by way of (remuneration), als
 by (*followed by a pres. part.*): by employing, durch die Anwen-

dung; by raising, durch die Errichtung; by associating him, indem er sich zugesellte; by presenting himself, indem er sich zeigte; by being the only man = because he is the only man; he is accounted for by being = es heißt, daß er sei
 by and by, bald darauf
 cabbage, der Kohl; red-cabbage, der rothe Kohl
 Cæsar, Cäsar
 cake of bread, der platte Brodstuch
 calculate, berechnen
 call (to name), nennen; was called, wurde genannt; call upon (anyone to do anything), auffordern; to call upon him, ihm einen Besuch machen
 camel, das Kamel or Kameel
 cameline, Kameel —
 camp, das Lager
 campaign, der Feldzug
 can, können; so far as a beast can, so weit es einem Thier möglich ist; that he could repeat, daß er im Stande war zu wiederholen; it could not but, es mußte natürlich; could, *when rendered by* konnte, or by könnte, 67, n. 5; cannot be obtained, ist nicht zu haben
 candle, das Licht
 candy, das Zuckerwerk
 cannon (*sing.*), die Kanone; (*collectively*), das Geschütz. (*See p. 49, n. 10*)
 canvas awning (of vehicles), die Plane
 caoutchouc, der Kautschuk; das Federharz
 capable: to be capable of, können
 capital (of a country), die Hauptstadt
 capitulate, capituliren
 capitulation, die Capitulation
 captain (of a guild), der Capitän
 capture, *vb.*, gefangen nehmen
 capturing slaves, der Sklavenfang
 Capuchin, der Kapuziner
 care, *sb.*, die Sorge
 care (to trouble about), sich kümmern

mern um; to care about flowers,
 sich etwas aus Blumen machen
 career, die Laufbahn
 carefully (observe), gut; carefully
 premeditated, planmäßig vorbe-
 reitet
 careless (indifferent as to), unbe-
 kümmert
 carriage, der Wagen
 carry, tragen; carry (one every-
 where), hintragen; carry (a place
 by storm), einnehmen; carry off
 (a person), entführen; wegführen
 Carthusian, der Karthäuser
 cart-load, die Ladung
 case: in such a case, in diesem
 Falle; case of high treason, die
 Hochverrathssache
 cast (a shadow), werfen; to be
 cast away (driven on shore), an
 den Strand treiben
 Castilian, castilianisch
 castle, das Schloß
 cathedral (of Strasburg), der
 Münster
 catholic, *adj.*, katholisch
 cattle, das Vieh; not a herd of
 cattle, keine Herde Vieh; a group,
 no matter of what cattle, eine
 Gruppe von welcher Art sie auch sei
 cauliflower, der Blumenkohl
 cause, *vb.*, (to make necessary),
 veranlassen; (to order, to make),
 lassen; (to act so that), be-
 wirken
 cause, *sb.*, die Ursache; to plead a
 cause, eine Sache führen; . cause
 (of failure), der Grund; (subject,
 of an argument), der Gegenstand
 causeway batteries, die Chaufsee-
 Batterien
 cavalier's cloak, der Reitermantel
 celebrated, *adj.*, berühmt
 celebrity (fame), der Ruf
 cell, die Zelle
 Central Arabia, . Mittelarabien
 (*neut.*)
 centre, der Mittelpunkt; centre bat-
 talion, das Centrum; centre (of
 an army), das Centrum
 centurion, der Centurion
 century, das Jahrhundert

certain, gewiß
 certainly, gewiß
 chain-pier, die Kettenbrücke
 chair, der Stuhl
 champion, der Kämpfer
 change, *vb.*, verändern; changed
 the whole face (of the battle)
 = (the battle) assumed another
 aspect, nahm eine andere Gestalt an
 change, *sb.*, die Veränderung
 character (attribute), der Charakter;
 (person), die Persönlichkeit; (one's)
 character, der Ruf
 charger (war-horse), das Schlacht-
 roß
 charity, die Wohlthätigkeit
 Charles, Karl; Charles the Great,
 Karl der Große
 charlock, der Adersenf; wilder Senf
 charming (manner), einnehmend
 check: to operate as but a slight
 check upon, nur geringen Einhalt
 thun
 checkered fortune, abwechselnder
 Erfolg
 cheer (to encourage), ermutigen
 cherish: the memory of Joseph
 II. was long and fondly cherish-
 ed, Joseph II. stand lange in thei-
 rem Andenken
 chicken, das Hühnchen; prairie
 chicken, das amerikanische Feld-
 huhn
 chief (of a staff), der Chef
 chiefly, vorzüglich, hauptsächlich
 chieftain, der Häuptling
 child, das Kind
 child's, kindlich
 chin, das Kinn
 chivalry, das Ritterthum. (*See also*
p. 57, n. 1)
 chlamys, die Chlamys
 choice (flowers), schönst
 choice, *sb.*, die Wahl; through
 (from choice), aus freier Wahl;
 to make a choice, wählen
 choose, wählen; who might have
 chosen = to whom it might
 occur, dem es beigestfallen wäre
 chopped, gehackt
 Christian, *adj.*, christlich
 Christmas-day, der Weihnachtstag

chronicle, die Chronik
 church, die Kirche
 circular, *adj.*, kreisförmig
 circumstance, der Umstand; (*incident*), der Zwischenfall
 citizen, der Bürger
 city, die Stadt
 civilization, die Civilisation
 claim, *vb.*, reclamiren
 claim, *sb.*, der Anspruch
 class, die Klasse
 classificatory, classificirend
 clattering (the), das Gerassel
 clean, *vb.*, reinigen
 clear, klar; clear (knowledge),
 genau
 clearly (show), deutlich
 clergy, die Geistlichkeit
 cliff, die Klippe
 climb (a hill, a mountain), *cr*=
 klettern; to climb up, hinauf=
 klettern
 cling to, sich anklammern
 cloak: cavalier's cloak, der Reiter=
 mantel
 close, *adj.*, (to come to close
 quarters), angreifen; to be in
 close attendance on him, sich
 stets um ihn befinden
 close, *vb.*, (the gates closed), sich
 schließen; to close upon, sich
 schließen über
 close to, *adv.*, neben
 closely (muffled), dicht; closely en=
 gaged (in business), sehr stark in
 Anspruch genommen
 closing (ranks), geschlossen
 cloud, die Wolke
 cloudless, unbewölkt
 cluster of heights, die Berggruppe
 coarse, roh
 coast, die Küste
 coat, der Rock
 cogency, der Zwang
 cogent, triftig
 cold, kalt
 coldly: it (the wind) blew coldly
 upon the soldiers = the soldiers
 felt its keenness (Schärfe)
 collar round his neck, das Hals=
 band
 colony, die Kolonie

colour, die Farbe
 column of attack, die Angriffs=
 kolonne
 combatant, der Kämpfer
 combine, verbinden
 come, kommen; ages to come, die
 künftigen Zeiten; to come down,
 herabkommen; to come forth (to
 creep out), herausstiehn; to
 come on (to rain), anfangen; to
 come out (from under), hervor=
 kommen; to come out in front
 (of a position in battle), vor=
 rücken hinaus; to come up (to
 his assistance), kommen herbei;
 to come up to it, vor demselben
 ankommen; to come upon (to
 fall upon, to attack), überfallen;
 (to chance upon), aufstoßen; we,
 coming upon some break, indem
 wir auf irgend eine Abwechslung
 stießen
 come (*omitted*): come and
 live, wohnen; come to settle, sich
 niederlassen
 comedy, das Lustspiel
 comer: first comer, der Erste Beste;
 against all comers, gegen alle
 Best
 command (to govern), beherrschen;
 (to order), befehlen; to be com=
 manded (to), den Befehl erhalten
 command, *sb.* (leadership), die
 Anführung; to have at his com=
 mand, ihm zu Gebote stehen
 commandant, der Commandant
 commander (in chief), der Feld=
 herr; (of a corps), der Befehls=
 haber
 commanding (in manner), ehr=
 furchtgebietend; commanding of=
 ficer, der Commandant
 commence, anfangen
 commercial town, die Handelsstadt
 commission (as officer), die Offizier=
 stelle; first commission, die Er=
 nennung zum Offizier
 commit (to send), schicken; commit
 (a fault), begehen
 common (Bedouin), gemein; com=
 mon (colour), gewöhnlich; com=
 mon (room), gemeinschaftlich

Commons (House of), das Unter-
 haus
communicate (ideas by speech),
 ausdrücken
companion, der Gefährte; (friend),
 der Freund
company, die Gesellschaft; (of
 guards), die Compagnie; (of
 soldiers), die Truppe
competitor, der Mitwerber
complain of, sich beklagen über
complete, vollständig
complying with the habit, dem
 Gebrauch nachkommend
compose (an alphabet), bilden; to
 be composed of, bestehen aus
composition (elaboration), die Aus-
 arbeitung; (of an essay), die Ab-
 fassung. (*See p. 30, n. 1, and p.*
62, n. 6)
Compound Expressions, two, hav-
 ing the same subordinate mem-
 ber, 93, n. 16
comprehend, verstehen
comprehension, der Verstand
conceal, verbergen
conceive (imagine), sich denken
concentration, die Concentration
conception (geometrical), der Be-
 griff
concerning: (such questions) con-
 cerning it, darüber
conciliate (the hearts, win them
 over), winnen
condescending, herablassend
condition (state), die Lage; der Zu-
 stand; (position), die Stellung;
 improving the condition of the
 poor, die Pflege der Armen
Conditional mood, used (1) in
 clauses expressing supposition,
 48, n. 9; (2) in adverbial clauses
 of time, 96, n. 11; (3) for the
 present participle after *but for*,
 55, n. 7; (4) instead of the con-
 junctive, 74, n. 16
conduct (to lead, to bring to),
 führen; to conduct out of the
 town, zur Stadt hinaus führen
 conduct (behaviour), das Be-
 tragen
confidence, das Vertrauen

confidently, muthig
confine (to limit), beschränken
conform (one's self to), sich an-
 schließen
confound: to be confounded
 (with), verwechseln (mit)
confusion, die Verwirrung
conjointly, gemeinschaftlich
Conjunctive mood, use of, 26, n.
 16; 29, n. 3
conquer, besiegen; conquered, *adj.*,
 besiegt
conqueror (victor), der Sieger.
 (*See p. 36, n. 1*)
consequence, die Folge; mighty in
 its consequences, folgenreich
consider (well), erwägen (*see p. 71,*
n. 13); I, considering however,
 da ich in Erwägung zog; consider
 (as, *expressed or understood*),
 betrachten als; ansehen als (*see p.*
85, n. 2); consider necessary,
 für nöthig halten
considerable (share), bedeutend;
 considerable (degree), hoch
consideration, die Rücksicht
consist (of), bestehen (aus)
conspicuous: to appear conspicu-
 ous, zeichnen sich besonders aus
Constantine the Great, Constantin
 der Große
constellation, das Sternbild
constraint, der Zwang
Construction, characteristics of
 German, *Int. xiv. I.*
Construction, elliptical, 35, n. 13
consume (one's life) = to pass,
 dahinbringen
contain, enthalten; (a town) con-
 taining 100 inhabitants, die 100
 Einwohner hat
contemplate (doing something),
 beabsichtigen
continent, der Continent; (world),
 die Welt
continue (to last), dauern; to con-
 tinue to walk on, weiter schreiten.
 (*See p. 37, n. 17*)
contrary, das Gegenteil; very much
 the contrary, ganz im Gegenteil;
 on the contrary, hingegen
contrast, der Gegensatz

contribute, beitragen
 contrivance (arrangement), die
 Vorrichtung
 contumacious, trotzig; most contu-
 macious, äußerst trotzig
 convenient, bequem
 conveniently, mit Bequemlichkeit
 conversation, die Unterhaltung
 convey: to take and convey
 (a prisoner to anyone), über-
 liefern
 convince, überzeugen
 cook: well-cooked, sorgfältig zu-
 bereitet
 cooperate, zusammenwirken
 copy, *vb.*, abschreiben; (to repeat),
 wiederholen
 corn, das Korn; (Indian corn),
 der Mais
 coronation, die Krönung
 corpse, die Leiche
 correct (precise), bestimmt
 corresponding (change), entsprechend
 cost, *vb.*, kosten
 Cottonian (Library), Cottonisch
 could, *see* can
 counter-march, der Contremarsch
 country, das Land; (native land),
 das Vaterland (*see p. 9, n. 39*);
 surrounding country, die Umge-
 gend; country round, die Umge-
 gend; an extent of country, eine
 Landstrecke
 couple: married couple, das Ehe-
 paar
 courage, der Muth
 courageous, muthig
 course (of his speech), der Verlauf
 court, der Hof; Court noble, der
 Höfling
 courteous, höflich
 courteously, höflich
 courtesy, feiner Anstand
 cove, die Bucht
 cover, *vb.*, bedecken
 cover (protection), der Schutz
 cradle, die Wiege; from their
 cradles, von der Wiege an
 crater, der Krater
 crawl, kriechen
 create (discontent), hervorrufen
 crest (of a hill), der Gipfel

crew: boat's crew, die Schiffsman-
 schaft
 Crimean War, der Krim-Krieg
 crisp (hair), kraus
 critical, kritisch
 cross, *vb.*, übergehen; (to cross, to
 ford a river), durchwaten
 cross-bow, die Armbrust
 cross-bowman, der Armbrustschütz
 crowd, *vb.*, (to flock towards),
 strömen
 crowd (number of people),
 die Menge; crowd of men (the
 whole of them), der ganze Haufe;
 die Männer
 crown, *sb.*, die Krone
 crowned, *adj.*, gekrönt
 cry (of a hound), das Gebell; cries
 (shouts), das Geschrei (*sing.*)
 cry out, ausrufen
 crystal, der Krytall
 cultivate (land), bauen; (a science,
 &c.), sich befleißigen
 culture, die Bildung
 curds, der Quarg; der Quark
 curiosity, die Neugier; from curi-
 osity, aus Neugier
 curious (wishful), begierig
 current, *sb.*, die Strömung
 current, *adj.*, im Umlauf
 curule, curulisch
 custody, der Gewahrsam
 custom, der Gebrauch; die Gewohn-
 heit
 customary, gebräuchlich
 cut, schneiden; (features liberally
 cut, gebildet; (nose finely) cut,
 geschnitten; to cut away (the
 ground), abtragen; to cut (down),
 umhauen; to cut up (paper, &c.),
 zerschneiden; to cut up (an ani-
 mal), zerlegen
 outlet, die Kofellette
 da, or dar, *when added to preposi-*
tions, 97, n. 2
 daily, täglich
 dance, der Tanz
 danger, die Gefahr
 Dante, Dante
 Danube, die Donau
 dare: if he dared, wenn er den
 Muth dazu hätte

dark, dunkel; (gloomy), düster
 dark (nightfall), das Dunkelwerden
 darkness, die Finsterniß
 dash away (to take flight), fort=stürzen
 Date, place of, in German, 98, n. 1
 Dative, idiomatic use of, 85, n. 15
 dawn, *sb.*, die Dämmerung
 dawn, *vb.*, grauen; as the day dawned, bei Tagesanbruch
 day, der Tag; day on which an event occurs, when not governed by a preposition is in the accusative case, e.g., the next day we went, den nächsten Tag gingen wir; all that day, den ganzen Tag; at this day (up to this day), bis auf diesen Tag; in our own days, in unserer Zeit; in the days of Charles II., unter Karl dem zweiten; day's journey, die Tagereise
 daytime: in the daytime, am Tage
 dead, *adj.*, todt; the dead (of night), *sb.*, die Stille
 deal (to treat with), unterhandeln
 deal: a good deal of, viel
 dear, theur
 dearest, *sb.* (*plur.*), die Theuersten
 death, der Tod; he is fairly frightened to death, es überfällt ihn eine wahre Todesangst; (became) a question of life and death, zur Lebensfrage
 debate, *vb.*, debattiren; (to dispute), streiten
 debate, *sb.*, die Debatte
 debated question, die Streitfrage
 decaying (fire), erlöschend
 decide, entscheiden
 declare, erklären; declare itself free, sich für frei erklären; (to testify), bezeugen
 decline (of an empire), das Sinken
 deed: in deeds of charity, in der Ausübung der Wohlthätigkeit
 deep, tief; deep (potation), stark
 defeat, *vb.*, schlagen
 defence, die Vertheidigung; to make defence (for the purpose of making a defence), zur Vertheidigung; (men) for defence, als Vertheidiger

defend (a place), vertheidigen; defend (a passage of arms), aufnehmen
 definition, die Definition
 defy, Trotz bieten
 degree, der Grad
 delicious, köstlich
 delight, *sb.*, die Freude
 delight, *vb.*, entzücken
 delivery: for delivery, zur Bestel=lung
 demagogue, der Demagoge
 demand, *sb.*, die Forderung
 demand, *vb.*, fordern
 demur, *sb.*, (hesitation), der Auf=enthalt
 department (of knowledge), das Fach
 depend (on), verlassen (auf)
 dependent, abhängig
 deportment (in public), das Benehmen
 depose (kings, &c.), entthronen
 depths of forest, das Waldesbüschel
 derive: to be derived, herkommen
 descend, absteigen
 descend from (to be derived from), herkommen von
 describe, beschreiben
 descry, erblicken
 desert, *sb.*, die Wüste
 desert, *vb.*, verlassen
 design, with the design (object), zu dem Zweck
 designate, bezeichnen
 despondency, die Verzweiflung
 destined: to be destined (to meet) sollen
 destroy, zerstören; vernichten
 detection, die Entdeckung
 deter, abhalten
 determine (to resolve), beschließen; entschließen; (to settle about), bestimmen (über); determined by (sentiment), bestimmt durch
 develop: to be developed, sich entfalten; strongly developed, stark ausgeprägt
 devote themselves, sich widmen
 devoted (addicted to), ergeben
 devotion (to a duty), die Hingebung

- devout, fromm
 diadem (of the Caesars), die Krone
 dial, das Zifferblatt
 dialect, der Dialekt
 dictatorial, dictatorisch
 die, sterben
 die's, *use of the abbreviated form*, 90, n. 18
 different, verschieden
 difficult (to do), schwer; difficult (road), schwierig
 difficulty, die Schwierigkeit; (trouble), die Mühe; (fix), die Verlegenheit
 dignified, würdevoll
 dilapidation, die Verfallung
 diligence (coach), der Kutschwagen
 dine, speisen; essen; (at noon, *expressed or understood*, zu Mittag)
 dining-room, der Speisesaal
 dinner, das Mittagsmahl
 direct, *vb.* (to drive, *understood*), fahren lassen; direct (a camel, &c.), lenken; to be directed (to be ordered), den Befehl erhalten
 direction, die Richtung; the directions which he had directed him to give = the order (Befehl) which he had given him for delivery (zur Bestimmung)
 disappear, verschwinden
 disaster, das Unheil
 discipline, *vb.*, discipliniren
 discomfiture (of an army), die Niederlage
 discontent, die Unzufriedenheit
 discover, entdecken; (to invent), erfinden; is discovered (by them *understood*, they, *and not the thing discovered, being the chief subject of the narration*), sie entdecken; is discovered (is found), man findet
 discovery, die Entdeckung
 discuss (to talk over), besprechen
 disgrace, die Schande
 disguise (to hide), verbergen; (to live) in disguise, (hidden), verbergen
 dish (earthenware), die Schüssel; (food), das Gericht; die Speise
 dismay, die Angst; (the pilot) in dismay, in seiner Angst
 dismounted, vom Pferde abgestiegen
 disordered (troops), in Unordnung gerathen
 display, die Entfaltung
 disputed (boundary), streitig; streitiggemacht
 distance, die Ferne; die Entfernung; for the distance of 15 leagues, 15 Meilen weit
 distant, fern; entfernt; very distant, sehr weit entfernt; distant only 20 miles = which lies only 20 miles distant (weit)
 distinct, verschieden
 distinctly, deutlich
 distinguish: to be distinguished (from), sich unterscheiden; easily distinguished, leicht zu erkennen
 distress, die Noth
 distressed, bedrängt
 district, der Landstrich; der District
 disturb, stören
 divide (to separate from), trennen; still hold divided sway, noch immer gemeinschaftlich beherrschen
 divisible, theilbar
 division (*mil.*), die Division
 do, *trans. vb.*, thun; to do (work), verrichten; to do (a service), leisten; (to accomplish anything), (etwas) vollbringen; to do (anything to a person), anthun; (nothing was) done = undertaken, unternommen
 do, *intrans. vb.*, (to succeed), gesingen
 docile (in temper), sanft
 docility (of temper), die Sanftheit
 doctrine, die Lehre
 dog, der Hund
 dome, die Kuppel; gigantic dome, der Riesendom
 Don John of Austria, Don Juan d'Austria
 dose, die Dosis
 doubt: no doubt, ohne Zweifel
 doubtful, zweifelhaft
 doubtless, ohne Zweifel
 dough, der Teig
 doughty, tapfer

down (the way down), hinunter;
to go down, hinunter gehen; to
bear down to the ground, zu
Boden werfen; to lay down (any-
thing), niederlegen; cut down,
umhauen; to push down (from),
herabdrängen; looking down over
the multitude, hinweg die Menge
übersehend; took us down with
him = went with us
downright (decided), entschieden
downs, das Hügelland
downy, flockicht
drag, ziehen
draw (into a fine thread), aus-
dehnen
draw back, zurückziehen
dream: he will never dream (of),
es fällt ihm nicht im Traume ein
dreamlike, traumhaft
dress, *vb.*, sich kleiden
dress (clothing), die Kleidung. (*See*
also p. 78, n. 18)
dried, *adj.*, getrocknet
drink, das Getränk
drive: to drive from (displace),
verdrängen aus; to drive (any-
one) from, austreiben; to drive
along, dahin fahren; driven (by
fears), getrieben
drizzling rain, der Nebelregen
drop (a theory), aufgeben; to drop
(on one's knees), fallen
drove, der Trieb; not a drove of
sheep, kein Trieb Schafe
drown, ertrinken
Dub: hill of Dub, der Dubhügel;
Dub ridge, der Rücken des Dub-
hügels
dubious, zweifelhaft
duchess, die Herzogin
dues, die Abgaben (*plur.*)
duke, der Herzog
dull (stupid), dumm
dun-coloured, buntelfarbig
Durham militia, die Durham'sche Miliz
during, während
dusk, die Dämmerung; die Dämmer-
stunde; at dusk, in der Dämmer-
ung; about dusk, ungefähr in der
Dämmerstunde
dust, der Staub

Dutch, *adj.*, holländisch
dwelling, eine Wohnung
Dyak, der Diak
each, jeder, jede, jedes; the skele-
ton of each (of the two), die
beiden Skelette; as each has her
own individuality = as the indi-
viduality of each (einer Jeden);
each other, einander; to each
other (mutually), sich gegenseitig;
each other's, gegenseitig
eager, begierig
ear, das Ohr
early, früh; early (poet), alt; early
(philosophers), ältest
earth, die Erde; (ground), der
Boden
earth-bank, der Damm
earthen, irden
earthquake, das Erdbeben
ease of manner, die Leichtigkeit im
Vortrag (*masc.*)
easily, leicht
east (towards the east), nach Osten
Eastern Arabia, Ostarabien (*neut.*);
Eastern Court (Roman), ost-
römischer Hof
easy, leicht; nothing so easy, nichts
leichter
eat, essen
eating-room, das Esszimmer
eccentrically-minded, excentrisch
echo: shout echoed by the Franks
without = shout in which the
Franks joined from without;
to join in (a shout), einstimmen
economy, die Sparsamkeit
edge (brink), der Rand; water's
edge, der Rand des Wassers; edge
(of a ravine), der Abhang
Edinburgh, Edinburg (*neut.*)
education, die Erziehung
Edward, Eduard
effect, *sb.*, die Wirkung; (result),
die Folge
effect, *vb.*, bewerkstelligen
effort, die Anstrengung
egg, das Ei; hard-boiled (eggs),
hartgekocht; not hard-boiled, weich-
gekocht; hard eggs and boiled
eggs, hart- und weichgekochte Eier;
scrambled eggs, Rührei

Egyptian, *sb.*, der Ägypter
 eight, acht; eight thousand; acht= tausend
 eighteen, achtzehn
 either . . . or, entweder . . . oder;
 on either side, zu beiden Seiten
 elastic, *adj.*, elastisch
 Elbe, die Elbe
 elder (of a church, of a sect), der Älteste; Elder Frederick, Ältester Friedrich
 elderess, die Älteste
 Elector of Saxony, der Churfürst von Sachsen
 electrical, elektrisch
 elegance, die Anmuth
 element, das Element; (essential condition), der Umstand; das Moment
 elephant, der Elefant
 eligible (situation), passend
 elongate, verlängern
 eloquent, beredt
 embarrassment, die Verlegenheit
 emigrant's team, das Auswanderer= gepann
 eminence (height), die Anhöhe
 eminently, außerordentlich
 emit (light), ausstrahlen
 emperor, der Kaiser
Emphasis, of Verbs, how expressed in German, 34, n. 13
 empire, das Reich
 empirical, empirisch
 employing: by employing, durch die Anwendung
 emprise, die Aufgabe
 empty, leer; (clear), frei
 enable, in den Stand setzen; möglich machen
 encamp, campiren
 enclosed (ground), umzäunt
 encompass, einschließen
 encounter (fight), der Kampf; das Gefecht
 encourage, ermutigen; ermuntern; (to promote), befördern
 end, *trans. vb.*, ein Ende machen; *intrans. vb.*, enden; as the reading of the Gospel ended, so wie das Evangelium verlesen war
 end (of a table), das untere Ende

endeavour, *vb.*, sich bestreben
 endeavour, *sb.*, das Bestreben
 endurance (of ill), das Ertragen
 endure, ertragen
 enemy, der Feind (*see p. 14, n. 5*); enemy's fire, das feindliche Feuer
 energetic, energisch; kraftvoll
 energy, die Energie
 engage (*mil.*), angreifen; auf einen Kampf einlassen; to be engaged (in battle), kämpfen; closely engaged (in business), sehr stark in Anspruch genommen; to keep actively engaged, beschäftigen; to engage one's self (to), sich binden
 engine (of war), die Maschine
 England, England (*neut.*)
 English, *adj.*, englisch
 English, *sb.*: the English, die Engländer. (*See p. 73, n. 17*)
 enjoy genießen
 ennui, die Langeweile
 enormous, ungeheuer
 enough, genug
 enrol one's self, sich aufnehmer lassen
 ensign, der Fähnrich; to make him an ensign, ihn zum Fähnrich ernennen
 enter (a room), eintreten; (through the gates), durchkommen; never, perhaps, entered (the gates), kam wohl nie durch; enter (after a struggle), gelangen (in)
 enterprise, das Unternehmen
 entertain him with a solo, ihm ein Solo vorpielen
 entertainer (the host), der Wirth
 entertainment (banquet), das Gast= mahl
 enthusiasm, der Enthusiasmus; die Begeisterung
 entirely (new), ganz; entirely (concealed), gänzlich
 entitle (help to), verhelfen
 entrance, der Eingang; (entry), der Einzug
 entrust, anvertrauen
 epithet (expression), der Ausdruck
 equal (in appearance), ähnlich
 equally, gleich

erect, *vb.*, errichten
 eruption, der Ausbruch
 es, (1) *supplies the place of the Object, Gr. Int. xx. V., and 17, n. 7*; (2) *used as grammatical subject, 81, n. 10*
 escape (by flight), *sb.*, die Flucht
 especially, besonders
 establish (one's self) on a platform, das Plateau besetzen
 estate, das Besitztum
 esteem, die Achtung
 estimate (opinion), die Meinung
 Etna, der Etna
 ever, *when written Ev., 40, n. 10*
 European, *adj.*, europäisch
 even, selbst; (than), noch; even then, schon damals; even though, und wenn; not even (a rumour), nicht einmal
 even tenor (of their lives), der ruhige Gang
 evening, der Abend; in the evening, am Abend; at six in the evening, um sechs Uhr des Abends
 evening party, die Abendgesellschaft
 event: at all events, auf alle Fälle
 eventually (ultimately), schließlich
 ever, jemals; than ever, als je (*see p. 17, n. 5*); for ever, auf immer
 every, jeder, jede, jedes; every consideration, alle Rücksichten (*plur.*); every man, ein Jeder; every one, Jeder, Jede, Jedes; every one of the sciences, sämtliche Wissenschaften; (slopes) on every side, auf jeder Seite; (beleaguered) on every side, von allen Seiten
 everybody, Jedermann
 everything, Alles
 everywhere, überall
 evidence: to be evidence of, bezeugen
 evidently, augenscheinlich
 exaltation (of sentiment), der Aufschwung
 examine, untersuchen; besichtigen; (the place) when examined, bei genauer Untersuchung

example, das Beispiel
 exceeding, *adj.* übermäßig
 exceedingly, äußerst
 excel, sich auszeichnen; excelling in = although he excelled in . . ., obgleich er sich in . . . auszeichnete
 excellent, vortrefflich; ausgezeichnet
 eccentricity, die Excentricität
 except (to the exclusion of), ausgenommen; (unless), außer
 excessive, übermäßig
 exchange one dress for another, eine Kleidung mit einer anderen vertauschen
 excitement, die Aufregung
 exclaim, ausrufen
 exclusively, ausschließlich
 excuse, *sb.*, die Entschuldigung
 execute (work), ausführen; execute (a solo), vortragen
 exemplary, exemplarisch
 exercise (bodily), die Leibesübung; (riding, walking, &c.), die Bewegung; religious exercises, die Andachtsübungen (*plur.*)
 exhausted, *adj.*, erschöpft
 exhibit (traces of), an sich tragen
 exhibition (of prowess), die Kundgebung
 existence (life), das Leben; das Dasein; (of a place), das Dasein
 existing condition (of things), der Thatbestand
 expand into, sich ausdehnen zu
 expect, erwarten
 experienced, erfahren
 expert, *adj.*, gewandt
 explain, erklären
 exploring party, die Expedition
 expose one's self (to criticism, &c.), sich bloßstellen
 express, ausdrücken; (to denote), bezeichnen; (to manifest), bezeigen
 expressive, ausdrucksvoll
 extend, sich erstrecken
 extent of country, eine Landstrecke
 externally: such, externally, was the youth, so war das Äußere des Jünglings
 extinct: become extinct, aussterben

extirpate, vernichten
 extraordinary, außerordentlich
 extravagance (poetical), die über-
 schwänglichkeit
 extremely, äußerst
 extremity: reduced to extremi-
 ties, aufs Äußerste getrieben
 exuberance (of spirit), das überge-
 fühl
 eye, das Auge; to the public eye,
 öffentlich
 eye-witness, der Augenzeuge
 face, das Gesicht; (mask), die Maske;
 (aspect), die Gestalt
 fact, die Thatfache; das Factum. (*See*
p. 48, n. 8)
 faculties, die Geisteskräfte (*plur.*)
 fail: if he fails, wenn es ihm nicht
 gelingt; he will not fail to have
 words at his command, so ist es
 gewiß, daß ihm die Worte zu Gebote
 stehen werden
 failure (of a plan), das Mißlingen;
 their failure = the failure of
 their plan; (ill-fate), das Miß-
 geschick (*see p. 32, n. 4*); failure
 (of an attempt to), der vereitelte
 Versuch
 fair (harbour), ruhig; in a fair
 way, auf gutem Wege
 fairly (properly, perfectly), voll-
 ständig; he is fairly frightened
 to death, es überfällt ihn eine
 wahre Todesangst
 fall, *sb.*, der Fall
 fall, *vb.*, fallen; to make (troops)
 fall back, zurückdrängen; to fall
 (on one knee), sich niederlassen;
 shame fall on those, Schande
 treffe diejenigen; to fall off, herab-
 fallen; to fall to (to set to), sich
 daran machen
 fallacy, der Trugschluß
 falter, flucken
 familiar, vertraut
 familiarly, vertraulich
 family, die Familie
 famous, berühmt
 fancy: may fancy himself perus-
 ing, könnte glauben, daß er lese
 far, weit; as far as (the gate), bis
 zu; far beyond (one's compre-

hension), viel zu hoch für; so far
 from being evidence, weit ent-
 fernt zu beweisen
 farm (farm-house), das Farmhaus
 farmer (tiller of the soil), der
 Landmann
 farther on, weiterhin
 fascinating, bezaubernd
 fashion, die Mode; in a fashion
 = to a certain degree (der Grad)
 fate, das Schicksal
 father, der Vater
 fatherland (original home of a
 people), das Heimathland
 fatigue, *sb.*, (that which fatigues),
 die Anstrengung
 favour, *vb.*, begünstigen
 favour, *sb.*, die Gunst; in favour
 (of), zu Gunsten
 favourable, günstig
 fears: driven by their fears, von
 Furcht (*sing.*) getrieben
 feathery, gefiedert
 feature (of a face), der Zug; play
 of features, das Mienenpiel; (de-
 tail), der Umstand
 federal, fördert
 feeble, schwach
 feed (animals, insects, &c.), füttern
 feel, fühlen (felt in, *see n. 15, p. 3*)
 feeling, das Gefühl; act of gener-
 ous feeling, die großmüthige Hand-
 lung
 fellow - feeling, kameradschaftliches
 Gefühl
 fellow-student, der Mitschüler; der
 Kollege
 female Majesty, königliche Frau
 festival, das Fest
 fetch, holen
 feud: border feud, die Grenzfehde
 feudal, feudal
 few, wenig; few (days, words, &c.),
 einige
 fibre, die Faser
 field, das Feld
 fierce, wild
 fifteen, fünfzehn
 fifteenth, fünfzehnte
 fifty, fünfzig
 fight, *sb.*, der Kampf; fight of in
 fantry, das Infanteriegefecht

fight, *vb.*, *fechten*
 figure (of a man), *die Gestalt*
 file (into a room), *sich begeben*
 final, *endlich*
 find, *finden*; find again, *wiederfinden*; find out, *entdecken*; find outside (in front of), *vorfinden*; find the way back, *den Weg wiederfinden*
 fine (hair), *fein*; dünn
 finish (one's prayers), *verrichten*
 fire, *das Feuer*
 fireside: by the fireside, *am Herde*
 firm, *fest*
 first, *adj.*, *erst*; *adv.* *erst*; *zuerst*; at first, *zuerst*; in the first place, *vor allem*; from first to last (throughout), *durchaus*
 first-come, *der Erste Beste*
 fir-wood (forest), *der Tannentwald*
 fissure, *der Spalt*
 five, *fünf*; five (o'clock), *fünf Uhr*; five hundred pounds, *fünfhundert Pfund*
 fix: (celebrity had) fixed all eyes upon him = drawn the eyes of all upon him, *die Augen Aller auf ihn gezogen*
 flame, *die Flamme*
 flank attack, *der Flankenangriff*
 flat (the plain), *die Ebene*; (insipid), *schal*
 flax plant, *der Flachs*
 flee back, *zurückfliehen*
 flesh: rosy flesh, *rosiger Teint*
 flexible, *biegsam*
 flicker about, *hin und her flackern*
 flight, *die Flucht*; (of arrows), *der Schauer*; (of steps), *die Flucht*
 float in the air, *in der Luft schweben*
 flock, *die Herde*; flocks and herds, *die Herden*
 flood (of melted butter), *der Strom*
 flour, *das Mehl*
 flower, *die Blume*
 flowery, *blumreich*
 fly: (the news) had flown, *hatte sich verbreitet*
 fodder, *das Futter*
 follow, *folgen*; to follow one to church, *einem in die Kirche folgen*

follower, *der Begleiter*
 following (next), *nächst*
 fondly: the memory of Joseph II. was long and fondly cherished, *Joseph II. stand lange in theurem Andenken*
 food, *die Nahrung*; die Speise; (the various dishes), *die Speisen (plur.)*. (*See p. 65, n. 6*)
 foot, *der Fuß*; at the foot, *am Fuß*; on foot, *zu Fuß*; underneath the foot, *unter den Füßen*
 for, *conj.*, *denn*. (*See p. 89, n. 8*)
 for, *prep.*, *für*; (in order to), *um (zu)*; (for use as), *als*; for (an hour), *während*; (on account of), *wegen*; (exchange one dress) for (another), *mit*; for (twenty miles on either side), *auf*; for any long period, *auf längere Zeit*; for (ever), *auf*; for delivery, *zur Bestellung*; for instance, *zum Beispiel*; (order) for a movement, *zu einer Bewegung*; (drop on their knees) for a prayer, *zu einem Gebet*; required for rest, *zum Ausruhen nötig*; for some foray, *zu einem Raubzug*; for (*expressing duration of time*), *see p. 59, n. 2*; continued for thirty days, *dauerte dreißig Tage*; for many hours, *viele Stunden lang*; for months together, *Monate lang*; to live for some months, *einige Monate verleben*; remained for some weeks, *blieb einige Wochen*; for a time, *einige Zeit*; without waiting for the time, *ohne die Zeit abzuwarten*; for the distance of 15 leagues, *15 Meilen weit*; to stretch for miles, *sich meilenweit erstrecken*; forgive me for what I have done, *vergebt (in addressing a king) mir, was ich gethan habe*; for my own part, *was mich betrifft*; we hope for health, *wir hoffen Gesundheit*
 foray, *der Raubzug*
 forbid, *verbieten*
 force, *die Kraft*
 force (troops), *die Truppen (plur.)*; (so great) a force, *eine Truppen-*

masse; whole of his forces, seine Gesamtmacht
 force (compel), zwingen; force (their way), erzwingen
 forced march, der Eilmarsch
 ford, die Furt
 foreboding, die Ahnung
 forefather, der Vorfater
 foreign, fremd; foreign countries (abroad), das Ausland
 foremost (of them), der Vorderste
 forest, der Wald; depths of forest, das Waldesbiddicht
 forget, vergessen
 forgive, vergeben; forgive me (*in addressing a king*), vergebt mir
 fork, die Gabel
 form, *sb.*, die Form; forms of vegetation, Pflanzenformen
 form, *vb.*, bilden; (*mil.*), sich anstellen
 formally, förmlich; to call formally upon, einen förmlichen Besuch machen
 former, früher; ehemalig
 formerly, früher
Formica fusca, die schwarzgraue Ameise; *Formica rubescens*, die röthliche Ameise
 forth: to come forth (to creep out), herauskriechen; to stand forth (forming) an oasis, eine Oase bilden
 fortified, fest; befestigt
 fortress, die Festung
 fortunately, zum Glück
 fortune, das Glück; (wealth), das Vermögen; checkered fortune, abwechselnder Erfolg
 forty, vierzig
 forward: to be forward (in pursuing) = to venture forward, sich vorwagen
 found, *vb. in fin.*, gründen
 foundation-stone, der Grundstein
 founder, der Begründer
 four, vier
 fourteenth, vierzehnte
 frame (bodily), der Körperbau
 frame (his version), *vb.*, machen
 France, Frankreich (*neut.*)
 Frankish, fränkisch

frankly, freimüthig
 fraternal, brüderlich
 Frederick, Friedrich
 free, frei; to set free, loslassen
 freezing, das Gefrieren
 French (man), der Franzose; (language), das Französische *or* das Französische
 French, *adj.*, französisch
 frequent, häufig
 frequently, oft
 fresh, frisch; (new), neu
 friend, der Freund
 friendless, freundlich
 frighten: he is fairly frightened to death, es überfällt ihn eine wahre Todesangst; to frighten away, verschrecken
 frightful, schrecklich
 from, von; aus; from (that moment), von ... an; (two miles) from the Alma, weit von der Alma entfernt; (out), aus; (Schiller's flight) from (Stuttgart), aus; (*in conjunction with verbs*), aus—; (owing to), aus; (obeys) from a sort of, aus einer Art von; from first to last = throughout, durchaus; from month to month, monatlich; judging from, zu urtheilen nach; (shone) from beneath it (*fem.*), unter derselben hervor
 from (*omitted*): from fifty to sixty, fünfzig bis sechzig
 front, die Fronte; in front of, vor; in front of (a river), dießseits
 frontier, die Grenze
 fruit, die Frucht
 fruit-tree, der Obstbaum
 fulfil: (all that remained) to be fulfilled = to be done, zu thun
 full, voll
 fully: more fully, besser
 functionary, der Beamte
 fur, when used with adjectives, 92, n. 14
 furiously, heftig
 furnish (with), versehen; (a house), einrichten
 further, weiter; entfernt; (the side) furthest from Horitz, die von

Fortz am weitesten entfernt liegt;
(longer time), länger; (more),
mehr; still further (still more),
noch mehr

further (our aims), *vb.*, fördern

fury, die Wuth

future, die Zukunft

Future Tense, English emphatic,
how rendered in German, 38,
n. 22

Gaelic, das Gälisch; old Gaelic, das
Altgälisch

gaily, fröhlich

gain (a victory), winnen

gait, der Gang

gallant (brave), tapfer

galling, lästig

Galloway men, Männer von Gal-
loway

gallows, der Galgen

game, das Spiel

gamekeeper, der Förster; der Jäger.
(See p. 26, n. 13)

gape open, aufklaffen

garden, der Garten

garlic, der Knoblauch

gate, die Thür; (of a fortress or
town), das Thor

gathering, das Sammeln

gaudy, bunt

Gaul (a native of), der Gallier

gay, heiter

gaze (vulgar), *sb.*, die Angafferei

gaze at, besehen

gegenüber, place of the prep., see
p. 61, n. 14

general, *sb.*, der General

general (universal), allgemein;
in general, im Allgemeinen; (for
the public), öffentlich; general
appearance = appearance in
general (im Allgemeinen); gener-
al staff, der Generalstab

generally, gewöhnlich; (for the
most part), meistens

generation, die Generation

generous: act of generous feeling,
die großmüthige Handlung

Genitive, (1) place of, in common
prose, 14, n. 4; (2) with proper
nouns, 3, n. 11 (a); n. 15; (3)
used to express time, 78, n. 5

Genitive, rendering of objective,
62, n. 12

Genitive, partitive, generally ren-
dered by von, 6, n. 26 (b); 87,
n. 8

genius, das Genie

gentian, der Enzian

Gentile, der Heide

gentle, mild

gentleman, der Herr; (husband),
der Ehemann

geometry, die Geometrie

German (language), das Deutsch or
das Deutsche

German, *adj.*, deutsch

Germanic, germanisch

get, bekommen; get beyond the
reach, aus dem Bereich kommen;
get off (away from a place),
davon kommen; get over (to over-
come), überwinden; to get pos-
session (*mil.*), sich bemächtigen; get
through, durchgehen; durchkom-
men; get to, erreichen; get under
arms, ins Gewehr treten

gigantic dome, der Riesendom

give, geben; (to offer), anbieten;
give (hints), machen; (to cause),
machen; gives him no regret,
macht ihm keinen Kummer; give
(attention), schenken; give (into
one's hands as a prisoner), über-
liefern; give the alarm (*military*),
zu den Waffen rufen; give thanks
again, von Neuem danken; give
up, aufgeben; give up (a prison-
er), ausliefern; give assurance
of, versichern daß

gladly, mit Freuden

glancing, *adj.*, glänzend

glass, das Glas; (the various ar-
ticles made of glass), das Glas-
geschirr

glittering, glänzend

gloomy, düster

glorious, glorreich

glory, der Ruhm

go, gehen; wollen (see p. 70, n. 16);
while (he) goes, im Gehen; (to
travel), reisen; go back, zurück-
gehen; go forth (from home),
fortwandern; go forward (to ad-

- vance), vorrücken; go from home, verreisen; go in secret, sich heimlich aufmachen; go on (to proceed), fortfahren; to go on picking up, immer auflesen; go out, ausgehen; go out (to come out from a house), heraustreten; go to (the battle-field), sich begeben auf; to set a-going, in Bewegung bringen; to be going on, stattfinden
- God, der Gott
- gold: land of gold, das Goldland
- gold, *adj.* golden
- golden, golden
- good, *sb.*, das Gute
- good, *adj.*, gut; wohl (*see p. 75, n. 4*); good deal of, viel; good supply, genug; tender, good (offices), freundschaftlich; well and good, so mag es hingehen
- good-humoured, gutgelaunt
- good-will, das Wohlwollen
- goose, die Gans
- Gospel, das Evangelium
- gossip, *vb.*, schwatzen
- Goth, der Gotthe
- govern (to influence), beeinflussen
- government, die Regierung
- governor, der Gouverneur
- gory, blutig
- grace, die Gnade; (of movement), die Grazie; (of manner), die Liebenswürdigkeit
- graceful, zierlich
- graciously, gnädig
- gradually, allmählich
- grain of musk, das Gran Moschus
- grammar, die Grammatik
- Grammar School, die Gelehrten-schule
- grand, großartig; grand (tussle), tüchtig; groß
- grand-duke, der Großherzog
- grandson, der Enkel
- grange, das Gehöft
- granite hill, der Granithügel
- grape, die Weintraube
- grass: tops of the grass, die Grasspitzen
- grassy, rasenbewachsen
- grateful, dankbar
- gratifications, der Genuß (*sing.*)
- gratify (the public interest), Genüge thun
- grave, ernst
- gravity, die Gravität
- gravy, die Sauce
- graze, weiden
- grease, das Fett
- great, groß; great (ability), bedeutend; great (lord), vornehm; great distance, weite Entfernung; great deer (*plur.*), das Hochwild (*sing.*)
- greatly, bedeutend
- Greek (*adj.*), griechisch
- green, *adj.*, grün
- green, *sb.*, das Grün
- groan, das Gestöhne
- ground, der Boden; (*mil.*) der Terrain; open ground (*mil.*), freies Feld; on the ground (for the reason), auf Grund; stand its ground, sich behaupten; to bear down to the ground, zu Boden werfen; groundless (claim), unbegründet
- group, die Gruppe
- grow, wachsen; erwachsen; grow up, erwachsen; grown (fully grown), ausgewachsen
- growth (mode of growth), das Wachsthum; (thriving), das Gedeihen
- guard (the men on guard), die Wache; guard (escort), die Wache; guards, die Garden; (the king's), die Leibwache; brigade of guards, die Garden-Brigade
- guard (a ford), bewachen
- guest, der Gast
- guidance, die Leitung
- guide, *sb.*, der Führer
- guide, *vb.*, führen
- guild, die Gilde
- gum resin, das Harz
- gun (cannon), die Kanone
- gust, der Windstoß
- Gustavus, Gustav
- haben, aux v. when omitted, *p. 12, n. 47 (e)*

habit, die Gewohnheit; (custom), der Gebrauch; die Sitte; (knack), die Fertigkeit

hair, das Haar

half, halb; half a mile, eine halbe Meile; one half (or part of the men), die Einen

half-grown, halb ausgewachsen

half-savage, halbwild

hallow, heiligen

hand, die Hand; hand of man, die Menschenhand; (wrote) with her own hand, eigenhändig; night is at hand, die Nacht rückt heran; (cross-bow) in hand, in der Hand; (omitted), on the right hand, zur Rechten; hand (of a watch, *metaphorically*), der Weiser

handle (a subject), behandeln

handsome, schön

hang back (to tarry), zögern

happen (in a certain connection), sich fügen; (at a place), sich zutragen

happy, glücklich

harass, belästigen

harbour, *sb.*, der Hafen

harbour (one's self), Zuflucht suchen; (to give shelter to), Zuflucht gewähren

hard (blow), stark

hardly, kaum

harmless harmlos

harmony, die Harmonie

harnessed, geharnischt

haste, die Eile

hasten, sich beeilen

hat, der Hut

hatch, ausheften

hate, *vb.*, hassen

hautboy-player, der Hoboist

have, *aux. vb.*, haben; sein; it might have cost him his life, es hätte ihm das Leben kosten können; had or could have run before him, war ihm vorgegangen, oder hätte ihm vorgehen können; he having (done so and so), nachdem er; as if it had (been made), als wäre es; has been taken, wurde genommen; you had better (let it alone), du thätest besser; to have to, müssen

have, *tr. vb.*, haben; (at command), stehen; have the best of the struggle, die Oberhand bekommen; have mercy, sich erbarmen; (such questionings) had they concerning it, stellten sich darüber auf; have recourse, Zuflucht nehmen

he, er

head, der Kopf; (of a table), das obere Ende; at the head (of an army, &c.), an der Spitze; to take it into one's head, sich vornehmen

headstrong, eigenwillig

health, die Gesundheit

hear, hören; I have never heard of (such and such a thing being done), ich habe nie davon gehört, daß —

hearer, der Zuhörer

hearing (the), das Gehör

heart, das Herz

heat (of an argument), der Eifer

heath, die Heide

heather, die Heide

heaven, der Himmel; (glittering guides) of heaven, am Himmelszelt

heavenly harmonies (the harmony of the spheres), die Harmonie der Sphären; heavenlier glow (of blue), tiefere Himmelsbläue

heavy, schwer

Hebrew (language), das Hebräisch

heed: to take heed of (to trouble about), sich kümmern um

height (of a man), die Größe;

heights (hills), die Hügel (*plur.*);

cluster of heights, die Berggruppe

heir, der Erbe

help (each other to the food), reicken (*see p. 27, n. 12*); (need) some help (to food) = something handed, etwas gereicht

helpless, hilflos

Henry, Heinrich

her, *poss. adj.*, ihr, ihre, ihr

herb, das Kraut

herd, die Herde

hereditary, erblich

hero: naval hero, der Seeheld
 hero-lay, das Heldenlied
 herself, selbst; sich
 hesitation (in speech), das Stottern
 hide, verbergen
 high, hoch; high (voice), laut; high
 above, hoch über; überragend;
 high altar, der Hochaltar
 highlander, der Hochländer
 Highness, Hoheit (*fem.*)
 hilarity (of the crowd), der Jubel
 hill, der Hügel
 hill of Dub, der Dubhügel
 hill-fort, die Bergfestung
 hill-side, der Hügelabhang
 himself, sich; selbst; he himself, er
 selbst; than himself, als er
 hind leg, das Hinterbein
 hint, die Andeutung; (warning), die
 Warnung
 hippopotamus, der Hippopotamus;
 das Nilpferd
 his, sein, seine; (*part of a title*),
 Se. = Seine (*see p. 39, n. 17*);
 (*when the context clearly shows*
 whose), der, die, das; slipped
 over his head, ihm über den Kopf
 gezogen; at his side, zur Seite;
 a friend of his, einer seiner
 Freunde
 historical, historisch
 history, die Geschichte
 hither, hierher
 hold, halten; (an army), festhalten;
 (a festival), begehen; hold lands
 (by feudal tenure), Güter tragen
 zu Lehen; hold sway, beherrschen
 holder (householder) der Bewoh-
 ner; all the holders, alle Be-
 wohner
 hollow, der Hohlweg
 holy, heilig
 home, die Heimath; (stopping
 place), der Aufenthaltsort
 homely (simple), einfach
 home-made wine, der Obstwein
 homestead, die Heimstätte
 hominy, Hominy
 honour, *sb.*, die Ehre
 honour (with one's presence), be-
 ehren. (*See p. 35, n. 3*)
 hope, *sb.*, die Hoffnung

hope, *vb.*, hoffen
 hopeless, hoffnungslos
 hospital, das Hospital
 hospitality, die Gastfreundschaft
 Horace, Horaz
 horn, das Horn
 hornblower, der Hornbläser
 horrible, schrecklich
 horse, das Pferd; troop of horse,
 der Trupp Reiter
 horseman, der Reiter
 host = army, das Heer
 hostile, feindlich
 hostility, die Feindschaft
 hot (dispute), heftig
 hotel, das Hotel
 hound, der Hund
 hour, die Stunde; for many hours,
 viele Stunden lang; within an
 hour, binnen einer Stunde
 house, das Haus
 how, wie
 however, *conj.*, jedoch; (still), in-
 dessen; considering, however, da
 ich in Erwägung zog
 however, *adv.*, wenn auch; how-
 ever grand (their titles), wie groß-
 artig auch; however humiliating
 it (may sound), so demüthigend
 es auch
 huge, riesig
 human, menschlich
 humble (lowly), niedrig; humble
 (forms of vegetation), unter
 humiliating, demüthigend
 hundred, hundert; hundred thou-
 sand, hunderttausend
 hunger, der Hunger; (to die) of
 hunger, vor Hunger
 hunt, *sb.*, der Jagd
 hunting, das Jagen
 husband: the King her husband,
 ihr königlicher Gemahl
 hussar, der Husar
 hyacinth, die Hyacinthe
 I, ich
 idea, die Idee
 ideal, *sb.*, das Ideal
 ideal, *adj.*, ideal
 idiom, das Idiom
 if, wenn; (*omitted*), *see p. 48, n. 9*;
 (though), ob; as if to = as

though it would, als ob es wollte;
 (in case), falls; as if (from),
 gleichsam; as if it had, als wäre es
 ill (qualified), schlecht; to bear ill
 will, übel wollen
 imagine, sich denken
 immediate (close), unmittelbar
 immediately, sofort; sogleich; (so
 soon as), so wie
 imminent, nahe bevorstehen
 impatient, ungeduldig
 impel, anspornen
 imperfect, unvollkommen
 imperial, kaiserlich
 implicit, unbedingt
 implore, anflehen
 importance, die Wichtigkeit; of im-
 portance, wichtig; of such im-
 portance, so bedeutend
 important, wichtig
 impose (an obligation), auferlegen;
 imposing (in appearance), im-
 ponirend
 impossible, unmöglich
 impression, der Eindruck
 imprisonment, die Gefangenschaft
 improve, verbessern; bereichern; as-
 siduously improve (one's abili-
 ties), durch Fleiß pflegen
 improvement, die Ausbildung
 in, in; an; auf; aus; bei, &c.; in
 1624, im Jahre 1624; (to ob-
 serve) in them, an ihnen; in the
 afternoon, am Nachmittag; in
 such a place, an einem solchen Ort;
 to take an interest in, Antheil
 nehmen an; in our island, auf
 unsrer Insel; (produced its ef-
 fect) in (minds), auf; in a man-
 ner, auf eine Weise; one (m.) in a
 troop, einer aus einem Trupp;
 (instinct discovered) in (the
 ants), bei; in (the present state),
 bei; in (a word), mit; (end) in
 (a fight), mit; in a few days,
 nach einigen Tagen; in fifty mi-
 nutes more, nach fünfzig Minu-
 ten; in the days of Charles,
 unter Karl; in the reign, unter
 der Regierung; in the meanwhile,
 unterdessen; in stature, von Ge-
 stalt; in memory of, zur Erinner-

ung an; in part, zum Theil; in
 the time, zur Zeit; in alarm,
 voll Bestürzung; in front of, vor;
 (this side of a river), diesseits;
 in public, öffentlich; in question,
 betreffend; in search of, um . . .
 aufzusuchen; in short, kurz; in
 sight, sichtbar; in silence, schwei-
 gend; in some way (under-
 stands), gewissermaßen; in the
 first place, vor allem; in the
 midst, inmitten; in which =
 where, wo; to ride in, hinein-
 reiten
 incapable, unfähig
 incognito, das Inkognito
 inconvenient, unbequem
 increase, *vb.*, zunehmen; (to ex-
 tend), erweitern; the storm in-
 creases (in violence), der Sturm
 nimmt überhand
 indescribable, unbeschreiblich
 indeed, in der That; wirklich; (to
 be sure), freilich
 indefatigable, unermüdblich
 independence, die Unabhängigkeit
 independent, unabhängig
 Indian (American), der Indianer.
 (See p. 44, n. 6)
 Indian, *adj.* indisch
 India-rubber, das Gummi Elasticum
 indicate (mark), bezeichnen
 indication (idea), der Begriff
 indifferent, gleichgültig
 individuality, die Individualität
 inductive, induktiv
 indulgent to, nachsichtig gegen
 infamy, die Schande
 infancy, die Kindheit
 infantry, die Infanterie; infantry
 reserves, die Infanteriereserve;
 fight of infantry, das Infanterie-
 gefecht
 inferior (not so good), schlechter
 infidel, der Ungläubige
Infinitive, accusative with, (1)
 how construed in German, (2)
 used with sehen, hören, &c., Gr.
 Int. xvii., III., &c.
Infinitive, preceded by *as*, and re-
 ferring to the demonstr. *so*, 4,
 n. 18.

Infinitive, preceded by *as if*, 89, n. 5

Infinitive, without *zu* after auxil. verbs of mood, 11, n. 45 (b)

inflict upon, zufügen (*dat.*)

influence, der Einfluß; die Einwirkung; (where reason) was admitted to influence, Eingang fand

inform, mittheilen

information, die Kunde; (news), die Nachricht

ingenious (clever), genial

ingenuity, der Geist

inhabitant, der Einwohner; der Bewohner; (aborigines), die Ureinwohner

inherit, erben

injure, beschädigen

injury, die Kränkung

injustice, die Ungerechtigkeit

inquire respecting, forschen nach

inspire with, einflößen (*dat.*)

instance (example), das Beispiel; for instance, zum Beispiel; (case), der Fall

instant, der Augenblick; in an instant, im Augenblick

instantly, sofort; sogleich

instead, anstatt

instinct, der Instinkt

instructive, lehrreich

intend, beabsichtigen; intended to have given, hätte geben wollen; but if the expression is intended (to), soll aber der Ausdruck

intention, die Absicht; das Vorhaben

intercept, auffangen

interest (in knowing), das Interesse; (in a person's affairs), die Theilnahme; to take an interest in, Antheil nehmen an

interesting, interessant

interlace: their shields interlaced, die Schilde zusammengehalten

into, in; to expand into, sich ausdehnen zu; to introduce into (a country), bringen nach; to sink into, sich senken; sink into (graduate into), sich entsalten zu; to make (rice) into pilaws, Pilaws daraus bereiten; to turn (one

thing) into (another), vertauschen mit

introduce (as a companion), gesellen; introduce into (a country), bringen nach

invent, erfinden

Inversions, not admissible in *dependent sentences*, 3, n. 15 (b)

inveterate(ly), eingewurzelt

invisible, unsichtbar

invitation, die Einladung

invite, einladen

involve (in an affair), verwickeln; involve (a battalion in a retreat), mitziehen (hinein)

Ireland, Irland (*neut.*)

Irish, *adj.* irisch

Irish Sea, die Irische See

iron, *adj.* eisern

irritate, aufregen

island, die Insel

Isle of Man, die Insel Man

issue (from), hervorbereiten (aus)

it, es; er; sie; der—, die—, das— selbe; (anything done, said, &c.), dies; it is true, das ist wahr; of it (*masc.*) = of the same, desselben; jealous of it, eifersüchtig darauf; it was their pride, sie waren stolz darauf; it puzzled me (*in consequence*), so zerbrach ich mir den Kopf darüber; it is, it was, &c. (*omitted*), see p. 34, n. 13; it is the slaves which determine, bestimmen die Sklaven; but it was to the sailor alone, aber erst für den Seemann; it was about dusk when he arrived = he arrived there about dusk; it is (*followed by the past part.*) man (*followed by 3rd pers. pres indic.*); it may be, man kann; it may be (*followed by past part.*) man könnte

its, sein, seine; ihr, ihre; its velocity, dessen Schnelligkeit; (*omitted*): (running) between its low banks, zwischen niedrigen Ufern

itself: the throne, itself the chair = the throne, formerly the chair; formerly, ehemals

Jack, Hans

jaw, der Kinnbacken; jaws, der
 Nachen (*sing.*); (carry) in their
 jaws, im Munde
 jealous, eifersüchtig
 jeopardy, die Gefahr
 jerks: angry jerks of the head,
 heftige Kopfbewegungen
 John, Johann
 join (to border), grenzen
 journal, das Journal
 journey, die Reise; a day's journey,
 eine Tagereise
 jousts, das Turnier
 joy, die Freude
 joyful (growth), fröhlich
 joyous, freudig
 judgment, das Urtheil
 judicial system, die Gerichtsbar-
 keit
 jump, springen
 just, *adv.* gerade; (had) just (been
 elected), soeben; just the same
 (undisturbed), ruhig
 just, *adj.*: it was the just boast
 of Schiller, Schiller war mit Recht
 stolz darauf
 keenly (debated), lebhaft
 keenness, die Schärfe
 keen-sighted, scharfsichtig
 keep, halten; keep (a garden trim),
 erhalten; keep actively engaged,
 beschäftigen; to keep from it,
 abhalten davon; keep order, Ord-
 nung halten; keep sacredly, hei-
 ligen; keep silence, stillschweigen
 kidnapper, der Menschenränder
 kill, töten; the bodies of the killed,
 die Getödeten
 killing, *sb.*, die Tödtung
 kind (of food, &c.), die Art; all
 kinds, jede Art
 kindle, anzünden; anzünden
 kindly (quickly taken root), schnell
 kindness, die Freundlichkeit; die
 Güte; to show (*understood*) kind-
 ness to the poor, den Armen
 Gutes thun
 king, der König; the King her
 husband, ihr königlicher Gemahl;
 proclaimed king, zum König aus-
 gerufen; the Books of Kings,
 die Bücher der Könige

kingdom, das Königreich; das Reich;
 das Land; (animal and veget-
 able), das Naturreich
 knead, kneten
 knee, das Knie; drop on their
 knees, auf die Kniee fallen
 knee-deep, knietief
 kneel, knien; kneel in prayer,
 betend knien
 knife, das Messer
 knight, der Ritter
 knock up (to build a hut), zusam-
 menzimmern
 knoll, der Hügel
 knot of trees, die Baumgruppe
 know, wissen; (to be acquainted
 with), kennen; who (*plur.*) knew
 the English = to whom the
 English were known, denen die
 Engländer bekannt waren; nothing
 is known, nichts ist bekannt; it is
 well known, es ist bekannt; (to
 have experienced), erleben
 knowledge, das Wissen; (science),
 die Wissenschaft; knowledge (of),
 die Erkenntniß
 Kowrgané, Kowrgané
 labour, die Arbeit
 lack: there is no lack (of), es
 fehlt nicht (an)
 lady, die Dame; (*omitted*), my lady
 Queen, meine Königin
 lance, die Lanze
 land, *sb.*, das Land; (native land),
 das Vaterland; land of gold, das
 Goldland; Land of Promise, das
 gelobte Land; lands (landed pro-
 perty), Ländereien; to hold lands
 (by feudal tenure), Güter tragen
 zu sehen; rise of land, die Er-
 höhung
 land, *vb.*, landen; ans Land
 steigen
 language, die Sprache; (*omitted*),
 (translated) into the German
 language, ins Deutsche
 large, groß; large (features), schön
 largely: very largely, in großer
 Menge
 larva, die Larve
 last, letzt; from first to last
 (throughout), durchaus

- last (to last), anhalten
 lastly, schließlich
 late, spät; late (years), letzter
 Latin, *sb.*, das Lateinisch *or* das Lateinische
 Latin, *adj.* lateinisch
 Latinise, latinisiren
 latter, der Letztere
 laugh at, sich lustig machen über
 law, das Gesetz
 lawless, zügellos
 lawyer, der Advokat
 lay, legen; lay down (anything), niederlegen; lay open (the road), frei machen
 lay (song), das Lied
 lazy, faul
 lead, führen; lead up, upwards, hinaufführen; lead behind them, mit sich führen; lead the way, vorgehen; lead (the way, as guide), zeigen
 leaf, das Blatt
 league (3 English miles), *say* die Meile (4.63 English miles) *or* die französische Meile
 learn (to come to know), erfahren
 leave, lassen; leave behind, zurücklassen; leave (a place), verlassen; to be left (to spare), übrig bleiben
 leave (permission), die Erlaubnis
 leben (life), when not used in the plural, 5, n. 25 (c)
 lecture, die Vorlesung
 lee, die Seeseite
 left, links; left (hand, *expressed or understood*), die Linke; on the left, zur Linken; links
 leg: hind leg, das Hinterbein
 Legaspi: of Legaspi, des Legaspi
 legitimate (official), officieel
 length: at length, endlich
 Lepanto, Sepanto
 less, weniger; minder
 let (land), vermieten; (land) which would let well, das sich gut vermieten ließe
 let it alone, es bleiben lassen
 letter (of the alphabet), der Buchstabe
 liberally cut (features), edel geschnitten
 liberty, die Freiheit; to set at liberty, in Freiheit setzen
 library, die Bibliothek
 licensed, autorisirt
 lie (to rest), liegen; lie at the mercy (of), sich in der Gewalt befinden; lie down, sich niederlegen
 lie, *sb.*, eine Lüge
 life, das Leben; (way of living), die Lebensweise; (biography), die Biographie; sign of life, das Lebenszeichen; (became) a question of life and death, zur Lebensfrage
 light, *sb.*, das Licht
 light (a fire), *vb.*, anzünden
 Ligurian, *sb.*, der Ligurier
 like, *adj. and adv.*, ähnlich; gleich; (as), wie; and the like, und dergleichen; to look like, aussehen wie; plant-like, pflanzenartig. (*See p. 83, n. 8*)
 like, *vb.*, mögen; to like the best, am liebsten mögen
 likely: any person likely = any person who is likely (die allensfalls möchte)
 liken, vergleichen
 limb, das Glied
 limited, *adj.*, beschränkt
 line, die Linie; (a row), eine Reihe; (the enemy's line or position), die Stellung
 lion, der Löwe
 lip, die Lippe; upper lip, die Oberlippe
 liquor (drink), das Getränk
 listen, hören
 literature, die Literatur; of literature, literarisch
 little (small), klein; (in value), gering; a little after (midnight), bald nach
 live, leben; (to dwell), wohnen; (to spend one's time), verleben; (to enjoy), sich erfreuen (*gen.*)
 Livonia, Liefland (*neut.*)
 loaf, das Brod
 lodge (of a forester), das Försterhaus

lofty, hoch
 log, das Kloß
 lone, einsam
 lonely, einsam
 long, *adj.*, lang
 long (*adv. of time*), lange; long before, lange ehe; long ago, längst; no longer a position, keine Position mehr
 look (upon, at), *vb.*, ansehen; (to view, to examine), besehen; look (towards), hinblicken; look after (to take charge of), Acht geben auf; look like, aussehn wie; looking down over the multitude, hinweg die Menge übersehend
 look, *sb.*: to wear a look, außsehen
 lord: his lord, King Edward, sein Herr und König Eduard; (master, ruler), der Beherrscher; a great lord, ein vornehmer Herr
 lose, verlieren
 loss, der Verlust
 loud, laut
 Louvain, Lüttich
 love, *sb.*, die Liebe; love of music, die Liebe zur Musik
 love, *vb.*, lieben; he would have best loved to make his appeal, er hätte am liebsten appelliren müssen
 low, niedrig
 loyal, loyal
 luck, das Glück
 lucky, glücklich
 lump, das Stück
 Lusiads, die Lusitaden
 lustrous, glänzend
 luxury (in the way of food), der Festeßisse
 maddening, *adj.*, bis zur Raserei treibend
 magician's spell, das Zauberwort
 magistrate, der Magistrat; (Roman dignitary), der Staatsbeamte
 Magna Charta, die Magna Charta
 magnificent, herrlich
 magnitude (importance), die Bedeutung
 maiden speech, eine Erstlingsrede

main road, die Hauptstraße
 maintain, nähren; (an opinion), behaupten
 majesty, die Majestät; his Majesty, Se. Majestät; your Majesty, Ew. Majestät; female Majesty, königliche Frau
 make, machen; make (nests, cells, &c.), bauen; make (savoury dishes), bereiten; make (rice) into pilaws, Pilaws daraus bereiten; make (a request to), anstellen; make (a resistance), leisten; make a choice, wählen; make appeal, appelliren; (in order) to make defence, zur Vertheidigung; make one's way (to a place), kommen; make one's way up, hinaufgehen; make prisoner, zum Gefangenen machen; make no answer, nichts antworten; make towards, eilen nach; make (troops) fall back, zurückdrängen; make use of, benutzen; first voyage that was made round the world (*omit in translating* "that was made")
 man, der Mann (*see p. 65, n. 16*); der Mensch (*see p. 3, n. 14*); (anyone), Jemand; every man, ein Jeder; old man, der Greis; two men, zwei Männer; sixty men, sechzig Mann; two hundred men, zweihundert Männer; armed men (soldiers), gewaffnete Mannschaft; his men (military), seine Leute; the men (some of them), die Einen; sufficient men (sufficiently manned), hinlängliche Mannschaft; man's estate, das Mannesalter; the hand of man, die Menschenhand
 mankind, die Menschheit
 manner, die Weise; (presence), das Wesen; ease of manner, die Leichtigkeit im Vortrag; in a manner, auf eine Weise; to answer in a manner most contumacious, äußerst trotzig antworten
 many, viele; many things (various subjects), vielerlei
 marauding, die Plünderung

- march, *sb.*, der Marsch; forced
 march, der Eilmarsch
 march, *vb.*, marschiren
 Marianne Islands, die Marianen
 mark (a trace), die Spur; mark
 (of animality), das Merkmal
 mark (to denote), bezeichnen;
 (to characterise), charakterisiren;
 (to distinguish), kennzeichnen
 marked (distinct), bestimmt
 market, der Markt, der Jahr=
 markt
 married couple, das Ehepaar
 marry, heirathen
 marsh, der Morast, der Sumpf;
 marsh of Curragh, Curragh=
 marsch
 martial, kriegerisch
 martyrdom, das Märtyrthum
 marvellous, wunderbar
 mass (church service), die Messe
 masses (of troops), Truppen
 massive (brow), gewölbt
 mast, der Mast
 master, der Herr
 mastery, die Herrschaft; to obtain
 mastery of, in Gewalt zu be=
 kommen
 materials (for baking, &c.), die
 Sachen (*plur.*)
 matter: a group, no matter of
 what cattle, eine Gruppe von
 welcher Art sie auch sei
 mauvaise honte, die Befangenheit; die
 falsche Scham
 may (to be able), können; (express=
 ing a supposition), dürfen; it
 may be (suspected), man kann;
 may be said, man kann sagen;
 may be reached (by them, *ex=
 pressed or understood*, they being
 the chief subject of the narra=
 tion), sie könnten erreichen; might
 (expressing a supposed possi=
 bility), see p. 71, n. 10; we
 might (possibly), wir würden;
 whatever it might be, was immer
 es auch sei; it might have cost
 him his life, es hätte ihm das
 Leben kosten können
 Mayflower (the ship), die Mayflower
 mazy, verwicklungen
- meal: during meals, während des
 Essens
 mean, *vb.*, meinen; (to signify),
 bedeuten
 means, das Mittel (*sing.*), or die
 Mittel (*plur.*); by no means,
 durchaus nicht
 meantime, unterdessen
 meanwhile, unterdessen; in the
 meanwhile, unterdessen
 measure, das Maß; measures
 (means), die Maßregeln (*plur.*)
 measurer, der Messer
 measuring, das Ausmessen
 meat, das Fleisch
 mechanically, mechanisch
 medicine, die Arznei
 meet (together), sich versammeln;
 (one another), zusammentref=
 fen
 melt, schmelzen
 member, das Glied
 memory, das Gedächtniß; (remem=
 brance of a person), das Anden=
 ken; in memory of, zur Erinner=
 ung an; memories = past his=
 tory, historische Vergangenheit
 mention, erwähnen
 merchant, der Kaufmann
 mercy: to lie at the mercy (of),
 sich in der Gewalt befinden
 mere, bloß
 merely, bloß
 merit, *sb.*, das Verdienst
 merit, *vb.*, verdienen
 Mesopotamia, Southern, Süd=Me=
 sopotamien
 Mesopotamian, mesopotamisch
 mess (a prepared dish), das Gericht
 messenger, der Bote
 metamorphosed (to be), sich ver=
 wandeln
 meteor, das Meteor
 microscope, das Microstopt
 Middle Ages, das Mittelalter;
 middle height, die Mittelgröße
 midnight, *sb.*, die Mitternacht
 midnight, *adj.*, mitternächtlich
 midst: in the midst, inmitten; in
 der Mitte; from the midst (rise),
 aus der Mitte
 might, see may

mighty in its consequences, folgenreich

migrate, fortziehen

migration, die Wanderung

Milan, *adj.*, Mailänder

mile, die Meile; to stretch for miles, sich meilenweit erstrecken

military, militärisch; kriegerisch; military guild, die Schützengilde

militia, die Miliz

milk, die Milch

mind, der Geist; (disposition), das Gemüth; to be the mind of most people = most people like (mögen)

mind (to trouble about), sich kümmern um

mine, mein, meine, mein

miner (gold-digger), der Goldgräber

mineral kingdom, das Mineralreich
mingle with (persons), sich anschließen; (to unite with), sich vereinigen mit

minister, der Minister; minister of peace, der Friedensbote; Minister of State, der Staatsminister

minstrel, der Minnesänger

minute, die Minute; in a few minutes, in wenigen Minuten; in fifty minutes more, nach fünfzig Minuten

mirage, die Luftspiegelung

mised (to be), sich irre leiten lassen

missile, das Wurfgeschöß

mistake, der Fehler

mistress (lady), die Dame

misuse, mißhandeln

mix, mischen; vermischen

mode of growth, das Wachsthum

model, das Muster

modern, modern; modern (history), neu; modern painters, die Maler der Neuzeit; in modern times, in neuer Zeit

modesty, die Bescheidenheit

modulate (to refine), verfeinern

Moesian, moesisch

molest, belästigen

moment, der Augenblick; der Moment; without a moment's pre-

paration, ohne irgend welche Vorbereitung

monarch, der Monarch; (to be) crowned the monarch, zum König gekrönt

Monday, der Montag; on Monday (*omit on at the beginning of a sentence when translating*)

money (treasure), der Schatz

monk, der Mönch

monotony, die Einförmigkeit

month, der Monat; month of October, der Monat Oktober; for months together, Monate lang; from month to month, monatlich

moon, der Mond

moored (in harbour), vor Anker liegen

morass, der Morast

morbidity, auf krankhafte Weise

more, mehr; one minute more, nach einer Minute; the more . . . the more, je mehr . . . desto mehr

morning, der Morgen; (dawn), der Tagesanbruch; this morning, heute Morgen; in the morning, des Morgens; morning, as it dawned, showed the place to be = as the morning dawned it was discovered that the place was

morning prayers, die Morgenandacht (*sing.*)

Moses, Moses

Mosstrooper, der Grenzräuber

most, meist (*see p. 91, n. 6*); (extremely), äußerst; most striking, am auffallendsten; for the most part, größtentheils

mother, die Mutter

motion, die Bewegung

mount or mount on (a horse), besteigen. (*See p. 39, n. 1*)

mountain, der Berg; mountains (range, group of), das Gebirge (*sing.*)

mountain air, die Bergluft

mouth, der Mund; (of a river), die Mündung

move (to retreat rapidly), fliehen

movement, die Bewegung

mow (to pass over), überfahren

much, viel; to leave much, viel

übrig lassen; (we do not love them) much, sehr; (quite), gänzlich; very much the contrary, ganz im Gegentheil
 muffled, gehüllt
 Mulacha, die Mulacha
 mutilation, die Verstümmelung
 multiply (themselves), sich vermehren
 multitude, die Menge; (of the people), das Volk
 murky, trüb
 muscular, muskulös
 music, die Musik
 musician, der Musiker
 musk, der Moschus
 mutual sufferings inflicted = the sufferings which were inflicted upon both parties (beiden Parteien zugefügt wurden)
 my, mein, meine, mein
 myself: to myself, mir selbst
 mysteriously, geheimnißvoll
Names of Materials, not used in the plural, 8, n. 36 (c)
Names, common, when used without an article, 28, n. 6
Names, proper, see *Proper Names*
 name, *sb.*, der Name; village of that name, das genannte Dorf
 name, *vb.*: (a squire) named —, Namens; to name after, benennen nach
 namely, nämlich
 napkin (table), die Serviette
 narrate, erzählen
 narrative, die Erzählung
 narrow, eng; schmal
 nation, die Nation
 national, national
 native, *sb.*, der Eingeborne
 native (hills), heimatisch; native tongue, die Muttersprache
 natural, natürlich
 naturally, von Natur
 nature, die Natur
 Nausites, die Naufiten
 naval hero, der Seeheld
 near, nah; unweit; (situated near), bei; near him (self), bei sich; near (the village), in der Nähe (des Dorfes); near (your house),

nahe bei; near (the road), nahe an; nearest (the wall), zunächst
 nearly, beinahe; (almost), fast
 neat (maid-servant), sauber; neat (dwelling), hübsch
 necessary, nöthig
 necessity, die Nothwendigkeit; there was a necessity, die Nothwendigkeit war vorhanden
 neck, der Hals
 need, *vb.*, brauchen; need I say, brauche ich zu sagen; need (some help to food), etwas gereicht haben wollen; must needs, müssen
 neigh, *sb.*, das Wiehern
 neighbour, Nachbar, —in
 neighbourhood, die Gegend
 neighbouring, benachbart
 nerve, der Nerv or die Nerve
 nervous, nervös
 nervousness, die Ängstlichkeit
 nest, das Nest
 Netherlands, die Niederlande
 Neustria, Neustrien
 never, nie; he will never dream (of), es fällt ihm nicht im Traume ein
 new, neu
 new (the), das Neue
 new-fashioned, neu-modisch
 New America, Neu-Amerika
 New England colony, die Kolonie in Neu-England
 news, die Nachricht
 next (*when rendered by* folgend *and when by* nächst, see p. 68, n. 12); next day, den folgenden Tag
 night, die Nacht; by night, zur Nachtzeit, in der Nacht; (night-fall), der Abend
 night (foray), nächtlich
 nine, neun
 Nineveh, Nineveh
 no, *adj.*, kein; to make no answer, nichts antworten; no doubt, ohne Zweifel; a group, no matter of what cattle, eine Gruppe von welcher Art sie auch sei; by no means, durchaus nicht; no one, Keiner, Keine, Kein; Niemand; no self-esteem could disguise

= the best opinion of ourselves
could not disguise

no, *adv.*, nein; no longer, nicht
länger; no longer a position,
keine Position mehr

noble: Court noble, der Höflichling

nobody, Niemand

noise, der Lärm

nominal, nominell

nook, der Winkel

noon, der Mittag; at noon, um die
Mittagsstunde

noose, die Schlinge

nor (*preceded by neither*), noch;
(*when not preceded by neither*),
auch nicht. (*See p. 42, n. 7*)

North, der Norden; (towards the
north), nach Norden

Northumberland, Northumberland

north-west, nordwestlich; 15 miles
to the north-west (of it), 15

Meilen nordwestlich (davon) entfernt

nose, die Nase

not, nicht; not any, kein; not a
tree, kein Baum; not a word (is
spoken), kein Wort; (it) could
not but, mußte natürlich; that he
was not dealing with a mes-
senger, daß er mit seinem Boten
unterhandle; not far (from the
shrine), unweit (des Schreines);
not to woman or child, weder
einer Frau noch einem Kind

notable, merkwürdig

nothing, nichts; nothing equal to
it, nie was Ähnliches

Nouns, plural of, ending in *ium*,
91, n. 14

Nouns, Abstract, (1) used with
def. article, 1, n. 1; 8, n. 35 (a);
(2) used in the singular only,
12, n. 47 (c)

Nouns, used in the singular only,
(1) when denoting unlimited
plurality, 6, n. 28; (2) when
used as terms of weight, mea-
sure, or number, 7, n. 32 (d)

Nouns, collective, generally re-
quire the verb and pronoun in
the singular only, 72, n. 3

Nouns, compound, see *Substan-
tives*

novice, der Neuling

now, jetzt; nun; (then), dann

number (of troops), eine Masse;
a great number of, eine große
Menge

Numidian, *sb.*, der Numidier

o'clock: four o'clock, vier Uhr

oar, das Ruder

oath: my oath is to you (the
king), Euch habe ich meinen Eid
geleistet

obeisance: to bend in obeisance,
sich tief verneigen

obey, gehorchen; obey (as guide),
(als ihrem Führer) folgen

object (purpose), die Absicht; der
Zweck; the object was, dies hatte
zum Zweck

Object (place of the), supplied by
es, Gr. Int. xx. V.

obligation, die Verpflichtung

oblige (compel), zwingen; (to make
necessary), nöthigen; to be ob-
liged, müssen

obliterate, vertilgen

obscure (unobserved), unbeachtet

observe (to perceive), wahrnehmen;
(to make a remark), bemerken;
(notice), bemerken; sich merken

observer, der Beobachter

obtain, bekommen; erlangen; obtain
(the name), erhalten; cannot be
obtained, ist nicht zu haben; that
obtained for him, durch welchen
(Umstand) er erhielt

occasion (opportunity), die Gele-
genheit; (cause for), die Veran-
lassung

occasion (to cause), verursachen;
veranlassen

occasional: an occasional quarrel
= occasionally (gelegentlich) a
quarrel

occasionally, gelegentlich; dann und
wann

occupation, die Beschäftigung

occupy (*mil.*), besetzen; occupied
(in thought), bedacht

occur, vorkommen; (to happen),
geschehen

of, von; aus; an; auf, &c.; allure
it out of the path, es vom Wege

ablöden; food consists of (aus); points of steel, Spitzen aus Stahl; (what has become) of his rider, aus seinem Reiter; (remind me) of those, an die; want of practice, der Mangel an Übung; there is no lack of, es fehlt nicht an; (glittering guides) of heaven, am Himmelszelt; in memory of, zur Erinnerung an; (battle) of (*followed by the name of a place*), bei; (*followed by the name of a river, mountain, &c.*), an; e.g. die Schlacht bei Leipzig, die Schlacht an der Alma; an anecdote of, eine Anekdote in Bezug auf; jealous of it, eifersüchtig darauf; out of his grace, in seiner Gnade; (the greatest) of (the Greeks), unter; of style, über den Stil (Styl); to take heed of (to trouble about), sich kümmern um; of hunger, vor Hunger; (love) of music, zur Musik; (union) of (the Roman and the Teuton), zwischen; of it (*masc.*) = of the same, desselben; by way of, als; to rid (one's self) of (anything), abschütteln; (at the moment) of reaching, wo er erreichte; I have never heard of (such and such a thing being done), ich habe nie davon gehört, daß —

of (*omitted*): the town of Drumble, die Stadt Drumble; bit of land, das Stück Land; name of Moses, der Name Moses; (the more) it feels of pleasure, fühlt es Freude; a flight of steps, eine Flucht Stufen; troop of lions, Trupp Löwen; regiment of volunteers, Regiment Freiwilliger

of, *not transl.* (1) *after the common names*, Insel, Land, Stadt, Königreich, &c., 5, n. 24 (a); (2) *after names of number, weight, or measure*, 4, n. 20, and n. 21 (a)

of, (1) before names of materials of which a thing is made, 1, n. 3; (2) before names of places and countries, 9, n. 40

(c); (3) after the word 'battle,' 49, n. 1; (4) as partitive genitive, 87, n. 8

off: to fall off, herabfallen; to throw off (a rider), abwerfen

offence (fault), das Vergehen

offer, sb., das Anerbieten

offer (to do anything), sich er-bieten

office (official position), das Amt; offices (kind help), die Dienste (*plur.*)

officer, der Offizier (*see p. 74, n. 14*); commanding officer, der Commandant

often, oft

oil, das Öl

old, alt; old man, der Greis

old (the, and the new), das Alte

olfactory nerve, der Geruchsnerv or die Geruchsnerve

on, an; auf; bei; zu, &c.; on the railroad, an der Eisenbahn; (hand)

on the (dial of a watch, &c.),

am; on (the way), auf; on

paper, auf dem Papier; an enemy

on the watch, ein Feind, der auf

die Gelegenheit lauerte; straight

on, gerade aus; on the side of

(a river), bei; on (his return),

bei; on (this occasion), bei;

(taken root) on, in; on their

roots (stand), mit den Wurzeln;

reflecting on, nachdenken über;

to be in close attendance on

him, sich stets um ihn befinden;

on every side, von allen Seiten;

dependent on, abhängig von; on

either side, zu beiden Seiten; on

foot, zu Fuß; on the right, zur

Rechten; on account (of), wegen;

on the contrary, hingegen; on

the left, links; on their part,

ihrerseits; farther on, weiterhin;

to continue to walk on, weiter

schreiten

on (*omitted*): on the 2nd

April, den 2ten April; on Monday

(omit on at the beginning of a sentence in such cases when translating)

once, einmal; at once, sofort; all at once (suddenly), plötzlich

one, ein, eine, ein; a good one (*masc.*), ein guter; no one, Niemand; Keiner, Keine, Kein; every one, Jeder, Jede, Jedes; any one, Jemand; one of them, einer derselben; one by one, je einer; with one (a person), mit Jemand; with one hand, mit der einen Hand; a thousand to one, tausend gegen eins; a rule, but one that (is neglected), eine Regel, die aber —

one, *used after an adjective, not expressed in German, see p. 19, n. 10*

one (*omitted*): one hundred warriors, hundert Krieger

onion, die Zwiebel

only, nur; (merely), bloß; (had been) only a few months, erst einige Monate

only, *adj.*, einzig

onwards: to pace onwards, weiter-schreiten

open, *adj.*, offen; (clear), frei

open, *vb.*, öffnen; an abyss

opened, ein Abgrund sich öffnete;

a valley opening on to the sea,

ein Thal das der See gegenüber lag;

open one's lips, sprechen

operate as but a slight check upon,

nur geringen Einhalt thun

opiate, das Opium

opinion, die Meinung

opportunity, die Gelegenheit

oppose, gegenüberstehen

opposite, jenseitig; entgegengesetzt; of the opposite kind, des Gegentheils

opposition: an attitude of opposition to, eine feindliche Stellung gegen; without opposition, ungehindert

oppression, die Unterdrückung

or, oder; forty or fifty, vierzig bis fünfzig

orator, der Redner

order, *vb.*, den Befehl geben; to order to advance, vorrücken lassen

order, *sb.* (command), der Be-

fehl; by order, to the order (of), auf Befehl

order (in order), die Ordnung; to put all in the best order, Alles aufs Beste zusammenstellen

order (of chivalry), der Orden
orderly (soldier-servant), die Ordnung

ordinance, die Verordnung

organist, der Organist

organize, organisiren

origin, der Ursprung

original: an original Magna Charta, ein Original der Magna Charta

originally, ursprünglich

other, ander; each other, einander;

to each other (mutually), sich

gegenseitig; somewhere or other,

an dem einen oder dem anderen Ort

otherwise, sonst

ought: no one ought, Niemand sollte

our, unser, unsere, unser; according to our strength, nach eigenen Kräften

ourselves: as best pleases ourselves, wie es uns am besten gefällt

out, aus; out of = from, von;

allure it out of the path, es vom

Wege ablocken; to conduct out of

the town, zur Stadt hinaus führen;

out of his grace, in seiner Gnade;

come out (from under), hervor-

kommen; set out (on a journey)

sich aufmachen

outlaw, der Geächtete

outside (in front of), vor

over, über; over (a desert), durch;

looking over, übersehend; (to

take an oath) over (a corpse),

an; to tower over, emporragen;

to watch over, bewachen

overboard, über Bord

overcast, trüb

overflowed with (crowded with), gedrängt voll von

overhead, über dem Haupte

overpassed, zurückgelegt

overpast, vorbei; (till the fury) was (should be) overpast, sich gelegt hätte

owe, verdanken; owing (to), in Folge

own, eigen; busy with his own affairs (*i.e.* eating and drinking), mit sich selbst beschäftigt; with her own hand (wrote), eigenhändig; for my own part, was mich betrifft; tell their own tale, für sich selbst sprechen; as each has her own individuality = as the individuality of each

own (*omitted*): his own education, seine Erziehung; of my own age, von meinem Alter; in our own days, in unserer Zeit

pace onwards, weitererschreiten

Pacific Ocean, der Stille Ocean

pain, der Schmerz

paint, malen

painting (the), das Gemälde

palace, der Palast

palliation, die Erleichterung

paper, das Papier; on paper, auf dem Papier

paralyse, lähmen

parent plant, die Mutterpflanze

parish, das Kirchspiel

park, der Park

parliament, das Parlament

part, der Theil; in part, zum Theil;

for the most part, größtentheils;

for my own part, was mich betrifft; on their part, ihrerseits

part (*referring to a hill-side*), die Seite

partake: (a sheep), of which they partake, an dessen Genuß sie Theil nehmen

Participial Constructions, (1) changed into a regular clause with a conjunction indicating time; (2) changed into a relative clause; (3) changed into a regular sentence, introduced by *da*; (4) changed into attributive adjectives; (5) turned by finite verbs and connected by *und*; (6) rendered by adverbial expressions; (7) when used also in German, and how expressed in common prose, *Introd. xv., &c., II. a—g*; (8) implying con-

cession, 48, n. 1; (9) introduced by *ohne daß*, 88, n. 4

Participial Constructions, English passive, expressed by the supine in the active form, 45, n. 20

Participle, present, implying concession, how turned, 43, n. 1

particular, besonder

partly, theils; theilweise

party, die Partei; evening party, die Abendgesellschaft; exploring party, die Expedition; (of soldiers), die Truppe

pass, gehen; (to carry from one to the other), bringen; pass (the surf), durchschiffen; and (they) passing the surf, indem sie die Brandung durchschiffen; pass for, gelten; pass on (to drive along), dahin fahren; pass over the killed and the wounded, über die Getödteten und Verwundeten dahin-schreiten; pass through, durchgehen; passiren; passing through (the streets) and back again, durch (die Straßen) hin und zurückgehen; (many days) passed, vergingen; words passed = words were addressed to (gerichtet an)

pass (road), der Paß

passage (in a book), die Stelle; passage of arms (between knights), der Ritterkampf

passion, die Leidenschaft; (propensity), der Trieb

Passive Voice, (1) use of, 1, n. 4 (b); changed into the active voice, 2, n. 8; (2) changed into Reflective form, 10, n. 41 (b); (3) used impersonally, 5, n. 22 (b); (4) rendered by *man*, 79, n. 8

past (above the altar), über pasture, der Weideplatz or die Weide-plätze (*plur.*); country of pastures, wiesenreiches Land

patches of wood (trees), die zerstreut liegenden Gehölze (*plur.*)

path, der Pfad; der Weg

pathway, der Pfad

patience, die Geduld

patient, geduldig

patiently, geduldig
 patriarchal, patriarchalisch
 patrician, der Patricier
 patron (saint), der Schutzheilige
 pay attention (to), darauf achten
 peace, der Friede; minister of
 peace, der Friedensbote; time of
 peace, Friedenszeiten (*plur.*)
 peaceful, friedlich
 peace-loving, friedliebend
 peach, der Pfirsich
 peasant, der Bauer
 peasantry, die Bauern (*plur.*)
 peat digger, der Torfgräber
 peculiar, eigenthümlich; (*special*),
 besonder
 pedant, der Pedant
 penalty, die Strafe
 people (persons in general), die
 Leute; (the commonalty), das
 Volk (*see p. 41, n. 11*); (*men*),
 die Menschen
 peppery (words), scharf
 perceive (notice), bemerken
 perfect, vollständig; (*precise*), ge-
 nau; (to be) perfect in, vollständig
 ausgebildet; perfect (itself or
 one's self), sich ausbilden
 perfectly, vollständig; vollkommen
 perform (a dance), aufführen
 performer on the violin, der Violin-
 spieler
 perhaps, vielleicht; never, perhaps,
 entered (the gates), kam wohl
 nie durch
 period, die Zeit; die Periode; for
 any long period, auf längere
 Zeit
 periodical (publication), die Zeit-
 schrift
 perish (to die), sterben
 permanent, permanently, bleibend
 permit, gestatten
 persist, bestehen darauf
 person, die Person; (*anyone*), Je-
 mand
 personage, die Person
 personal, persönlich
 peruse, lesen
 phenomenon, das Phänomen
 Philippine Islands, die Philippinen
 philosopher, der Philosoph

physic, die Arznei
 physiology, die Physiologie
 phytology, die Phytologie
 pick up, auflesen; (to find, and
 take possession of), aufgreifen
 picture (of a person), das Portrait
 pie (fruit pie), die
 piece, das Stück; piece of land,
 das Stück Land; flowery piece
 (of land), blumreicher Boden
 pilaws, Pilaws
 pile up, aufhäufen
 pilgrim, der Pilger
 pillow, das Kopfkissen
 pilot, der Lotse
 pitch (highest pitch of indigna-
 tion), der Grad
 pity: and it would be a pity, und
 das wäre Schade
 place (locality), der Ort; (to put
 a thing), der Platz; in the place
 where, an der Stelle wo; in the
 first place, vor allem
 place, *vb.*, setzen; to place (in
 prison), unterbringen; to be
 placed, stehen; sich befinden; to
 take place, stattfinden; place be-
 fore, vorstellen; place (upon),
 legen; place upon (the head),
 aufsetzen; placing themselves in
 procession, indem sie eine Proceß-
 sion bildeten
 plain, die Ebene
 plain (rule), sichtlich
 plan, der Plan; plan of attack, der
 Angriffsplan
 plane (*geom.*), die Ebene
 planet, der Planet
 plank, das Brett
 plant, die Pflanze; parent plant,
 die Mutterpflanze
 planted (ground), bebaut
 plant-like, pflanzenartig
 plate, der Teller
 plateau, das Plateau
 platter, die Schüssel
 plead a cause, eine Sache führen
 pleasant, angenehm
 please: if he pleases, wenn es
 ihm so gefällt; to be graciously
 pleased (to), sich gnädig herab-
 lassen (*zu*)

pleasure, die Freude
 pledge (any one's health), trinken
 plentiful (provinces), geeignet
 plenty (of the food), eine Menge
 ploughed, gepflügten
 plougher, der Pflüger
 pluckily, muthig
 plunder: without stopping to
 plunder, ohne sich mit Plündern
 aufzuhalten
 plunge, sich stürzen; plunge through
 (wade through), durchwaten
 poem, das Gedicht
 poet, der Dichter
 poetry (the art), die Poesie
 point, der Punkt; (of a weapon),
 die Spitze; (subject), das Ding
 policy (tactics), die Strategik
 poison, das Gift
 polish, *vb.*, poliren
 politeness, die Höflichkeit
 politician (statesman), der Staats-
 mann
 politics: of politics, politisch
 pony, das Ponym
 poor (the), die Armen
 poor, *adj.*, arm
 Pope, der Papst
 popinjay, der Vogel
 popular tradition, die Volksfage; to
 hold sway in popular tradition,
 das Reich der Volksfage beherr-
 schen
 population, die Bevölkerung
 port (haven), der Hafen
 portrait, das Porträt
 possess, besitzen
 possession, der Besitz; in posses-
 sion, im Besitz; to get possession
 (in war), sich bemächtigen
 possible, möglich
 post (to post a sentinel), postiren
 post-horses (special), die Extrapost
 postilion, der Postillon
 potation (draught), der Zug
 potato, die Kartoffel
 pound, das Pfund; fifty pounds,
 fünfzig Pfund
 pour, gießen
 power (force), die Kraft
 practical, praktisch
 practice, die Übung

practise (to carry into practice),
 ausüben
 prairie, die Prairie
 prairie breeze, der Prairiewind;
 prairie chicken, amerikanisches
 Felschuhn; prairie rose, die
 Prairierose; prairie sea, das
 Prairiemeer; prairie soil, der
 Prairieboden; prairie stream, der
 Prairiestrom
 prayer, das Gebet; morning pray-
 ers, die Morgenandacht (*sing.*)
 preach, predigen
 precede, vorangehen
 precious, kostbar
 precipitous, steil
 prefer, vorziehen
 Prefixes, inseparable, advantages
 of, *p.* 35, *n.* 3
 premeditate: carefully premedi-
 tated, planmäßig vorbereitet
 preparation, die Vorbereitung
 prepare, bereiten
 Prepositions, (1) joined to the de-
 monstrative *da*, or *dar*, 97, *n.* 2;
 (2) two —, used to express di-
 rection, 23, *n.* 12
 presence, die Gegenwart; (of mind),
 die Geistesgegenwart; (personal ap-
 pearance), persönliche Erscheinung;
 in the presence of John, in Ge-
 genwart Johannis
 present, *adj.*, gegenwärtig; present
 (name), jetzt; present time (at
 present), jetzt; present on this
 occasion, bei dieser Gelegenheit zu-
 gegen
 present (to show) one's self,
 sich zeigen; present (a stick to,
 at), vorbehalten
 preserve, bewahren; aufbewahren;
 preserved (well), gut erhalten;
 preserved by tradition, durch
 Tradition auf uns gekommen
 press upon (to crowd upon), ein-
 bringen auf
 pressing, *adj.*, bringend
 pretend, sich stellen als ob; (assert),
 behaupten
 pretty (strongly developed), ziem-
 lich
 prevent, verhindern

previous (occasions), früher
 price, der Preis
 pride: it was their pride, sie waren stolz darauf
 prince, der Fürst; Prince (Napoleon), Prinz. (*See also p. 80, n. 13*)
 princely, fürstlich
 principal thoroughfare, die Hauptstraße
 principally, vorzüglich
 principle, der Grund
 prison, das Gefängniß
 prisoner, der Gefangene; to make prisoner, zum Gefangenen machen; to take prisoner, gefangennehmen
 private conversation, die Privatunterhaltung
 probability, die Wahrscheinlichkeit
 proceed, fortfahren; proceed (towards), sich begeben (zu)
 proceedings (of people), Thun und Lassen
 process (proceeding), das Verfahren
 procession, die Procession
 proclaim king, zum König ausrufen
 produce (of the earth), das Erzeugniß
 produce (to show), zeigen; (bring forward), vorbringen; produce (an effect), hervorbringen
 profession (of a creed), das Bekenntniß
 professional or other office, irgend ein Beruf oder Amt
 profile, das Profil
 profound, tief
 progress, der Fortschritt
 promise: Land of Promise, das gelobte Land
 promising, *adj.*, vielversprechend
 promotion, die Beförderung
Pronoun, possessive, repetition of, 53, n. 5
Pronoun, relative, (1) not omitted in German, 5, n. 23; (2) when to use *der*, *die*, *das*, for *welcher*, &c., 68, n. 10
 pronounce, aussprechen
 pronunciation, die Aussprache
 proper, eigentlich
Proper Names, declension of fo-

reign, (1) ending in a sibilant, 3, n. 15 (a); 9, n. 40 (b); 54, n. 7; (2) not ending in a sibilant, 9, n. 40 (b)
Proper Names, place of, used in the genitive, 3, n. 11 (a)
Proper Names of Countries, preceded by adjectives, 66, n. 14
 proportion (number), die Anzahl
 proportioned: boldly proportioned, in kühnen Proportionen
 prose, die Prosa
 prospect, die Aussicht
 protection, der Schutz
 provided (that), wenn nur
 province (country), das Land
 provisions (*plur.*), die Vorräthe (*plur.*)
 prudently, vorsichtiger Weise
 Prussian, *adj.*, preussisch
 public, öffentlich; in public, öffentlich; public gaze (vulgar), die allgemeine Augafferei
 publicly, öffentlich
 pump-room, die Trinthalle
 punishment, die Strafe
 pupa, die Puppe
 pupil (of the eye), die Pupille. (*See p. 42, n. 6*)
 purchase, *vb.*, kaufen
 purely (ideal), rein
 purse, die Börse
 pursuit, die Verfolgung
 push down (from), herabdrängen
 put a ball (from a gun) through his head, ihm eine Kugel durch den Kopf jagen; put all in the best order, Alles aufs Beste zusammenstellen; put all to rights, Alles in Ordnung bringen; put in action, thatsächlich ausführen; he was put under a week's arrest, ihm wurde eine Woche Arrest auferlegt
 puzzle (one's self), den Kopf darüber zerbrechen
 quadrillion, die Quadrillion
 quadruped, der Vierfüßler
 qualify: to be qualified (suited to), sich eignen (dazu)
 quality, die Eigenschaft; rice of an inferior quality, eine schlechtere Art Reis

quantity of light, die Lichtmasse
 quarrel, *sb.*, der Zank
 quarter (of a town), der Stadttheil
 quarter (troops in a town),
 einquartieren; (in a position),
 stationiren
 queen, die Königin
 question, die Frage; debated ques-
 tion, die Streitfrage; (became) a
 question of life and death, zur
 Lebensfrage; (subject) in ques-
 tion, betreffend
 questioning, *sb.*, Fragen (*plur.*)
 quickly, rasch
 quiet, ruhig; quiet (means), fried-
 lich
 quietly, ruhig
 quite, ganz; to be quite sufficient,
 vollständig ausreichen; quite as
 (promising), ebenso
 race (of man), die Rasse
 rage, *vb.*, wüthen
 railings, die Gitter
 railroad, die Eisenbahn
 rain, der Regen
 raising: by raising (earth-banks,
 &c.), durch die Errichtung
 rally, sich versammeln
 ranged in a line, in einer Reihe auf-
 gestellt
 rank, der Rang; ranks (of the
 troops), die Reihen
 rapidly, rasch
 rare, selten
 rarely, selten
 rather, lieber; rather above, etwas
 über
 ravine, der Hohlweg
 reach (a place), erreichen; the road
 by which the place was reached,
 der Weg, welcher nach dem Orte
 führte
 reach (out of any one's), der
 Bereich
 read, lesen
 reader, der Leser
 reading: as the reading of the
 Gospel ended, so wie das Evan-
 gelium verlesen war
 ready, bereit; (prompt), rasch; ready
 to, im Begriff zu; (to be) the
 more ready (to), um so mehr

real (genuine), wahrhaft
 really, wirklich; really affords, in
 Wirklichkeit darthut
 realm, das Reich
 reason, die Vernunft; (cause), die
 Ursache; reason (for), der Grund
 reasonably, mit Grund
 reasoning (sequence of thought),
 der Gedankengang
 receipt (of dues), die Einnahme
 receive, erhalten; (a person), emp-
 fangen; (doctrines), annehmen;
 (hospitality), genießen
 recite, herfagen
 reckon, *intrans.*, rechnen; *trans.*,
 berechnen
 recollection, die Erinnerung; (of
 the points in an argument),
 die Fassung
 recommence, von Neuem anfangen
 recommend: his character recom-
 mended him to the esteem =
 he won, through his character,
 the esteem (to win, sich er-
 werben)
 record, *sb.*, (portrayal), die Schild-
 erung
 record (as a trait), *vb.*, anführen
 recourse: to have recourse, Zu-
 flucht nehmen
 recover one's self, sich sammeln
 recreation, die Zerstreuung
 red-cabbage, der rothe Kohl
 redoubt, die Redoute
 red-shirted miners, die Goldgräber
 mit ihren rothen Hemden
 reduced to extremities, aufs Äußer-
 ste getrieben
 reeds (*plur.*), das Schilf (*sing.*)
 refer to (a person for an opinion),
 befragen
 referee, der Schiedsrichter
 reflect, zurückwerfen; (think), sich
 überlegen; nachdenken; reflect on
 (to blame), tadeln; some pas-
 sages reflecting on, einige Stellen
 gegen
 Reformation (the), die Reforma-
 tion
 refuge, die Zuflucht
 refuse, sich weigern
 regard, *vb.*, ansehen

regiment, das Regiment; regiment of volunteers, Regiment Freiwilliger
 region, die Gegend
 regret, der Kummer
 regulate, reguliren
 reign, die Regierung; in the reign, unter der Regierung
 reign, *vb.*, regieren; herrschen
 relate, erzählen; is related by Voltaire, Voltaire erzählt; (to report), mittheilen
 relations (between nations), die Verhältnisse (*plur.*)
 relative (relation), der Verwandte
 release, befreien
 relief: (lances) stood in relief, stark abstaßen
 religious, religiös; religious exercise, die Andachtsübung
 remain, bleiben; all that remained, Alles was übrig blieb
 remarkable, merkwürdig
 remember, sich erinnern
 remind (one of), erinnern (an)
 remote, entfernt
 removed (distant from), entfernt
 remuneration, die Belohnung
 renowned, berühmte
 rent, die Miete; der Miethzins
 reoccupy, Besitz wiedernehmen
 repast (the time for), die Mahlzeit
 repeat, wiederholen
 reply (to a person), antworten; erwidern
 report, *sb.*, der Bericht
 report (to anyone), mittheilen
 represent (to show), bezeichnen; the advance, represented by = the advance as it was represented by
 representation (performance), die Aufführung; (on paper), die Figur
 republic, die Republik
 reputation, der Ruf
 require (to need), bedürfen (*governs gen.*); to be required, nöthig sein; required for, nöthig zu; (materials) as required, wie sie gebraucht werden
 research, die Forschung

resembling, *adj.*, ähnlich
 reserve: infantry reserves, die Infanteriereserve
 residence (of a private individual), die Wohnung. (*See p. 95, n. 5*)
 resin, das Harz
 resistance, der Widerstand
 resolve, beschließen
 respect, die Achtung; in this respect, in dieser Hinsicht
 responsibility, die Verantwortlichkeit
 rest, *vb.*, ruhen
 rest, *sb.*, das Ausruhen
 rest (of them), die übrigen; (everything else), alles Andere
 restore, wiederherstellen
 result, die Folge
 resume (their rounds), wieder-machen
 retain, behalten
 retake (by conquest), zurückerobern
 retaliation (reprisals), die Repressalien (*plur.*)
 retire (from danger), flüchten
 retreat, *sb.*, der Rückzug; movement of retreat, die rückgängige Bewegung
 retreat, *vb.*, sich zurückziehen
 retreating, *adj.*, (flying), fliehend
 return, *sb.*, die Rückkehr
 return, *vb.*, zurückkehren; (swing back), zurückschnellen; return home, heimkehren, nach Hause zurückkehren; every article is returned to its place, jedes Stück befindet sich wieder in seinem Platz; to be returned to Parliament, ins Parlament gewählt werden
 reveal, entdecken
 revelation, die Enthüllung
 revenge: vow of revenge, das Rachgelübde
 reverence, die Verehrung
 reverential tradition = traditional
 reverence, traditionelle Ehrfurcht
 Rhine, der Rhein
 rice, der Reis
 rich, reich; (soil), üppig
 riches (treasures), Schätze (*masc. plur.*)
 rid (one's self) of (anything) abschütteln

ride, *vb.*, reiten; as he rode along (he), als beim Dahinreiten; ride away, fortreiten; to ride in, hineinreiten; ride off, davonreiten; ride out (to ride forth), fortreiten

rider, der Reiter

ridge, der Rücken

right, *adj.*, recht; right (hand, *expressed or understood*), die Rechte; on the right, zur Rechten; rechts; to be right, Recht haben; put all to rights, Alles in Ordnung bringen

rigorous, streng

ring (resound), erschallen

ringing (the), das Geklirr

ripe, *adj.*, reif; *vb.*, reifen

rise of land, die Erhöhung; (of a Republic), die Entstehung

rise, *vb.*, aufstehen; (from a seat), sich erheben; (from the midst), emporragen; (a sound) rose, herausschall; rise into (bold hills), übergehen in; rising tier above tier, in aufsteigenden Reihen; rising and falling (waves), auf- und niederwogend

rising (of sun, stars, &c.), der Aufgang

risk (danger), die Gefahr

river, der Fluß; river side, das Ufer

Rivers, names of, gender of, p. 82, n. 1

road, der Weg; road, die Straße; main road, die Hauptstraße; ten mile of road, die zehn Meilen Weges

roar out (a groan), ausstoßen

roast (roasted), *adj.*, gebraten

rock, der Fels; = rocks, Felsen

rocky, felsig; Rocky Mountains, das Felsengebirge

roll out (dough), austrollen

Roman, *sb.*, der Römer; *adj.*, römisch

Roman Catholic, *adj.*, katholisch

romantic, romantisch

Rome, Rom; at Rome, in Rom

room, das Zimmer; (space), der Raum; der Platz

root, die Wurzel

rope (tow-rope), das Tau

rose, die Rose; prairie rose, die Prairierose; Roses (Lancaster and York), die Rosen

rosy, rosig

rough, roh

roughly (built), roh

rough-woolled, hartwollig

round, *prep.*, um; the country

round, die Umgegend

round (of a policeman, &c.), die Runde; round (of visits to patients) of 30 miles, eine Praxis, die sich auf dreißig Meilen in die Runde erstreckt

rouse (to startle), aufschrecken; rouse to indignation, entriisten

routed (to be), zersprengt werden

Roxburgh, Roxburgh

royal, königlich; (princely), fürstlich

rude (idiom), roh

rugged, rauh

ruins, Ruinen (die Ruine, *sing.*)

rule, die Regel; (custom), der Gebrauch

rumour, das Gerücht

run before (precede), vorangehen; the argument ran high, der Streit wurde laut; run (a boat) on shore, stranden lassen; (stream) running (between), dahinfließend; swift running (river), reißend

rush in (following a leader), nachstürzen; rush out at, losstürzen auf

Russian, *adj.*, russisch

Sabbath, der Sabbath

sacredly: to keep sacredly, heiligen

saddle, der Sattel; saddled (in their stables), gefattelt stehen

safely, glücklich; to be safely moored (in a harbour), sicher vor Anker liegen

said (aforesaid), besagt

sail, *sb.*, das Segel

sail, *vb.*, segeln; after some hours' sailing = after they had sailed some hours; sail (from), absegeln

sailor, der Matrose; (mariner), der Seemann; (navigator), der Seefahrer
 saint, der Heilige; Saint Lazarus, der heilige Lazarus
 St. Paul's Cathedral, die Paulskirche
 St. Peter, basilica of, die Petruskirche
 saintly, fromm
 sally forth, fortstellen
 saltness (salt taste), der Salzgeschmack
 same: at the same time, zu gleicher Zeit; it is all the same to him, es gilt ihm gleich; just the same (undisturbed), ruhig
 same (omitted): to that same castle, zu jenem Schloß
 sand, der Sand
 sandal, die Sandale
 sanguinary (warlike), kriegerisch
 satisfaction, die Befriedigung
 satisfied, zufrieden
 satisfy = to be able to satisfy (hunger), stillen können
 savage, sb., der Wilde
 save (rescue), retten; save (the country), retten
 savoury, schmackhaft
 Saxon, adj., sächsisch
 Saxony, Sachsen
 say, sagen; (remark), bemerken; it is said, they say, rendered by sollen. (See p. 11, n. 45 (a))
 saying (the), der Ausspruch
 scanty (families), wenig
 scarce short of = almost border upon, fast angrenzen
 scarcely, kaum
 scentless, geruchlos
 scholar (learned man), der Gelehrte
 school, die Schule
 schoolboy, der Schulknabe
 schoolfellow, der Schulkamerad
 science, die Wissenschaft
 scorch up, ausbürren
 score (to cut notches or furrows in), kerben
 Scot, der Schotte; King of Scots, der König der Schotten; der König von Schottland

Scotland, Schottland
 Scottish, schottisch
 scrambled eggs, Rührei
 Scriptures, die heilige Schrift
 sea, die See; das Meer; prairie sea, das Präriemeer
 sea-green, seegrün; sea-mew, die Möwe; sea-shore, die Küste; sea-side, die Meeresküste
 seal, das Siegel
 search: in search of it, um es zu suchen or aufzusuchen
 season, die Jahreszeit; (parliamentary), die Session
 second (num.), zweite; on the 2nd April, den 2ten April; John the Second, Johann der Zweite
 secluded, abgelegen
 secret, das Geheimniß; in secret, heimlich
 secure, vb., (to gain), erwerben
 sedgy, scharf
 see, sehen; see (a spectacle), ansehen; (witness), zusehen; (to notice), bemerken; who, seeing a change as he rode along, der, als er beim Dahinreiten eine Veränderung bemerkte; (to catch sight of), erblicken; to be seen (in hospitals), finden; (not a tree) to be seen, zu sehen; seeing the danger, da (er) die Gefahr sah
 seed, der Same
 seek (a fortune), versuchen; seek out, aufsuchen
 seem, scheinen
 sein, aux. v., when omitted, p. 12, n. 47 (e)
 seize, ergreifen; (an opportunity), ergreifen; (a place, a position, mil.), sich bemächtigen
 select, wählen
 self-dubbed, selbsternannt
 self-esteem, eine gute Meinung von sich selbst
 semi-barbarous, halbbarbarisch
 semi-circular, halbkreisförmig
 send, senden; schiden; send (grace), angebeihen lassen
 sensation (feeling), das Gefühl
 sense (feeling), das Gefühl; (consciousness), das Bewußtsein

sensibility, die Reizbarkeit; (timidity), die Schüchternheit
 sensitive, sensitiv
 sensitiveness, die Empfindlichkeit
 sensuous, sinnlich
Sentences, dependent (1) expressing a condition, and preceding a principal clause, 2, n. 7; (2) require the inflected verb to be placed at the end, 3, n. 12 (b); (3) do not admit of inversions, 3, n. 15 (b)
 sentiment, das Gefühl
 sentry, sentries, die Schilbwahe
 servant-maid, das Dienstmädchen
 serve, dienen; (at table), aufwarten; (to be sufficient for the purpose), genügen
 service, der Dienst
 set (him to watch), lassen; set agoing, in Bewegung bringen; set at advantage, Vortheile gewähren; set free, loslassen; set at liberty, in Freiheit setzen; (the point from which it) set out, ausging; set out (on a journey), sich aufmachen; set to work, sich an die Arbeit machen; set up a claim to, einen Anspruch auf (etwas) machen
 setting (of sun, stars, &c.), der Untergang
 settle, sich niederlassen; settle (the habit), verleihen
 settlement (on land), die Niederlassung; acquiesced in their settlement = settled peacefully (to settle, sich niederlassen)
 settler, der Ansiedler
 Seven Weeks' War (Austro-Prussian), known as 'the Seven Days' War,' der sieben tägige Krieg
 seventeenth, siebzehnte
 several, mehrere
 severe: to be severe upon, streng bestrafen
 severed (isolated), *adj.*, isolirt
 severity, die Strenge
 sex (fair sex), das schöne Geschlecht
 shade, der Schatten
 shadow, der Schatten
 Shakers (religious sect), die Schaker (*plur.*)

shall: should (supposing, assuming that), sollte; sollten
 shame, die Schande
 shanty (log-hut), das Blockhaus
 share, *sb.*, der Antheil
 share, *vb.*, theilen; (one's intentions), eingehen
 sheep, das Schaf
 sheer (nothing else than), bloß
 Sheikh, der Scheik, der Scheich
 shelter one's self, Schutz finden
 shepherd, der Hirt
 shepherd's dog, der Schäferhund
 shield, der Schild
 shine, scheinen; (the eyes), leuchten
 ship, das Schiff
 shipwrecked, *adj.*, schiffbrüchig
 shoot down (rays from the sun), herabsenden
 shop, der Laden
 shore, das Ufer; to run (a boat) on shore, stranden lassen
 short, kurz; in short, kurz; short of = border upon, angrenzen; to be short of both sleep and food, weder Schlaf noch Nahrung genug haben
 shoulder, die Schulter
 shout, der Ruf
 show, zeigen; showed (the place to be) = it was discovered (that the place was), es zeigte sich (daß, u. s. w.); (to produce), vorzeigen; to be shown (to be evident), sich kundgeben
 shrewdness, der Scharfsinn
 shrine, der Schrein
 shut up (to confine), einsperren
 shyness, die Schen
 Sicani, die Sicanier
 sick (the), die Kranken
 side, die Seite; (of a hill, of a volcano), der Abhang; to set at the king's side, sich neben den König setzen; on the side of (a river), bei
 side (*omitted*): to his master's side, zu seinem Herrn
 sight: in sight, sichtbar; in the sight of all, Angesichts Aller; to spring into sight = to appear suddenly, plötzlich erscheinen

sign, das Zeichen; sign of life, das Lebenszeichen; (sign-board), das Schild
signature, die Unterschrift
signify: what does it signify, was liegt daran
silence: in silence, schweigend; stillschweigend
silent, still
silver fir, die Silbertanne
similarly (headstrong), ebenso
simple, einfach
simples (medicinal herbs), Heilkräuter (das Heilkraut)
simplify, vereinfachen
simply (merely), bloß
since, seit (*gov. dat.*); (as), da
single (the one, the only), einzig; (not double), einfach; single man (bachelor), der Junggesell; I am a single man, ich bin Junggesell
singular, eigenthümlich
sink into, sich senken; (graduate into), sich entfalten zu
sinner, der Sünder
Sire, Sire
sister, die Schwester
sit, sitzen; sit down, sich setzen; sit at the king's side, sich neben den König setzen; sit (at the receipt of dues), beaufsichtigen
situated, to be, sich befinden
situation (employment), die Stelle; (state of affairs), die Lage
six, sechs; six hundred, sechshundert; six (o'clock), sechs Uhr
sixty, sechzig
size, die Größe
skeleton, das Skelett; the skeleton of each (of the two), die beiden Skelette
sketch, die Skizze
skill: trial of skill, die Kunstprobe
skull, der Schädel
sky, der Himmel
slaughter (in battle), das Gemetzel
slave, der Sklave; to make them slaves, sie zu Sklaven machen
slave-making, *adj.*, knechtend;
slave-making instinct, der Instinkt Sklaven zu machen

slay, töten; (with a blow), erschlagen; (an animal for food), schlachten
sleep, *sb.*, der Schlaf; *vb.*, schlafen
sleeve, der Ärmel
slight, *adj.*, gering; slight attention = slight degree (geringer Grad) of attention
slight, *vb.*, verachten
slightly aquiline (nose), leichtgebogen
sling, die Schleuder
slip (over the head), ziehen
slope, der Abhang
slumber, der Schummer
small, klein; small (effort), gering; small (rise of land), sanft
snail, die Schnecke
snail-picker, der Schneckenfammer
snaky, schlangenartig
snow, der Schnee
snuff-box, die Dose, die Schnupftaschdose
so, *conj.*, when placed before principal sentences, *p. 2, n. 7*
so, *adv.*, so; (in this manner), auf diese Weise; (consequently), also; demgemäß; (he is) so described, als solcher beschrieben; so far from (being evidence), weit entfernt (zu beweisen); so truly a = such a, ein solcher, &c.; either naturally so, or, entweder von Natur, oder
so, *conj.*, so; and so (the rule is this), demnach; so (that, provided that), wofür nur, wenn nur. (*See p. 18, n. 17*)
soak (to steep), tunken
society, die Gesellschaft
soft (breeze), sanft; (pleasant), freundlich
soil (ground), der Boden; prairie soil, der Prairieboden
soldier, der Soldat; 100,000 soldiers, hunderttausend Mann
soldiery, Soldaten
sole, solely, einzig
solemn (feast), feierlich
solemnity (keeping the feast), die Festlichkeit

solitary, einzeln
 solitude, die Einsamkeit
 sollen, used for *it is said*; *they say*,
p. 11, n. 45 (a)
 solo, das Solo
 some, einige; some time, einige
 Zeit; (a small quantity), ein
 wenig; (any one person or thing,
 any kind of), irgend ein *or* eine
 (*see p. 60, n. 5*); some (certain)
 movements, irgend eine Bewegung;
 some other, ein ander (*masc.*);
 some dog, ein Hund; for some
 foray, zu einem Raubzug; of some
 exemplary severity, von einer
 exemplarischen Strenge; some alien
 group, eine fremdartige Gruppe;
 in some way (understands), ge-
 wissermaßen
 somehow, irgendwie
 sometimes, zuweilen; manchmal
 somewhat, etwas
 somewhere or other, an dem einen
 oder dem anderen Ort
 son, der Sohn
 song, das Lied
 sort, die Art
 soul, die Seele
 sound, *sb.*, der Laut; der Klang; (part
 of the sea), die Meerenge
 sound, *vb.*, (a statement may
 sound), klingen
 sour, sauer
 South, der Süden; (towards the
 south), nach Süden; South Sea,
 die Südpsee
 southern, südlich; Southern Meso-
 potamia, Süd-Mesopotamien
 sovereign (king), der König
 Spain, Spanien (*neut.*)
 Spaniard, der Spanier
 Spanish, *adj.*, spanisch
 speak, sprechen; so to speak, so zu
 sagen
 spear, die Lanze
 species (of ant), die Art
 speck: without a weed to speck
 them = free from every weed
 spectacle, das Schauspiel
 speculate (about anything), (dar-
 über) nachdenken; speculate on (to
 try to imagine), grübeln über

speech (discourse), die Rede (*see p.*
31, n. 12); (a maiden speech),
 eine Erstlingsrede
 speedily, rasch
 speedy, schnell
 spell: magician's spell, das Zau-
 berwort
 spend (one's time), zubringen;
 spend itself (in the service),
 sich erschöpfen
 sphere, die Sphäre
 spirit, der Geist; (animal spirits),
 das Dasein
 spiritual, geistlich; spiritual (ideas),
 abstrakt
 spirt out (to manifest itself), sich
 Luft machen
 spoil, verderben
 sport, die Jagd; active sports, die
 Leibesübungen
 spot (place), der Ort; die Stelle
 spread (over a wide extent), sich
 ausbreiten; to spread (a wave
 over), ausbreiten
 spring, *sb.*, der Frühling; (blossom-
 ing time being) principally
 spring, vorzüglich im Frühling
 spring of water, der Brunnen
 spring, *vb.*: (the race) from
 which he sprang, aus welcher er
 stammte; to spring into sight =
 to appear suddenly, plötzlich er-
 scheinen
 springy (turf), elastisch
 spur (on to), anspornen
 square, *sb.*, der Square. (*See p. 67,*
n. 15)
 squash (kind of pumpkin), der
 Kürbis
 squire, der Edelmann; (vassal), der
 Vasall; (in attendance), der
 Page
 stab, erstechen
 stable, der Stall
 staff (*mil.*), der Stab; staff officer,
 der Stabsoffizier
 stag, der Hirsch
 stage (degree), das Stadium. (*See*
p. 91, n. 14)
 stage-coach, die Postkutsche
 stake: are not at stake, stehen nicht
 auf dem Spiele

stammer, stammeln
 stamp, *vb.*, stempeln
 stampede, die Flucht
 stand, stehen; stand forth (forming) an oasis, eine Oase bilden;
 stand in relief, stark abstecken;
 stand its ground, sich behaupten
 star, der Stern
 stare at, anstarren
 stark, stark
 start (by coach, train, &c.), abfahren
 State, der Staat; Federal States, die föderirten Staaten
 stately (building), prächtig
 stature, die Statur; die Gestalt; in stature, von Gestalt
 stay, bleiben; stay (in sight), nicht verschwinden; it stayed patiently (spread out on the mountain), es lag geduldig da
 steadfast, standhaft
 steel, der Stahl
 steep, *adj.*, steil; steep (of a hill), *sb.*, der Abhang
 steer, steuern; (with oars), lenken
 step, der Schritt; (of the stairs), eine Stufe; steps (footprints, tracks), die Spuren
 stepdame (*used as an adj.*), tiefmütterlich
 steward (on an estate), der Verwalter
 stick, der Stod
 still (yet), noch; (for all that), dennoch
 stimulate, anregen
 stir (to excite), aufregen
 stop, stehen bleiben; sich aufhalten; (when on the march), Halt machen
 storm, *sb.*, der Sturm; a storm of snow and rain, ein Sturm von Schnee und Regen begleitet
 storm (a redoubt), *vb.*, stürmen
 story (legend), die Sage
 straight on, gerade aus
 stranded, gestrandet
 strange, seltsam
 Strasburg, Straßburg; Strasburg gates, Straßburgs Thore
 stratagem (of war), die Krieglist

stream: prairie stream, der Prairiestrom
 street, die Straße
 strength, die Kraft; die Stärke; (*mil.*), die Macht; according to our strength, nach eigenen Kräften (*plur.*)
 strengthened (with the time) = became stronger (stärker)
 stretch (to extend), sich ziehen; sich ausdehnen; stretch for miles, sich meilenweit erstrecken
 stretching (of elastic, &c.), das Ausziehen
 strictly, streng
 strike: it strikes me, es will mir scheinen
 striking (remarkable), auffallend; most striking, am auffallendsten
 strip of land, der Landstrich
 strive, streben
 strong, stark; strong (castle), fest
 strongly, stark
 structure, das Gebäude; (of a plant), der Bau
 struggle: to have the best of the struggle, die Oberhand bekommen
 study, *sb.*, (learning), das Studium; studies, die Studien
 study (elegance), *vb.*, sich beileistigen
 stupid, dumm
 sturdy (independent), trotzig
 style, der Stil or Styl; (chronological), der Styl; 11th December, old style, 11ten Dezember, alten Styles
 Styrian, *adj.*, steirisch
 subject (for an essay), das Sujet; der Gegenstand
 Subject, grammatical, use of, p. 81, n. 10
 submissive, unterwürfig
 submit, sich unterwerfen
 subordinate, untergeordnet
 substantial, solid; etwas Wirkliches
 Substantives, compound, (1) advantage of forming, 22, n. 3; (2) formed without any connecting link, or by means of the gen., 59, n. 10; 72, n. 1 and 10; (3) formed with adjectives, 59, n.

9; (4) mode of writing two compounds having the same subordinate member, 93, n. 16
Substantives, (1) frequentative, how formed, 15, n. 4; (2) gender of abstract—, formed from adjectives, 92, n. 7
 [See also *Nouns*]
 suburb, die Vorstadt
 succeed each other, auf einander folgen
 success, das Gelingen
 successfully, mit Erfolg
 such, solch; so; of such importance, so bedeutend; such a (powerful), ein so; in such a case, in diesem Falle; on such an occasion, bei dieser Gelegenheit; such as, wie; such works as, Werke wie; such things, dergleichen
 suddenly, plötzlich
 suffer, leiden; suffer (disaster), betroffen sein
 sufficient, hinlänglich; to be sufficient, ausreichen
 sufficiently, genug
 suggest (when asked for an opinion), meinen
 suggestion (the point of view suggested), die Ansicht
 summit, der Gipfel
 sumptuous, prächtig
 sun, die Sonne
 sunbeam, der Sonnenstrahl
 sup, speisen zu Abend
 superhuman, übermenschlich
Superlative, relative, of adverbs, p. 87, n. 1
 supersede, verdrängen
 superstition, der Aberglaube
Supine, (1) definition of, and its general use, 2, n. 9 (a); (2) with verbal forms in -ing preceded by of, instead of, for, or without, 7, n. 31 (a); (3) with verbs expressing that something can or should be done, 9, n. 38; (4) with befehlen, 89, n. 1; (5) not used after aux. verbs of mood, and sehen, hören, etc., 11, n. 45 (b); 37, n. 4
 supply, *vb.*, liefern

supply, *sb.*: a good supply
 genug
 support, *sb.*, die Unterstützung
 support, *vb.*, unterstützen; (to supply food for), nähren
 suppose, annehmen
 supposed, *adj.*, vermeintlich
 suppress, unterdrücken
 sure: then he was sure, dann ward es ihm zur Gewißheit
 surf, die Brandung
 surface, die Oberfläche
 surgeon (medical man), der Arzt.
 (See p. 77, n. 11)
 surprise, *vb.*, in Erstaunen setzen
 surrender (a prisoner), ausliefern;
 if not surrendered (a town), wenn die Übergabe nicht erfolgte
 surround, umgeben
 surrounding country, die Umgegend; surrounding poor, die Armen in der Umgegend
 survivor, der Überlebende
 suspect (assume), annehmen
 suspend (around the neck), hängen
 suspense (anxious uncertainty), bange Ungewißheit
 sustain, aufrecht erhalten
 Suttum, Suttum
 swallow up, verschlingen
 sway (the sceptre), führen
 swear, schwören; swear allegiance, den Lehnseid leisten
 sweep: (warriors) swept over = streamed over, strömten über;
 sweep bare (the table, to clear it), abdecken
 sweeping (lines of Greek art), geschwungen
 sweet (air), frisch; (nice), schön
 swell: the sea swells, die See geht hoch
 swift, schnell; swift running (river), reißend
 swim, schwimmen
 swimming, das Schwimmen
 sword, das Schwert
 sycophant, der Schmeichler
 sympathy, die Sympathie
 symptom, das Zeichen
 syrup, der Fruchtsaft. (See p. 28, n. 14)

system, das System

table, der Tisch; (writing table),
der Schreibtisch; to serve at table,
bei Tafel aufwarten

tail, der Schwanz

tailor, der Schneider

take, nehmen; (to accept), annehmen;
men; take (advice), befolgen;
(an opportunity), ergreifen; take
and convey (a prisoner to any-
one), überliefern; take amiss (to
be angry with), zürnen; take
(by conquest), erobern; take
heed of (to trouble about), sich
kummern um; take into one's
head, sich vornehmen; take place,
stattfinden; take off (one's hat),
abnehmen; take (one to), bringen;
take root, Wurzel fassen; take
the hint (take warning), es zur
Warnung dienen lassen; take upon
one's self, übernehmen; took us
down with him = went with
us

taking: worth taking, des Nehmens
werth

tale, die Erzählung; (the event nar-
rated), das Ereigniß; tell their
own tale, für sich selbst sprechen

tall, groß; tall-grown, groß ge-
wachsen

tapping (trees for their sap), *sb.*,
der Einschnitt

target (targe), die Tartsche

tart, die Torte

task, die Aufgabe

taste (for), die Vorliebe

tea, der Thee

team: emigrant's team, das Aus-
wanderergerespann

tear through (with shot and shell),
zersprengen; tear up (bread),
brechen

Telegraph (name of a hill), der
Telegraph

tell, sagen; tell their own tale,
für sich selbst sprechen; as we are
told, wie uns berichtet wird

temple, der Tempel

tempting, *adj.*, verführerisch

tend (to care for), pflegen; tend to
(irritate), beitragen dazu

tender, good (offices), freundschaft-
lich

tenor: even tenor (of their lives),
der ruhige Gang

term (expression), das Wort; der
Ausdruck. (*See p. 2, n. 9*)

term (to name), nennen

terrible, schrecklich

terrified (to be), erschrecken

terror, der Schrecken

Teuton, der Teutone

Teutonic, teutonisch

than, als; wie

thanks: to give thanks again, von
Neuem danken; without (formal)
thanks, ohne Höflichkeiten

that, *dem. pron. and adj.*, der, die,
das; jener, jene, jenes; der—, die—,
or dasjenige; dieser, diese, dieses;
of that which, von dem, was;
from that moment, von dem Mo-
ment an; von diesem Augenblicke an;
that is = namely, nämlich

that, *rel. pron.*, (a river) that
had steep banks, dessen Ufer steil
waren; (the circumstance) that
obtained for him, durch welchen
er erhielt; all that (had oc-
curred), Alles, was

that, *conj.*, daß (*see p. 33, n.*
17; p. 34, n. 13; and p. 45, n.
19); (in order to), um

the, der, die, das; the (more), je;
abounds with the (superstition),
voll von jenem

the (*omitted*): all the (hold-
ers), all the (Numidians), alle;
in the presence, absence, &c., in
Gegenwart, &c. (*See also p. 76,*
n. 10)

their, ihr, ihre, ihr; der, die, das, &c.;
their father, dessen Vater; their
aid, die Hülfe derselben; from
their cradles, von der Wiege an;
with their shields over their
heads, die Schilde über den Köpfen;
slept with their swords under
their pillows and their horses
saddled in their stables, schliefen,
das Schwert unter dem Kopfstissen,
während die Pferde gesattelt in den
Ställen standen; their lives, das

- Leben (*no plural in this sense*); tell their own tale, für sich selbst sprechen; laid down their knives and forks, legten Messer und Gabeln nieder
- them, sie; ihnen; one of them, einer derselben; some of them, einige derselben; which forbids them from engaging their infantry = which forbids their infantry to engage
- themselves, sich; they themselves being so many, während ihrer so viele waren
- then, *adv.*, dann; (at that time), damals; (hereupon), hierauf
- then, *conj.*, (therefore), also
- thence, von da aus
- thenceforth, von da an
- theoretical, theoretisch
- theory, die Theorie; (opinion), die Meinung
- there, dort; da; (in, at that place), daselbst
- there is, es ist; es gibt (*see p. 25, n. 7*); when there is no butter, wenn keine Butter vorhanden ist; there is no lack of, es fehlt nicht an; there is nothing to describe, es läßt sich nichts beschreiben; there is reason (to suppose), man hat Grund; while there is still room, da noch Raum bleibt; there is (throughout history), es herrscht; there was a necessity, die Nothwendigkeit war vorhanden; (he) finding there were no sentries, da er keine Schildwache fand
- there (*omitted*): (years) afterwards there rode, später ritt; in that castle there lived, in diesem Schlosse lebte; on either side there grew up, zu beiden Seiten erwuchs
- therefore, deshalb; daher
- these, diese
- they, sie; they themselves being so many, während ihrer so viele waren; they were baffled = their plans were frustrated
- thick (forest), dicht
- thin (loaf), dünn
- thing, das Ding; (undefined), Etwas; (matter, affair), die Sache (*see p. 70, n. 1*); many things (various subjects), vielerlei
- think, denken; (believe, conclude, imagine, &c.), glauben; (consider), erwägen; (to judge a thing to be), halten für; think it necessary, es für nöthig halten; think of (doing anything), gedanken zu (*see p. 15, n. 3*); think little of, gering achten; thinking to himself, bei sich denkend
- third, dritte
- thirteenth, dreizehnte
- thirty, dreißig; Thirty Years' War, der dreißigjährige Krieg
- this, dieser, diese, dieses; (referring to something done, doing, or to be done), dies; this (morning, evening, &c.), heute; an example of this, ein Beispiel hiervon; and so the rule is this:—, demnach wäre Folgendes die Regel:—
- thorn (bush), der Dornbusch
- those, jene; (*rel. pron.*), die
- though, wenn auch; obgleich; obwohl; as though, als ob; even though, und wenn
- thought, der Gedanke; thoughts (views, opinions), Ansichten; peaceful thoughts, friedliche Gemüthsstimmung
- thousand, das Tausend; a thousand to one, tausend gegen eins; one hundred thousand, hunderttausend
- thread, der Faden
- threaten, drohen; bedrohen
- threatening, *adj.*, drohend
- three, drei; three hundred, dreihundert; three times, dreimal
- throne, der Thron
- through, durch; through choice, aus freier Wahl
- throughout, hindurch
- throw, werfen; throw away, wegwerfen; throw off (to unseat a rider), abwerfen
- thrust, der Stoß
- Thuringia, Thüringen
- Thuringian, *adj.*, Thüringer

Thursday, der Donnerstag; every

Thursday, jeden Donnerstag

thus, so

thy, dein, deine, dein

tide, die Strömung

tier, die Reihe; rising tier above

tier, in aufsteigenden Reihen

till, bis

Time, (1) duration of, expressed by the accusative, 59, n. 2; (2) point of —, expressed by an with the dative, 88, n. 15; by the genitive, 79, n. 5

time, die Zeit (*see p. 13, n. 50*) (a); time of peace, Friedenszeiten (*plur.*); time of war, Kriegzeiten (*plur.*); at the present time, jetzt; at the time (just then), im Augenblicke; by this time, jetzt; nun; schon

time, das Mal; several times, mehrere Male; eight times, achtmal

tint, die Farbe

title (name), der Name

titled (aristocratic), vornehm

Titles, English, not translated, p. 31, n. 7

to, zu, an, auf, in, &c.: (in order to), um; (Carlyle) to (Goethe), an; to go to (the battle-field), sich begeben auf; (surrender) to the orders, auf Befehl; to the sound (of a bell), auf den Klang; (attention) to, auf; (to set up a claim) to, (to confine) to (three languages), auf; (engaged himself) to (the militia), bei; from fifty to sixty, fünfzig bis sechzig; (as far as), bis an; to the top, bis auf den Gipfel; but it was to the sailor alone, aber erst für den Seemann; lost to us, für uns verloren; (towards), gegen; (indifferent, sensitive) to, gegen; (observed) to me, gegen mich; (gentle) to his friends, einen Freunden gegenüber; to follow one to church, einem in die Kirche folgen; the news had flown to = the news had spread itself in; to great distances,

in weite Entfernung; (to journey, go, drive, &c.) to (a place), nach; 15 miles to the north-west (of it), 15 Meilen nordwestlich (davon) entfernt; to the west, westwärts together, zusammen; for months together, Monate lang

Tom: Jack or Tom, Hans oder Peter

tomato, der Liebesapfel

Tombora (mountain), der Tombora tongue: native tongue, die Muttersprache

too, zu; (also), auch

top (of a hill), der Gipfel; tops of the grass, die Grasspitzen

tortoise, die Schildkröte

tow, *vb.*, bugsen

towards (move towards), zu; make towards, eilen zu; towards the end, gegen Ende

tower, *sb.*, der Thurm

tower, to tower over, emporragen

town, die Stadt; the town of Guatelman, die Stadt Guatelman

Town-house (the Town Hall), das Rathhaus

trace (with a pencil), zeichnen; (to follow traces of), verfolgen; trace back, verfolgen

track (path), der Pfad

tract (place), die Stelle; (of ground), eine Strecke; upland tract, das Hochland

tractable: to be tractable (to one's voice), aufhören

trade, der Handel

tradition, die Tradition; (on that spot) which tradition, welche die Tradition; die Sage; times of tradition, die Sagenzeit; to hold sway in the popular tradition, das Reich der Volks Sage beherrschen traditional, als Sage bekannt

tragedy, das Trauerspiel

train (from the cradle), *vb.*, erziehen

trait, der Zug

trampling (a), das Getrampel

transept, das Transept

transfer back, zurückbringen

transgress, sich schuldig machen;
 transgress again, sich desselben
 Vergehens schuldig machen
 translate, übersetzen
 translation, die Übersetzung
 transplant, verpflanzen
 travel, *vb.*, reisen; (miners) travel-
 ling in search of, die reisten um
 . . . aufzusuchen
 treasure, der Schatz
 treasury, die Schatzkammer
 treat (of), sprechen (von)
 tree, der Baum; a knot of trees,
 eine Baumgruppe
 tremendous (groan), schrecklich
 trial, das Gerichtsverfahren; trial of
 skill, die Kunstprobe
 tribe, der Stamm
 trick, der Streich
 trifling, *adj.*, geringfügig
 trium (garden), zierlich
 Trojan, *adj.*, trojanisch
 troop, der Trupp; troop of horse,
 der Trupp Reiter
 troops, die Truppen (*plur.*);
 troops of the line, die Linientrup-
 pen; (an army), eine Armee
 trouble, *sb.*, die Mühe
 trouble one's self with, sich beschäf-
 tigen um
 true, *sb.*, das Wahre
 true, *adj.*, wahr; (faithful),
 treu; (real), eigentlich
 truffles, die Trüffeln (*plur.*)
 trumpet, die Trompete
 trumpeter, der Trompeter
 truth, die Wahrheit; in truth, in
 der That
 try, versuchen; try (before a judge),
 vor Gericht stellen
 tumultuous, stürmisch
 turf, der Rasen
 turn (an opportunity to account),
 ausbeuten; (one thing into an-
 other), vertauschen; turn aside,
 ablenken; turn back, zurückkehren;
 turn loose, loslassen; turn out
 (on guard), ins Gewehr treten;
 turn over (to hand over), über-
 liefern; turned their backs (fled),
 flohen; turn to ruin, vernichten;
 turned twenty, über zwanzig

turn, *sb.*: by turns, abwech-
 selnd
 turnkey, der Gefängnißwärter
 tusk, der Haulzahn
 tussle, der Kampf
 twenty, zwanzig; at the age of
 twenty, im Alter von zwanzig
 Jahren
 twenty-fifth, fünf und zwanzigste
 twenty-four, vier und zwanzig
 twenty-seven, sieben und zwanzig
 twice, zweimal
 twist, drehen
 two, zwei; the two kingdoms, die
 beiden Reiche; two hundred, zwei-
 hundert
 Tyrol, Tyrol; to go to the Tyrol,
 nach Tyrol gehen
 Ulphilas, Ulphilas
 um, precedes the *supine*, *p. 2, n.*
 9 (*a*)
 unable, nicht im Stande; to be un-
 able, nicht können
 unavoidable, unvermeidlich
 unbounded, unbegrenzt
 uncle, der Onkel
 unconnected, unzusammenhängend
 unconscious (not suspecting), nicht
 ahnend
 under, unter; to get under arms,
 ins Gewehr treten; under the
 sand, in dem Sand; (fall) under
 (the weight), durch
 underneath, unter
 undertake (to take in hand), sich
 daran machen
 undertaking, das Unternehmen
 understand, verstehen; (to discover),
 entdecken
 undomesticated (unsociable), un-
 gesellig
 undoubtedly (indisputably), un-
 streitig
 unexampled, beispieless
 unfathomable (depths of forest),
 undurchdringlich
 unfortunate, unglücklich
 uniform, *sb.*, die Uniform
 uniform (rule) = general (custom),
 allgemein
 uniformity, die Gleichförmigkeit.
 (*See p. 91, n. 5*)

union, die Verbindung; die Vereinigung
 United States, die Vereinigten Staaten
 unknown, fremd; unbekannt
 unless, außer; es sei denn; wenn nicht
 unlet, unvermietet
 unlike, unähnlich
 unmeaning, unbedeutend
 unnecessary, unnütz
 unparalleled, *adj.*, beispieellos
 unprincipled, gewissenlos
 unquestionable, unstreitig
 unsurpassed, unübertroffen
 until, bis
 up, auf; (upwards), hinauf; up to (the time), bis zu; to come up (to), kommen herbei; lead up, hinaufführen
 upland, das Hochland; upland tract, das Hochland
 upon, auf; upon (a subject), über; upon which, worauf; (slaughter wrought) upon (troops), unter; upon the day, am Tage; upon him, bei sich; to call upon him, ihm einen Besuch machen; to close upon, sich schließen über; to look upon, ansehen; to take upon one's self, übernehmen; to operate as but a slight check upon, nur geringen Einhalt thun
 upper lip, die Oberlippe
 Urceola Elastica, die Urceola Elastica
 urge, bringen
 use, *sb.*, der Gebrauch; to make use of, benutzen
 use (for anything), *vb.*, brauchen
 useful, nützlich
 usual, üblich; gewöhnlich
 usually, gewöhnlich
 utterance, der Ausspruch; volubility of utterance, die Zungengeläufigkeit
 utterly, gänzlich
 Valens, (*indeclin.*), Valens
 valley, das Thal
 valour, die Tapferkeit
 valuable, werthvoll
 Van Eyck, Van Eyck

vanish, verschwinden
 various, verschieden
 vary (to sound contradictory), lauten verschieden
 vast, groß; mächtig; ungeheuer
 vastness, ungeheure Größe
 vedette, die Vedette
 vegetable (kind of), die Gemüseart; vegetable kingdom, das Pflanzenreich
 vegetation: forms of vegetation, Pflanzenformen
 velocity, die Schnelligkeit
 veal, feil
 venture, *vb.*, wagen
 ver, use of insep. prefix, *p.* 96, n. 14

verbal, mündlich

Verbal Forms in -ing, transl. of, (1) when preceded by *of*, *instead of*, *for*, or *without*, 7, n. 31 (*a*); (2) when used substantively, 15, n. 1

Verbs. I. (1) When conjugated with *sein*; (2) omission of *aux. verbs of tense*, *haben* and *sein*, 12, n. 47 (*e*); (3) use of *aux. — of mood*, 52, n. 1

II. (1) Use of the passive voice, 1, n. 4 (*b*); (2) use of active voice instead of passive voice, 2, n. 8; (3) use of the reflective instead of passive voice, 10, n. 41 (*b*)

III. Government of — of choosing, appointing, &c., *Gr. Intr.*, xviii.; 36, n. 4

IV. (1) Verbs governing a direct and indirect object, 5, n. 22 (*b*); (2) government of insep. comp. —, 2, n. 9 (*b*); (3) government of sep. comp. verbs, compounded with *an*, *auf*, *bei*, &c., 5, n. 25 (*a*); (4) government of — denoting motion, 24, n. 10; (5) government of — denoting want, 87, n. 10

V. (1) Place of finite — containing *assertion*, 2, n. 5 (*b*); 3, n. 12 (*a*); (2) place of — in dependent sentences, 3, n. 12 (*b*)

VI. Intransitive —, how transformed into transitive ones, 29, n. 14

Verbs, upon which the objective clause or the supine depends, followed by a preposition, 97, n. 2

Berfassung, *when used for composition*, p. 62, n. 6

verily, wirklich

version (translation), die Übersetzung

very, *adv.*, sehr; (extremely), äußerst; very distant, sehr weit entfernt; very largely, in großer Menge; very much the contrary, ganz im Gegentheil

very, *adj.*: the very ideal (personified), das verkörperte Ideal; the very model, ein wahres Muster (*see* p. 37, n. 3); as the very name declares, wie der Name schon bezeugt; the very top, der Gipfel selbst. (*See* p. 23, n. 5)

vessel (boat), das Boot; (for cooking), das Gefäß

vestige, die Spur

victory, der Sieg

view, die Aussicht; width of view (mental), umfassende Anschauungsweise

vigilant, vorsichtig

village, das Dorf

violate (to oppose a custom), entgegenhandeln

violet, das Veilchen

violin: performer on the violin, der Violinspieler

vine, die Lauffhülle

virtue, die Tugend

Visigoth, der Westgothe

visit, *vb.*, besuchen

Vladimir column, die Wladimir-Colonne

vociferously, laut schreiend

voice, die Stimme

volcano, der Vulkan

volubility of utterance, die Zungenkäufigkeit

voluntarily, freiwillig

volunteer, der Freiwillige

vorangehen, *gov. dative*, p. 5, n. 25 (a)

vow of revenge, das Nachgeflübbe

voyage, die Reise

wafted, to be, getragen werden; wafted (to), hergetragen

wait for, abwarten

wake, wachen

walk, gehen, schreiten; walk on, weiter schreiten

wall, die Mauer; die Wand; around its walls, an den Wänden herum

want, *sb.*, das Bedürfnis; want (of), der Mangel (an)

war, der Krieg; the Thirty Years' War, der dreißigjährige Krieg; time of war, Kriegszeiten (*plur.*)

warm, warmly, warm

warrior, der Krieger; (hero), der Held

Wartburg (the), die Wartburg

war-whoop, das Kriegsgeschrei

waste, *vb.*, vergeuden

watch: an enemy on the watch (to), ein Feind, der auf die Gelegenheit lauerte

watch, *vb.*: to watch over, bewachen; watch (camels), hüten;

watch for, aufwarten

watchful, wachsam

watch-tower, der Wachtthurm

water, das Wasser; a spring of water, ein Brunnen (*masc.*);

water's edge, der Rand des Wassers

water-laden, wasserbeladen

wave, die Woge; waves of turf, Grasswellen

wavy, wellenförmig

way (manner), die Weise; way of life, die Lebensweise; way (over), der Übergang; by way of, als;

to lead the way, vorangehen; to make one's way up, hinaufgehen

weak, schwach; weak (nerves), zart

weapon, die Waffe

wear, tragen; wear a look, ausssehen

we, wir; as we are told, wie uns berichtet wird

weed, das Unkraut

week, die Woche; a week's arrest, eine Woche Arrest

weight (pressure), die Wucht

Weimar, Weimar (*neut.*)
 welcome, willkommen
 well, *sb.*, der Brunnen
 well, *adv.*, gut; wohl (*see p. 75, n. 4*); (finely), fein; well and good, so mag es hingehen; well aware, überzeugt; well cooked, sorgfältig zubereitet; well examine, genau besichtigen
 well-ascertained, vösig-erwiesen
 Welsh, *adj.*, walisisch
 west (towards the west), nach Westen; to the west, westwärts;
 West Cliff, die Westflippe
 western, westlich
 westward, westwärts
 wet, naß
 what, was; what (you write) about, worüber
 whatever it might be, it was —, was immer es auch sei, so war es —; at whatever risk, auf jede Gefahr hin
 wheaten bread, das Weizenbrod
 when (*see p. 41, n. 9 and p. 50, n. 22*), als; wenn; (whereupon), worauf; (just then), da; when examined, bei genauer Untersuchung; the time, when, die Zeit, wo; even when most resembling = even the most like, selbst die ähnlichsten; it was about dusk when he arrived = he arrived there about dusk
 when (*omitted*): when hindered he assumed, aufgehalten, nahm er
 whence (from which), von dem, von der
 where, wo; advanced to where . . ., schritt bis zu dem Orte vor, wo . . .; (in minds) where, bei denen
 wherewith, womit
 whether, ob; whether to direct or impel, sei es um zu lenken oder anzuspornen
 which, welcher, welche, welches; der, die, das; in which = where, wo; of which, wovon; of which = whose, dessen; deren; on the highest of which = on whose highest point; each of which,

von denen jeder; of that which, von dem, was; on which, worauf; (a race) on which (affection is thrown away), bei der; to which (this led), wohin; which being so, und da dies der Fall ist
 Whig, Whig
 while, indem; während; da; while there is still room, da noch Raum bleibt; while (he) goes, im Gehen; (*omitted*): I have, while in England, ich habe in England. (*See p. 36, n. 12*)
 whilst, indem; während
 whirr, *vb.*, schwirren
 whisper, *sb.*, das Flüstern
 white, weiß
 whither, wohin
 who, der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches
 whole, ganz; whole of the, sämtlich (*adj.*); whole of his forces (*mil.*), seine Gesamtmacht
 whose: (trees) whose seeds = the seeds to which the trees owed their existence, die ihr Dasein dem Samen verdankt
 why, warum; (in that case), nun
 wide, breit; far and wide, weit und breit; wide (extent of country), groß
 width of view (mental), umfassende Anschauungsweise
 wife, die Gemahlin
 wild, wild; (growing wild), wildwachsend
 wilderness, die Wildnis
 will, *vb.*, (to have a will to), wollen; *aux. vb. of fut. tense*, werden; (one only symptom) will it give, giebt es
 will, *sb.*: to bear ill will, übel wollen
 William, Wilhelm
 will-o'-the-wisp, das Irrlicht
 wind, der Wind
 winding road, sich hinwindende Straße
 wine, der Wein
 wing, der Flügel
 wise: to be wise, weise sein
 wish, *vb.*, wünschen

wistfully, sehnsüchtig

with, mit; with (the army, his regiment, &c.), bei; (to live) with (anyone), bei; (together with), sammt; (a few men) and the Ligurian with them, sammt dem Ligurier; (to build a hut) with (logs, &c.), aus; (a feeling) with, für; with the design, zu dem Zweck; to abound with, voll sein von; overflowed (crowded) with, gedrängt voll von; with his name stamped upon it, worauf sein Name gestempelt war; with her own hand (wrote), eigenhändig; entertain him with a solo, ihm ein Solo vorspielen

with, omitted in all such cases as: an emigrant's team with the women under the awning, ein Auswanderergerspann, die Frauen unter der Plane; slept with their swords under their pillows, schliefen, das Schwert unter dem Kopfkissen; &c.

within, in; within an hour, binnen einer Stunde; within the entrance, am Eingang

without, prep., ohne; without a moment's preparation, ohne irgend welche Vorbereitung; without a weed, frei von jedem Unkraut; without opposition, ungehindert; was without result, hatte keine Folge

without (adv.) = from without, von außen

witness (to see), sehen; (to notice), wahrnehmen; (to be present at), beiwohnen

witty, witzig

wohl, expressing probability, place of adv., p. 41, n. 6

wolf, der Wolf

woman, die Frau

wonderful, wunderbar; (extraordinary), außerordentlich

wont: as was his wont, wie gewöhnlich

wood (timber), das Holz; (forest), der Wald

wooden, hölzern

woodland: (country) of woodlands, waldig

woodless, waldblos

wool, die Wolle

word, das Wort; word of command, das Commandowort; in a word, mit einem Wort; words (*connected terms, having a coherent meaning*), Worte; (*unconnected*), Wörter; no words, not a word (being spoken), kein Wort

work, sb., die Arbeit

work, vb.: set to work, sich an die Arbeit machen; (stimulate) to work, zum Arbeiten; (the slaughter) wrought upon (troops, by artillery), angerichtet unter

worker (ant), der Arbeiter

world, die Welt

worse (than his reputation), schlimmer

worshipful (*ironical*), hochwürdig

worth, der Werth; worth taking, des Nehmens werth

would, see will

wounded (men), die Verwundeten

wrecked (to be), Schiffbruch (*masc.*) leiden

write, schreiben

writer (author), der Verfasser

writing (style of composition), die Schreibweise

wrought, see work

year, das Jahr; (£500) a year, des Jahres; a year's journey through, ein Jahr in

yet, doch; (but), aber; (nevertheless), dennoch

yield (to produce), liefern

you, Sie; Euch (*see p. 90, n. 12*); (*used by a king in addressing a subject*), Er, Ihn, Ihm; du, dich, dir (*see also p. 71, n. 16*); (anyone), man (*nom.*), Jemand, Niemand. (*See p. 38, n. 4*)

young, jung

Your Majesty, Ew. Majestät

youth, der Jüngling

Ziethen Hussars, Biethen'sche Husaren

zone = girdle, der Gürtel

zoologist, der Zoolog

May 1893.

A CATALOGUE OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS

Published by
GEORGE BELL & SONS.

.....

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
GRAMMAR SCHOOL CLASSICS	2
CAMBRIDGE GREEK AND LATIN TEXTS	3
CAMBRIDGE TEXTS WITH NOTES	3
PUBLIC SCHOOL SERIES... ..	4
CRITICAL AND ANNOTATED EDITIONS	4
TRANSLATIONS, SELECTIONS, &c.	5
LOWER FORM SERIES	6
CLASSICAL TABLES	6
LATIN AND GREEK CLASS-BOOKS	6
CAMBRIDGE MATHEMATICAL SERIES... ..	8
CAMBRIDGE SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS	9
BOOKKEEPING, GEOMETRY, EUCLID, AND TRIGONOMETRY	10
MECHANICS AND NATURAL PHILOSOPHY	11
FOREIGN CLASSICS	12
FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS	12
GOMBERT'S FRENCH DRAMA	13
GERMAN CLASS-BOOKS	14
MODERN GERMAN SCHOOL CLASSICS... ..	14
DIVINITY	15
TECHNOLOGY AND AGRICULTURE	16
HISTORY	16
PSYCHOLOGY AND ETHICS	17
DICTIONARIES	17
ENGLISH CLASS-BOOKS	18
READING BOOKS, &c.	19

4 YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON, W.C.

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL CLASSICS.

*A Series of Greek and Latin Authors, with English Notes.**Fcap. 8vo.*Cæsar: *De Bello Gallico*. By George Long, M.A. 4s.

—— Books I.-III. For Junior Classes. By G. Long, M.A. 1s. 6d.

—— Books IV. and V. 1s. 6d. Books VI. and VII., 1s. 6d.

—— Books I., II., and III., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. each.

Catullus, Tibullus, and Propertius. *Selected Poems. With Life.*
By Rev. A. H. Wratishaw. 2s. 6d.Cicero: *De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Select Epistles.* By
George Long, M.A. 3s.

Cornelius Nepos. By Rev. J. F. Macmichael. 2s.

Homer: *Iliad*. Books I.-XII. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D.
4s. 6d. Also in 2 parts, 2s. 6d. each.Horace: *With Life.* By A. J. Maclean, M.A. 3s. 6d. In
2 parts, 2s. each. *Odes, Book I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d.*Juvenal: *Sixteen Satires.* By H. Prior, M.A. 3s. 6d.Martial: *Select Epigrams. With Life.* By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D.
4s. 6d.Ovid: *the Fasti.* By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 3s. 6d. Books I.
and II., 1s. 6d. Books III. and IV., 1s. 6d. Books V. and VI., 1s. 6d.Sallust: *Catilina and Jugurtha.* *With Life.* By G. Long, M.A.
and J. G. Frazer. 3s. 6d., or separately, 2s. each.Tacitus: *Germania and Agricola.* By Rev. P. Frost. 2s. 6d.Virgil: *Bucolics, Georgics, and Æneid, Books I.-IV.* Abridged
from Professor Conington's Edition. 4s. 6d.—*Æneid, Books V.-XII., 4s. 6d.*
Also in 9 separate Volumes, as follows, 1s. 6d. each:—*Bucolics—Georgics,*
I. and II.—*Georgics, III. and IV.—Æneid, I. and II.—III. and IV.—V.*
and VI.—VII. and VIII.—IX. and X.—and XI. and XII. *Æneid, Book*
I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d.Xenophon: *The Anabasis.* *With Life.* By Rev. J. F. Macmichael.
3s. 6d. Also in 4 separate volumes, 1s. 6d. each:—Book I. (with Life,
Introduction, Itinerary, and Three Maps)—Books II. and III.—IV. and V.
—VI. and VII.—— *The Cyropædia.* By G. M. Gorham, M.A. 3s. 6d. Books
I. and II., 1s. 6d.—Books V. and VI., 1s. 6d.—— *Memorabilia.* By Percival Frost, M.A. 3s.A Grammar School Atlas of Classical Geography, containing
Ten selected Maps. Imperial 8vo. 3s.*Uniform with the Series.*The New Testament, in Greek. *With English Notes, &c.* By
Rev. J. F. Macmichael. 4s. 6d. The Four Gospels and the Acts, separately.
Sewed, 6d. each.

CAMBRIDGE GREEK AND LATIN TEXTS.

- Aeschylus. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 2s.
 Cæsar: De Bello Gallico. By G. Long, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Cicero: De Senectute et De Amicitia, et Epistolæ Selectæ.
 By G. Long, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Ciceronis Orationes. In Verrem. By G. Long, M.A. 2s. 6d.
 Euripides. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 3 vols. 2s. each.
 Herodotus. By J. G. Blakesley, B.D. 2 vols. 5s.
 Homeri Ilias. I.-XII. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 1s. 6d.
 Horatius. By A. J. Maclean, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Juvenal et Persius. By A. J. Maclean, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Lucretius. By H. A. J. Munro, M.A. 2s.
 Sallusti Crispi Catilina et Jugurtha. By G. Long, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Sophocles. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 2s. 6d.
 Terenti Comœdiæ. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 2s.
 Thucydides. By J. G. Donaldson, D.D. 2 vols. 4s.
 Virgilius. By J. Conington, M.A. 2s.
 Xenophontis Expeditio Cyri. By J. F. Macmichael, B.A. 1s. 6d.
 Novum Testamentum Græce. By F. H. Scrivener, M.A., D.C.L.
 4s. 6d. An edition, with wide margin for notes, half bound, 12s. EDITIO
 MAJOR, with additional Readings and References. 7s. 6d. (See page 15.)

CAMBRIDGE TEXTS WITH NOTES.

A Selection of the most usually read of the Greek and Latin Authors, Annotated for Schools. Edited by well-known Classical Scholars. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. each, with exceptions.

‘Dr. Paley’s vast learning and keen appreciation of the difficulties of beginners make his school editions as valuable as they are popular. In many respects he sets a brilliant example to younger scholars.’—*Athenæum*.

‘We hold in high value these handy Cambridge texts with Notes.’—*Saturday Review*.

- Aeschylus. Prometheus Vincit. — Septem contra Thebas. — Agamemnon. — Persæ. — Eumenides. — Choephore. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D.
 Euripides. Alceſtis. — Medea. — Hippolytus. — Hecuba. — Bacchæ. — Ion. 2s. — Orestes. — Phœnissæ. — Troades. — Hercules Furens. — Andromache. — Iphigenia in Tauris. — Supplices. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D.
 Homer. Iliad. Book I. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 1s.
 Sophocles. Oedipus Tyrannus. — Oedipus Coloneus. — Antigone. — Electra. — Ajax. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D.
 Xenophon. Anabasis. In 6 vols. By J. E. Melhuish, M.A., Assistant Classical Master at St. Paul’s School.
 — Hellenics, Book I. By L. D. Dowdall, M.A., B.D. 2s.
 — Hellenics, Book II. By L. D. Dowdall, M.A., B.D. 2s.
 Cicero. De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Epistolæ Selectæ. By G. Long, M.A.
 Ovid. Fasti. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. In 3 vols., 2 books in each. 2s. each vol.

- Ovid. Selections. Amores, Tristia, Heroides, Metamorphoses.
By A. J. Maclean, M.A.
Terence. Andria.—Hauton Timorumenos.—Phormio.—Adelphoe.
By Professor Wagner, Ph.D.
Virgil. Professor Conington's edition, abridged in 12 vols.
'The handiest as well as the soundest of modern editions.'

Saturday Review.

PUBLIC SCHOOL SERIES.

A Series of Classical Texts, annotated by well-known Scholars. Cr. 8vo.

- Aristophanes. The Peace. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 4s. 6d.
—— The Acharnians. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 4s. 6d.
—— The Frogs. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 4s. 6d.
Cicero. The Letters to Atticus. Bk. I. By A. Pretor, M.A. 3rd Edition. 4s. 6d.
Demosthenes de Falsa Legatione. By R. Shilleto, M.A. 7th Edition. 6s.
—— The Law of Leptines. By B. W. Beatson, M.A. 3rd Edition. 3s. 6d.
Livy. Book XXI. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Maps, by the Rev. L. D. Dowdall, M.A., B.D. 3s. 6d.
—— Book XXII. Edited, &c., by Rev. L. D. Dowdall, M.A., B.D. 3s. 6d.
Plato. The Apology of Socrates and Crito. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 12th Edition. 3s. 6d. Cheap Edition, limp cloth, 2s. 6d.
—— The Phædo. 9th Edition. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 5s. 6d.
—— The Protagoras. 7th Edition. By W. Wayte, M.A. 4s. 6d.
—— The Euthyphro. 3rd Edition. By G. H. Wells, M.A. 3s.
—— The Euthydemus. By G. H. Wells, M.A. 4s.
—— The Republic. Books I. & II. By G. H. Wells, M.A. 3rd Edition. 5s. 6d.
Plautus. The Aulularia. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 5th Edition. 4s. 6d.
—— The Trinummus. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 5th Edition. 4s. 6d.
—— The Menæchmi. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 2nd Edit. 4s. 6d.
—— The Mostellaria. By Prof. E. A. Sonnenschein. 5s.
Sophocles. The Trachiniae. By A. Pretor, M.A. 4s. 6d.
—— The Oedipus Tyrannus. By B. H. Kennedy, D.D. 5s.
Terence. By W. Wagner, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. 7s. 6d.
Theocritus. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 2nd Edition. 4s. 6d.
Thucydides. Book VI. By T. W. Dougan, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 3s. 6d.

CRITICAL AND ANNOTATED EDITIONS.

- Aristophanis Comoediae. By H. A. Holden, LL.D. 8vo. 2 vols.
Notes, Illustrations, and Maps. 23s. 6d. Plays sold separately.
Cæsar's Seventh Campaign in Gaul, B.C. 52. By Rev. W. C. Compton, M.A., Head Master, Dover College. 2nd Edition, with Map and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s.
Cæpurnius Sciculus. By H. C. Keene, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

- Catullus.** A New Text, with Critical Notes and Introduction by Dr. J. P. Postgate. Foolscap 8vo. 3s.
- Corpus Poetarum Latinorum.** Edited by Walker. 1 vol. 8vo. 18s.
- Livy.** The first five Books. By J. Prendeville. New Edition, revised, and the notes in great part rewritten, by J. H. Freese, M.A. Books I., II., III., IV., and V. 1s. 6d. each.
- Lucan.** The Pharsalia. By C. E. Haskins, M.A., and W. E. Heitland, M.A. Demy 8vo. 14s.
- Lucretius.** With Commentary by H. A. J. Munro. 4th Edition. Vols. I. and II. Introduction, Text, and Notes. 18s. Vol. III. Translation. 6s.
- Ovid.** P. Ovidii Nasonis *Heroides* XIV. By A. Palmer, M.A. 8vo. 6s.
- P. Ovidii Nasonis *Ars Amatoria et Amores*. By the Rev. H. Williams, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- *Metamorphoses*. Book XIII. By Chas. Haines Keene, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- *Epistolarum ex Ponto Liber Primus*. By C. H. Keene, M.A. 3s.
- Propertius.** Sex Aurelii Propertii Carmina. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 8vo. Cloth, 5s.
- Sex Propertii Elegiarum. Libri IV. Recensuit A. Palmer, Collegii Sacrosanctæ et Individuæ Trinitatis juxta Dublinum Socius. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Sophocles.** The Oedipus Tyrannus. By B. H. Kennedy, D.D. Crown 8vo. 8s.
- Thucydides.** The History of the Peloponnesian War. By Richard Shilleto, M.A. Book I. 8vo. 6s. 6d. Book II. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

TRANSLATIONS, SELECTIONS, &c.

- Aeschylus.** Translated into English Prose by F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Translated into English Verse by Anna Swanwick. 4th Edition. Post 8vo. 5s.
- Calpurnius,** The Eclogues of. Latin Text and English Verse. Translation by E. J. L. Scott, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- Horace.** The Odes and Carmen Sæculare. In English Verse by J. Conington, M.A. 11th edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- The Satires and Epistles. In English Verse by J. Conington, M.A. 8th edition. 3s. 6d.
- Plato.** Gorgias. Translated by E. M. Cope, M.A. 8vo. 2nd Ed. 7s.
- Prudentius,** Selections from. Text, with Verse Translation, Introduction, &c., by the Rev. F. St. J. Thackeray. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Sophocles.** Oedipus Tyrannus. By Dr. Kennedy. 1s.
- The Dramas of. Rendered into English Verse by Sir George Young, Bart., M.A. 8vo. 12s. 6d.
- Theocritus.** In English Verse, by C. S. Calverley, M.A. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Translations into English and Latin.** By C. S. Calverley, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Translations into English, Latin, and Greek.** By R. C. Jebb, Litt.D., H. Jackson, Litt.D., and W. E. Currey, M.A. Second Edition. 8s.
- Folia Silvulæ, sive Eclogæ Poetarum Anglicorum in Latinum et Græcum conversæ.** By H. A. Holden, LL.D. 8vo. Vol. II. 4s. 6d.
- Sabrinæ Corolla in Hortulis Regiæ Scholæ Salopiensis Contextuerunt Tres Viri Floribus Legendis.** Fourth Edition, thoroughly Revised and Rearranged. Large post 8vo. 10s. 6d.

LOWER FORM SERIES.*With Notes and Vocabularies.*

- Virgil's Æneid.** Book I. Abridged from Conington's Edition. With Vocabulary by W. F. R. Shilleto. 1s. 6d.
- Cæsar de Bello Gallico.** Books I., II., and III. With Notes by George Long, M.A., and Vocabulary by W. F. R. Shilleto. 1s. 6d. each.
- Horace.** Book I. Maclean's Edition, with Vocabulary by A. H. Dennis. 1s. 6d.
- Frost. Eclogæ Latinæ; or, First Latin Reading-Book,** with English Notes and a Dictionary. By the late Rev. P. Frost, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **A Latin Verse-Book.** An Introductory Work on Hexameters and Pentameters. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. Key (for Tutors only), 5s.
- **Analecta Græca Minora,** with Introductory Sentences, English Notes, and a Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.
- Wells. Tales for Latin Prose Composition.** With Notes and Vocabulary. By G. H. Wells, M.A. 2s.
- Stedman. Latin Vocabularies for Repetition.** By A. M. M. Stedman, M.A. 2nd Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **Easy Latin Passages for Unseen Translation.** Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **Greek Testament Selections.** 2nd Edition, enlarged, with Notes and Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

CLASSICAL TABLES.

- Latin Accidence.** By the Rev. P. Frost, M.A. 1s.
- Latin Versification.** 1s.
- Notabilia Quædam; or the Principal Tenses of most of the** Irregular Greek Verbs and Elementary Greek, Latin, and French Construction. New Edition. 1s.
- Richmond Rules for the Ovidian Distich, &c.** By J. Tate, M.A. 1s.
- The Principles of Latin Syntax.** 1s.
- Greek Verbs.** A Catalogue of Verbs, Irregular and Defective. By J. S. Baird, T.C.D. 8th Edition. 2s. 6d.
- Greek Accents (Notes on).** By A. Barry, D.D. New Edition. 1s.
- Homeric Dialect.** Its Leading Forms and Peculiarities. By J. S. Baird, T.C.D. New Edition, by W. G. Rutherford, LL.D. 1s.
- Greek Accidence.** By the Rev. P. Frost, M.A. New Edition. 1s.

LATIN AND GREEK CLASS-BOOKS.*See also Lower Form Series.*

- Baddeley. Auxilia Latina.** A Series of Progressive Latin Exercises. By M. J. B. Baddeley, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. Part I., Accidence. 5th Edition. 2s. Part II. 5th Edition. 2s. Key to Part II., 2s. 6d.
- Baker. Latin Prose for London Students.** By Arthur Baker, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.
- Church. Latin Prose Lessons.** By Prof. Church, M.A. 9th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Collins. Latin Exercises and Grammar Papers.** By T. Collins, M.A., H. M. of the Latin School, Newport, Salop. 7th Edit. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- **Unseen Papers in Latin Prose and Verse.** With Examination Questions. 6th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

- Collins.** Unseen Papers in Greek Prose and Verse. With Examination Questions. 3rd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.
- **Easy Translations from Nepos, Cæsar, Cicero, Livy, &c.,** for Retranslation into Latin. With Notes. 2s.
- Compton.** Rudiments of Attic Construction and Idiom. By the Rev. W. C. Compton, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. 3s.
- Clapin.** A Latin Primer. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. 1s.
- Frost.** *Eclogæ Latinæ*; or, First Latin Reading Book. With Notes and Vocabulary by the late Rev. P. Frost, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **Materials for Latin Prose Composition.** By the late Rev. P. Frost, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. Key (for Tutors only) 4s.
- **Materials for Greek Prose Composition.** New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. Key (for Tutors only), 5s.
- Harkness.** A Latin Grammar. By A. Harkness. Post 8vo. 6s.
- Holden.** *Foliorum Silvula. Part I.* Passages for Translation into Latin Elegiac and Heroic Verse. By H. A. Holden, LL.D. 12th Edit. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- *Foliorum Silvula. Part II.* Select Passages for Translation into Latin Lyric and Comic Iambic Verse. 3rd Ed. Post 8vo. 5s.
- *Foliorum Centuriæ.* Select Passages for Translation into Latin and Greek Prose. 10th Edition. Post 8vo. 8s.
- Jebb, Jackson, and Currey.** Extracts for Translation in Greek, Latin, and English. By R. C. Jebb, Litt. D., LL.D., H. Jackson, Litt. D., and W. E. Currey, M.A. 4s. 6d.
- Key.** A Latin Grammar. By T. H. Key, M.A., F.R.S. 6th Thousand. Post 8vo. 8s.
- **A Short Latin Grammar for Schools.** 16th Edition. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Mason.** Analytical Latin Exercises. By C. P. Mason, B.A. 4th Edition. Part I., 1s. 6d. Part II., 2s. 6d.
- Nettleship.** Passages for Translation into Latin Prose. By Prof. H. Nettleship, M.A. 3s. Key (for Tutors only), 4s. 6d.
‘The introduction ought to be studied by every teacher.’—*Guardian*.
- Paley.** Greek Particles and their Combinations according to Attic Usage. A Short Treatise. By F. A. Paley, M.A., LL.D. 2s. 6d.
- Penrose.** Latin Elegiac Verse, Easy Exercises in. By the Rev. J. Penrose. New Edition. 2s. (Key, 3s. 6d.)
- Preston.** Greek Verse Composition. By G. Preston, M.A. 5th Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- Pruen.** Latin Examination Papers. Comprising Lower, Middle, and Upper School Papers, and a number of Woolwich and Sandhurst Standards. By G. G. Pruen, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Seager.** *Faciliora.* An Elementary Latin Book on a new principle. By the Rev. J. L. Seager, M.A. 2s. 6d.
- Stedman.** First Latin Lessons. By A. M. M. Stedman, M.A. Second Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 2s.
- **First Latin Reader.** With Notes adapted to the Shorter Latin Primer and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **Easy Latin Exercises on the Syntax of the Shorter and Revised Latin Primers.** With Vocabulary. 3rd Edition. Cr. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- **Notanda Quædam.** Miscellaneous Latin Exercises on Common Rules and Idioms. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With vocabulary 2s.
- **First Greek Lessons.** [*In preparation.*]
- **Easy Greek Passages for Unseen Translation.** Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Stedman. *Easy Greek Exercises on Elementary Syntax.*

[In preparation.]

——— *Greek Vocabularies for Repetition.* Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Thackeray. *Anthologia Græca.* A Selection of Greek Poetry, with Notes. By F. St. John Thackeray. 5th Edition. 16mo. 4s. 6d.

——— *Anthologia Latina.* A Selection of Latin Poetry, from Nævius to Røethius, with Notes. By Rev. F. St. J. Thackeray. 5th Edit. 16mo. 4s. 6d.

Donaldson. *The Theatre of the Greeks.* By J. W. Donaldson, D.D. 10th Edition. Post 8vo. 5s.

Keightley. *The Mythology of Greece and Italy.* By Thomas Keightley. 4th Edition. Revised by L. Schmitz, Ph.D., LL.D. 5s.

Mayor. *A Guide to the Choice of Classical Books.* By J. B. Mayor, M.A. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Teuffel. *A History of Roman Literature.* By Prof. W. S. Teuffel. 5th Edition, revised by Prof. L. Schwabe, and translated by Prof. G. C. W. Warr, of King's College. 2 vols. medium 8vo. 15s. each.

CAMBRIDGE MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

Arithmetic for Schools. By C. Pendlebury, M.A. 6th Edition, with or without answers, 4s. 6d. Or in two parts, 2s. 6d. each. Part 2 contains the *Commercial Arithmetic*. Key to Part 2, for tutors only, 7s. 6d. net.

EXAMPLES (nearly 8000), without answers, in a separate vol. 3s.

In use at St. Paul's, Winchester, Wellington, Marlborough, Charterhouse, Merchant Taylors', Christ's Hospital, Sherborne, Shrewsbury, &c. &c.

Algebra. *Choice and Chance.* By W. A. Whitworth, M.A. 4th Edition. 6s.

Euclid. Newly translated from the Greek Text, with Supplementary Propositions, Chapters on Modern Geometry, and numerous Exercises. By Horace Deighton, M.A., Head Master of Harrison College, Barbados. New Edition, Revised, with Symbols and Abbreviations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. Key, for tutors only, 5s. net.

Book I. 1s.

Books I. to III. ... 2s. 6d.

Books I. and II. ... 1s. 6d.

Books III. and IV. ... 1s. 6d.

Euclid. *Exercises on Euclid and in Modern Geometry.* By J. McDowell, M.A. 4th Edition. 6s.

Elementary Trigonometry. By J. M. Dyer, M.A., and Rev. R. H. Whitcombe, M.A., Assistant Masters, Eton College. 2nd Edit. 4s. 6d.

Trigonometry. *Plane.* By Rev. T. Vyvyan, M.A. 3rd Edit. 3s. 6d.

Geometrical Conic Sections. By H. G. Willis, M.A. 5s.

Conics. *The Elementary Geometry of.* 7th Edition, revised and enlarged. By C. Taylor, D.D. 4s. 6d.

Solid Geometry. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 4th Edit. revised. 6s.

Geometrical Optics. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 3rd Edition. 4s.

Rigid Dynamics. By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 4s.

Elementary Dynamics. By W. Garnett, M.A., D.C.L. 5th Ed. 6s.

Dynamics. *A Treatise on.* By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2nd Edition. 7s. 6d.

Heat. *An Elementary Treatise.* By W. Garnett, M.A., D.C.L. 5th Edition, revised and enlarged. 4s. 6d.

Elementary Physics. *Examples in.* By W. Gallatly, M.A. 4s.

- Elementary Hydrostatics.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 15th Edition, rewritten. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. Key 5s. net.
- Hydromechanics.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 5th Edition. Part I. Hydrostatics. 5s.
- Mathematical Examples.** By J. M. Dyer, M.A., Eton College, and R. Prowde Smith, M.A., Cheltenham College. 6s.
- Mechanics. Problems in Elementary.** By W. Walton, M.A. 6s.
- Notes on Roulettes and Glissettes.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2nd Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5s.

CAMBRIDGE SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS.

A Series of Elementary Treatises for the use of Students.

- Arithmetic.** By Rev. C. Elsee, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 14th Edit. 3s. 6d.
- By A. Wrigley, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- A Progressive Course of Examples. With Answers. By J. Watson, M.A. 7th Edition, revised. By W. P. Goudie, B.A. 2s. 6d.
- Algebra.** By the Rev. C. Elsee, M.A. 8th Edit. 4s.
- Progressive Course of Examples. By Rev. W. F. M'Michael, M.A., and R. Prowde Smith, M.A. 4th Edition. 3s. 6d. With Answers. 4s. 6d.
- Plane Astronomy.** An Introduction to. By P. T. Main, M.A. 6th Edition, revised. 4s.
- Conic Sections treated Geometrically.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D. 8th Edition. 4s. 6d. Solution to the Examples. 4s.
- Enunciations and Figures Separately. 1s.
- Statics, Elementary.** By Rev. H. Goodwin, D.D. 2nd Edit. 3s.
- Mensuration, An Elementary Treatise on.** By B. T. Moore, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- Newton's Principia,** The First Three Sections of, with an Appendix; and the Ninth and Eleventh Sections. By J. H. Evans, M.A. 5th Edition, by P. T. Main, M.A. 4s.
- Analytical Geometry for Schools.** By T. G. Vyvyan. 5th Edit. 4s. 6d.
- Greek Testament, Companion to the.** By A. C. Barrett, M.A. 5th Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- Book of Common Prayer, An Historical and Explanatory Treatise on the.** By W. G. Humphry, B.D. 6th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Music, Text-book of.** By Professor H. C. Banister. 15th Edition, revised. 5s.
- Concise History of. By Rev. H. G. Bonavia Hunt, Mus. Doc. Dublin. 12th Edition, revised. 3s. 6d.

ARITHMETIC. *(See also the two foregoing Series.)*

- Elementary Arithmetic.** By Charles Pendlebury, M.A., Senior Mathematical Master, St. Paul's School; and W. S. Beard, F.R.G.S., Assistant Master, Christ's Hospital. With 2500 Examples, Written and Oral. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d. With or without Answers.
- Arithmetic, Examination Papers in.** Consisting of 140 papers, each containing 7 questions. 357 more difficult problems follow. A collection of recent Public Examination Papers are appended. By C. Pendlebury, M.A. 2s. 6d. Key, for Masters only, 5s.
- Graduated Exercises in Addition (Simple and Compound).** By W. S. Beard, C. S. Department Rochester Mathematical School. 1s. For Candidates for Commercial Certificates and Civil Service Exams.

BOOK-KEEPING.

- Book-keeping Papers**, set at various Public Examinations. Collected and Written by J. T. Medhurst, Lecturer on Book-keeping in the City of London College. 2nd Edition. 3s.
- A Text-Book of the Principles and Practice of Book-keeping.** By Professor A. W. Thomson, B.Sc., Royal Agricultural College, Cirencester. Crown 8vo. 5s.
- Double Entry Elucidated.** By B. W. Foster. 14th edition. Fcap. 4to. 3s. 6d.
- A New Manual of Book-keeping**, combining the Theory and Practice, with Specimens of a set of Books. By Phillip Crellin, Accountant. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Book-keeping for Teachers and Pupils.** By Phillip Crellin. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d. Key, 2s. net.

GEOMETRY AND EUCLID.

- Euclid. Books I.-VI. and part of XI. A New Translation.** By H. Deighton. (See p. 8.)
- **The Definitions of, with Explanations and Exercises, and an Appendix of Exercises on the First Book.** By R. Webb, M.A. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- **Book I. With Notes and Exercises for the use of Preparatory Schools, &c.** By Braithwaite Arnett, M.A. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- **The First Two Books explained to Beginners.** By C. P. Mason, B.A. 2nd Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- The Enunciations and Figures to Euclid's Elements.** By Rev. J. Brasse, D.D. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. Without the Figures, 6d.
- Exercises on Euclid.** By J. McDowell, M.A. (See p. 8.)
- Mensuration.** By B. T. Moore, M.A. 3s. 6d. (See p. 9.)
- Geometrical Conic Sections.** By H. G. Willis, M.A. (See p. 8.)
- Geometrical Conic Sections.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D. (See p. 9.)
- Elementary Geometry of Conics.** By C. Taylor, D.D. (See p. 8.)
- An Introduction to Ancient and Modern Geometry of Conics.** By C. Taylor, D.D., Master of St. John's Coll., Camb. 8vo. 15s.
- An Introduction to Analytical Plane Geometry.** By W. P. Turnbull, M.A. 8vo. 12s.
- Problems on the Principles of Plane Co-ordinate Geometry.** By W. Walton, M.A. 8vo. 16s.
- Trilinear Co-ordinates, and Modern Analytical Geometry of Two Dimensions.** By W. A. Whitworth, M.A. 8vo. 16s.
- An Elementary Treatise on Solid Geometry.** By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 4th Edition revised. Cr. 8vo. 6s.
- Elliptic Functions, Elementary Treatise on.** By A. Cayley, D.Sc. Demy 8vo. [New Edition Preparing.]

TRIGONOMETRY.

- Trigonometry.** By Rev. T. G. Vyvyan. 3s. 6d. (See p. 8.)
- Trigonometry, Elementary.** By J. M. Dyer, M.A., and Rev. R. H. Whitcombe, M.A., Asst. Masters, Eton College. 4s. 6d. (See p. 8.)
- Trigonometry, Examination Papers in.** By G. H. Ward, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

MECHANICS & NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

- Statics, Elementary.** By H. Goodwin, D.D. Fcap. 8vo. 2nd Edition. 3s.
- Dynamics, A Treatise on Elementary.** By W. Garnett, M.A., D.C.L. 5th Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- Dynamics, Rigid.** By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 4s.
- Dynamics, A Treatise on.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 7s. 6d.
- Elementary Mechanics, Problems in.** By W. Walton, M.A. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- Theoretical Mechanics, Problems in.** By W. Walton, M.A. 3rd Edition. Demy 8vo. 16s.
- Structural Mechanics.** By R. M. Parkinson, Assoc. M.I.C.E. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- Elementary Mechanics. Stages I. and II.** By J. C. Horobin, B.A. 1s. 6d. each. [Stage III. preparing.]
- Theoretical Mechanics. Division I. (for Science and Art Examinations).** By J. C. Horobin, B.A. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Hydrostatics.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D. Cr. 8vo. 15th Edit. 4s. 6d.
- Hydromechanics, A Treatise on.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 8vo. 5th Edition, revised. Part I. Hydrostatics. 5s.
- Hydrodynamics, A Treatise on.** Vol. I., 10s. 6d.; Vol. II., 12s. 6d. A. B. Basset, M.A., F.R.S.
- Hydrodynamics and Sound, An Elementary Treatise on.** By A. B. Basset, M.A., F.R.S. Demy 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Physical Optics, A Treatise on.** By A. B. Basset, M.A., F.R.S. Demy 8vo. 16s.
- Optics, Geometrical.** By W. S. Aldis, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3rd Edition. 4s.
- Double Refraction, A Chapter on Fresnel's Theory of.** By W. S. Aldis, M.A. 8vo. 2s.
- Roulettes and Glisettes.** By W. H. Besant, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2nd Edition, 5s.
- Heat, An Elementary Treatise on.** By W. Garnett, M.A., D.C.L. Crown 8vo. 5th Edition. 4s. 6d.
- Elementary Physics, Examples and Examination Papers in.** By W. Gallatly, M.A. 4s.
- Newton's Principia, The First Three Sections of, with an Appendix; and the Ninth and Eleventh Sections.** By J. H. Evans, M.A. 5th Edition. Edited by P. T. Main, M.A. 4s.
- Astronomy, An Introduction to Plane.** By P. T. Main, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 6th Edition. 4s.
- Mathematical Examples. Pure and Mixed.** By J. M. Dyer, M.A., and R. Prowde Smith, M.A. 6s.
- Pure Mathematics and Natural Philosophy, A Compendium of Facts and Formulæ in.** By G. R. Smalley. 2nd Edition, revised by J. McDowell, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.
- Elementary Course of Mathematics.** By H. Goodwin, D.D. 6th Edition. 8vo. 16s.
- A Collection of Examples and Problems in Arithmetic, Algebra, Geometry, Logarithms, Trigonometry, Conic Sections, Mechanics, &c., with Answers.** By Rev. A. Wrigley. 20th Thousand. 8s. 6d. Key. 10s. 6d.

FOREIGN CLASSICS.

A Series for use in Schools, with English Notes, grammatical and explanatory, and renderings of difficult idiomatic expressions.

Fcap. 8vo.

- Schillers's Wallenstein. By Dr. A. Buchheim. 6th Edit. 5s.
Or the Lager and Piccolomini, 2s. 6d. Wallenstein's Tod, 2s. 6d.
- Maid of Orleans. By Dr. W. Wagner. 3rd Edit. 1s. 6d.
- Maria Stuart. By V. Kastner. 3rd Edition. 1s. 6d.
- Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea. By E. Bell, M.A., and E. Wölfel. New Edition, Revised. 1s. 6d.
- German Ballads, from Uhland, Goethe, and Schiller. By C. L. Bielefeld. 5th Edition. 1s. 6d.
- Charles XII., par Voltaire. By L. Direy. 7th Edition. 1s. 6d.
- Aventures de Télémaque, par Fénelon. By C. J. Delille. 4th Edition. 2s. 6d.
- Select Fables of La Fontaine. By F. E. A. Gasc. 19th Edit. 1s. 6d.
- Picciola, by X. B. Saintine. By Dr. Dubuc. 16th Thousand. 1s. 6d.
- Lamartine's Le Tailleur de Pierres de Saint-Point. By J. Boiello, 6th Thousand. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- Italian Primer. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1s.

FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.

- French Grammar for Public Schools. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 13th Edition. 2s. 6d. Key to Exercises 3s. 6d.
- French Primer. By Rev. A. C. Clapin, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 9th Ed. 1s.
- Primer of French Philology. By Rev. A. C. Clapin. Fcap. 8vo. 6th Edit. 1s.
- Le Nouveau Trésor; or, French Student's Companion. By M. E. S. 19th Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- French Papers for the Prelim. Army Exams. Collected by J. F. Davis, D.Lit. 2s. 6d.
- French Examination Papers in Miscellaneous Grammar and Idioms. Compiled by A. M. M. Stedman, M.A. 4th Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. Key. 5s. (For Teachers or Private Students only.)
- Manual of French Prosody. By Arthur Gosset, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s.
- Lexicon of Conversational French. By A. Holloway. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

PROF. A. BARRÈRE'S FRENCH COURSE.

- Junior Graduated French Course. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.
- Elements of French Grammar and First Steps in Idiom. Crown 8vo. 2s.
- Précis of Comparative French Grammar. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Récits Militaires. From 1792 to 1870. With English Notes, for Candidates for the Army Exams. Crown 8vo. 3s.

F. E. A. GASC'S FRENCH COURSE.

- First French Book. Crown 8vo. 116th Thousand. 1s.
 Second French Book. 52nd Thousand. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
 Key to First and Second French Books. 5th Edit. Fcp. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
 French Fables for Beginners, in Prose, with Index. 16th Thousand.
 12mo. 1s. 6d.
 Select Fables of La Fontaine. 18th Thousand. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
 Histoires Amusantes et Instructives. With Notes. 17th Thousand.
 Fcap. 8vo. 2s.
 Practical Guide to Modern French Conversation. 18th Thousand.
 Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
 French Poetry for the Young. With Notes. 5th Ed. Fcp. 8vo. 8s.
 Materials for French Prose Composition; or, Selections from
 the best English Prose Writers. 21st Thous. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. Key, 6s.
 Prosateurs Contemporains. With Notes. 11th Edition, re-
 vised. 12mo. 3s. 6d.
 Le Petit Compagnon; a French Talk-Book for Little Children.
 14th Edition. 16mo. 1s. 6d.
 An Improved Modern Pocket Dictionary of the French and
 English Languages. 47th Thousand. 16mo. 2s. 6d.
 Modern French-English and English-French Dictionary. 5th
 Edition, revised. 10s. 6d. In use at Harrow, Rugby, Westminster,
 Shrewsbury, Radley, &c.
 The A B C Tourist's French Interpreter of all Immediate
 Wants. By F. E. A. Gasc. 1s.

MODERN FRENCH AUTHORS.

Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by JAMES BOÏELLE, Senior
 French Master at Dulwich College.

- Daudet's *La Belle Nivernaise*. 2s. 6d. *For Beginners*.
 Clarétie. *Pierrille*, by Jules Clarétie. 2s. 6d. *For Beginners*.
 Hugo's *Bug Jargal*. 3s. *For Advanced Students*.
 Balzac's *Ursule Mirouët*. 3s. *For Advanced Students*.

GOMBERT'S FRENCH DRAMA.

Being a Selection of the best Tragedies and Comedies of Molière.
 Racine, Corneille, and Voltaire. With Arguments and Notes by A.
 Gombert. New Edition, revised by F. E. A. Gasc. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. each;
 sewed, 6d.

CONTENTS.

MOLIÈRE:—*Le Misanthrope*. *L'Avare*. *Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme*. *Le Tartuffe*. *Le Malade Imaginaire*. *Les Femmes Savantes*. *Les Fourberies de Scapin*. *Les Précieuses Ridicules*. *L'Ecole des Femmes*. *L'Ecole des Maris*. *Le Médecin malgré Lui*.

RACINE:—*Phédre*. *Esther*. *Athalie*. *Iphigénie*. *Les Plaideurs*. *La Thébaïde*; ou, *Les Frères Ennemis*. *Andromaque*. *Britannicus*.

P. CORNEILLE:—*Le Cid*. *Horace*. *Cinna*. *Polyeucte*.

VOLTAIRE:—*Zaïre*.

GERMAN CLASS-BOOKS.

Materials for German Prose Composition. By Dr. Buchheim. 14th Edition. Fcap. 4s. 6d. Key, Parts I. and II., 3s. Parts III. and IV.,
Goethe's Faust. Part I. Text, Hayward's Prose Translation, and Notes. Edited by Dr. Buchheim. 5s.

German. The Candidate's Vade Mecum. Five Hundred Easy Sentences and Idioms. By an Army Tutor. Cloth, 1s. *For Army Exams.*
Wortfolge, or Rules and Exercises on the Order of Words in German Sentences. By Dr. F. Stock. 1s. 6d.

A German Grammar for Public Schools. By the Rev. A. C. Clapin and F. Holl Müller. 5th Edition. Fcap. 2s. 6d.

A German Primer, with Exercises. By Rev. A. C. Clapin. 2nd Edition. 1s.

Kotzebue's Der Gefangene. With Notes by Dr. W. Stromberg. 1s.

German Examination Papers in Grammar and Idiom. By R. J. Morich. 2nd Edition. 2s. 6d. Key for Tutors only, 5s.

By FRZ. LANGE, Ph.D., Professor R.M.A., Woolwich, Examiner in German to the Coll. of Preceptors, and also at the Victoria University, Manchester.

A Concise German Grammar. In Three Parts. Part I., Elementary, 2s. Part II., Intermediate, 2s. Part III., Advanced, 3s. 6d.

German Examination Course. Elementary, 2s. Intermediate, 2s. Advanced, 1s. 6d.

German Reader. Elementary, 1s. 6d. Advanced, 3s.

MODERN GERMAN SCHOOL CLASSICS.

Small Crown 8vo.

Hey's Fabeln Für Kinder. Edited, with Vocabulary, by Prof. F. Lange, Ph.D. *Printed in Roman characters.* 1s. 6d.

—— The same with Phonetic Transcription of Text, &c. 2s.

Benedix's Dr. Wespe. Edited by F. Lange, Ph.D. 2s. 6d.

Hoffman's Meister Martin, der Küfner. By Prof. F. Lange, Ph.D. 1s. 6d.

Heyse's Hans Lange. By A. A. Macdonell, M.A., Ph.D. 2s.

Auerbach's Auf Wache, and Roquette's Der Gefrorene Kuss. By A. A. Macdonell, M.A. 2s.

Moser's Der Bibliothekar. By Prof. F. Lange, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. 2s.

Ebers' Eine Frage. By F. Storr, B.A. 2s.

Freytag's Die Journalisten. By Prof. F. Lange, Ph.D. 2nd Edition, revised. 2s. 6d.

Gutzkow's Zopf und Schwert. By Prof. F. Lange, Ph.D. 2s.

German Epic Tales. Edited by Karl Neuhaus, Ph.D. 2s. 6d.

Scheffel's Ekkehard. Edited by Dr. H. Hager. 3s.

DIVINITY.

BY THE LATE REV. F. H. SCRIVENER, A.M., LL.D., D.C.L.

Novum Testamentum Græce. Editio major. Being an enlarged Edition, containing the Readings of Bishop Westcott and Dr. Hort, and those adopted by the Revisers, &c. 7s. 6d. (*For other Editions see page 3.*)

A Plain Introduction to the Criticism of the New Testament. With Forty Facsimiles from Ancient Manuscripts. 4th Edition, revised by Rev. E. Miller, M.A. 8vo. [*In the press.*]

Codex Bezae Cantabrigiensis. 4to. 10s. 6d.

The New Testament for English Readers. By the late H. Alford, D.D. Vol. I. Part I. 3rd Edit. 12s. Vol. I. Part II. 2nd Edit. 10s. 6d. Vol. II. Part I. 2nd Edit. 16s. Vol. II. Part II. 2nd Edit. 16s.

The Greek Testament. By the late H. Alford, D.D. Vol. I. 7th Edit. 1l. 8s. Vol. II. 8th Edit. 1l. 4s. Vol. III. 10th Edit. 18s. Vol. IV. Part I. 5th Edit. 18s. Vol. IV. Part II. 10th Edit. 14s. Vol. IV. 1l. 12s.

Companion to the Greek Testament. By A. C. Barrett, M.A. 5th Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

Guide to the Textual Criticism of the New Testament. By Rev. E. Miller, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s.

The Book of Psalms. A New Translation, with Introductions, &c. By the Rt. Rev. J. J. Stewart Perowne, D.D., Bishop of Worcester. 8vo. Vol. I. 8th Edition, 18s. Vol. II. 8th Edit. 16s.

—— **Abridged for Schools.** 7th Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

History of the Articles of Religion. By C. H. Hardwick. 3rd Edition. Post 8vo. 5s.

History of the Creeds. By Rev. Professor Lumby, D.D. 3rd Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Pearson on the Creed. Carefully printed from an early edition. With Analysis and Index by E. Walford, M.A. Post 8vo. 5s.

Liturgies and Offices of the Church, for the Use of English Readers, in Illustration of the Book of Common Prayer. By the Rev. Edward Burbidge, M.A. Crown 8vo. 9s.

An Historical and Explanatory Treatise on the Book of Common Prayer. By Rev. W. G. Humphry, B.D. 6th Edition, enlarged. Small Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.; Cheap Edition, 1s.

A Commentary on the Gospels, Epistles, and Acts of the Apostles. By Rev. W. Denton, A.M. New Edition. 7 vols. 8vo. 9s. each.

Notes on the Catechism. By Rt. Rev. Bishop Barry. 9th Edit. Fcap. 2s.

The Winton Church Catechist. Questions and Answers on the Teaching of the Church Catechism. By the late Rev. J. S. B. Monsell, LL.D. 4th Edition. Cloth, 3s.; or in Four Parts, sewed.

The Church Teacher's Manual of Christian Instruction. By Rev. M. F. Sadler. 43rd Thousand. 2s. 6d.

TECHNOLOGICAL HANDBOOKS.

Edited by SIR H. TRUEMAN WOOD, Secretary of the Society of Arts.

Dyeing and Tissue Printing. By W. Crookes, F.R.S. 5s.

Glass Manufacture. By Henry Chance, M.A.; H. J. Powell, B.A.; and H. G. Harris. 3s. 6d.

Cotton Spinning. By Richard Marsden, of Manchester. 4th Edition, revised. 6s. 6d.

Chemistry of Coal-Tar Colours. By Prof. Benedikt, and Dr. Knecht of Bradford Technical College. 2nd Edition, enlarged. 6s. 6d.

Woollen and Worsted Cloth Manufacture. By Professor Roberts Beaumont, The Yorkshire College, Leeds. 2nd Edition. 7s. 6d.

Silk Dyeing. By G. H. Hurst, F.C.S. With numerous coloured specimens. 7s. 6d.

Cotton Weaving. By R. Marsden. *[Preparing.]*

Bookbinding. By J. W. Zaehnsdorf, with eight plates and many illustrations. 5s.

Printing. By C. T. Jacobi, Manager of the Chiswick Press. 5s.

Plumbing. By S. Stevens Hellyer. 5s.

Soap Manufacture. By W. Lawrence Gadd, F.I.C., F.C.S. 5s.

BELL'S AGRICULTURAL SERIES.

The Farm and the Dairy. By Prof. Sheldon. 2s. 6d.

Soils and their Properties. By Dr. Fream. 2s. 6d.

The Diseases of Crops. By Dr. Griffiths. 2s. 6d.

Manures and their Uses. By Dr. Griffiths. 2s. 6d.

Tillage and Implements. By Prof. W. J. Malden. 2s. 6d.

Fruit Culture. By J. Cheal, F.R.H.S. 2s. 6d.

Others in preparation.

HISTORY.

Modern Europe. By Dr. T. H. Dyer. 2nd Edition, revised and continued. 5 vols. Demy 8vo. 2l. 12s. 6d.

The Decline of the Roman Republic. By G. Long. 5 vols. 8vo. 5s. each.

Select Historical Documents of the Middle Ages. Collected and Translated by Ernest F. Henderson, Ph.D. Small post 8vo. 5s.

The Intermediate History of England. For Army and Civil Service Candidates. By H. F. Wright, M.A., LL.M. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Historical Maps of England. By C. H. Pearson. Folio. 3rd Edition revised. 31s. 6d.

England in the Fifteenth Century. By the late Rev. W. Denton, M.A. Demy 8vo. 12s.

Feudalism: Its Rise, Progress, and Consequences. By Judge Abdy. 7s. 6d.

History of England, 1800-46. By Harriet Martineau, with new and copious Index. 5 vols. 3s. 6d. each.

A Practical Synopsis of English History. By A. Bowes. 9th Edition, revised. 8vo. 1s.

Lives of the Queens of England. By A. Strickland. Library Edition, 8 vols. 7s. 6d. each. Cheaper Edition, 6 vols. 5s. each. Abridged Edition, 1 vol. 6s. 6d. Mary Queen of Scots, 2 vols. 5s. each. Tudor and Stuart Princesses, 5s.

History and Geography Examination Papers. Compiled by C. H. Spence, M.A., Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

For other Historical Books, see Catalogue of Bohn's Libraries, sent free on application.

PSYCHOLOGY AND ETHICS.

The Student's Manual of Psychology and Ethics. By F. Ryland, M.A., late Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge. Specially adapted for London Examinations. Fifth Edition, with Lists of Books for Students, and Examination Papers. 3s. 6d.

Ethics: An Introductory Manual for University Students. By F. Ryland, M.A. 3s. 6d

DICTIONARIES.

WEBSTER'S INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY of the

English Language. Including Scientific, Technical, and Biblical Words and Terms, with their Significations, Pronunciations, Etymologies, Alternative Spellings, Derivations, Synonyms, and numerous illustrative Quotations, with various valuable literary Appendices and 83 extra pages of Illustrations grouped and classified, rendering the work a COMPLETE LITERARY AND SCIENTIFIC REFERENCE-BOOK. *New Edition* (1890). Thoroughly revised and enlarged under the supervision of Noah Porter, D.D., LL.D.

1 vol. (2118 pages, 3500 woodcuts), 4to. cloth, 31s. 6d.; half calf, 2l. 2s.; half russiā, 2l. 5s.; calf, 2l. 8s.; full sheep with patent marginal Index, 2l. 8s.; or in 2 vols. cloth, 1l. 14s.; half russiā, 2l. 18s.

Prospectuses, with specimen pages, sent free on application.



Kluge's Etymological Dictionary of the German Language. Translated from the 4th German edition by J. F. Davis, D.Lit., M.A. (Lond.). Crown 4to. half buckram, 18s.

Dictionary of the French and English Languages, with more than Fifteen Thousand New Words, Senses, &c. By F. E. A. Gasc. With New Supplements. 5th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. 10s. 6d. IN USE AT HARROW, RUGBY, SHREWSBURY, &c.

Pocket Dictionary of the French and English Languages. By F. E. A. Gasc. Containing more than Five Thousand Modern and Current Words, Senses, and Idiomatic Phrases and Renderings, not found in any other dictionary of the two languages. New edition, with additions and corrections. 49th Thousand. 16mo. Cloth, 2s. 6d.

ENGLISH CLASS-BOOKS.

- Comparative Grammar and Philology.** By A. C. Price, M.A., Assistant Master at Leeds Grammar School. 2s. 6d.
- The Elements of the English Language.** By E. Adams, Ph.D. 25th Edition. Revised by J. F. Davis, D.Lit., M.A. Post 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- The Rudiments of English Grammar and Analysis.** By E. Adams, Ph.D. 19th Thousand. Fcap. 8vo. 1s.
- A Concise System of Parsing.** By L. E. Adams, B.A. 1s. 6d.
- Examples for Grammatical Analysis (Verse and Prose).** Selected, &c., by F. Edwards. New edition. Cloth, 1s.
- Questions for Examination in English Literature.** With brief hints on the study of English. By Professor W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Ten Brink's History of English Literature.** Vol. I. Early English Literature (to Wiclif). Translated by H. M. Kennedy. 3s. 6d. Vol. II. (Wiclif, Chaucer, Earliest Drama, Renaissance). Translated by W. Clarke Robinson, Ph.D. 3s. 6d.
- Notes on Shakespeare's Plays.** By T. Duff Barnett, B.A. *MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM*, 1s.; *JULIUS CÆSAR*, 1s.; *HENRY V.*, 1s.; *TEMPEST*, 1s.; *MACBETH*, 1s.; *MERCHANT OF VENICE*, 1s.; *HAMLET*, 1s.; *RICHARD II.*, 1s.; *KING JOHN* 1s.; *KING LEAR*, 1s.; *CORIOLANUS*, 1s.

GRAMMARS.

By C. P. MASON, Fellow of Univ. Coll. London.

- First Notions of Grammar for Young Learners.** Fcap. 8vo. 75th Thousand. Revised and enlarged. Cloth. 1s.
- First Steps in English Grammar for Junior Classes.** Demy 18mo. 54th Thousand. 1s.
- Outlines of English Grammar for the Use of Junior Classes.** 87th Thousand. Crown 8vo. 2s.
- English Grammar, including the Principles of Grammatical Analysis.** 34th Edition. 143rd Thousand. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Practice and Help in the Analysis of Sentences.** 2s.
- A Shorter English Grammar, with copious Exercises.** 49th to 53rd Thousand. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- English Grammar Practice, being the Exercises separately.** 1s.
- Code Standard Grammars.** Parts I. and II., 2d. each. Parts III., IV., and V., 3d. each.

Notes of Lessons, their Preparation, &c. By José Rickard, Park Lane Board School, Leeds, and A. H. Taylor, Rodley Board School, Leeds. 2nd Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A Syllabic System of Teaching to Read, combining the advantages of the 'Phonic' and the 'Look-and-Say' Systems. Crown 8vo. 1s.

Practical Hints on Teaching. By Rev. J. Menet, M.A. 6th Edit. revised. Crown 8vo. paper, 2s.

Test Lessons in Dictation. 4th Edition. Paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Picture School-Books. With numerous Illustrations. Royal 16mo.

The Infant's Primer. 3d.—*School Primer.* 6d.—*School Reader.* By J. Tilleard. 1s.—*Poetry Book for Schools.* 1s.—*The Life of Joseph.* 1s.—*The Scripture Parables.* By the Rev. J. E. Clarke. 1s.—*The Scripture Miracles.* 1s.—*The New Testament History.* 1s.—*The Old Testament History.* By the Rev. J. G. Wood, M.A. 1s.—*The Life of Martin Luther.* By Sarah Crompton. 1s.

BOOKS FOR YOUNG READERS.

A Series of Reading Books designed to facilitate the acquisition of the power of Reading by very young Children. In 10 vols. cloth, 6d. each.

Those with an asterisk have a Frontispiece or other Illustrations.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| *The Old Boathouse. Bell and Fan; or, A Cold Dip. | } Suitable for Infants. |
| *Tot and the Cat. A Bit of Cake. The Jay. The Black Hen's Nest. Tom and Ned. Mrs. Bee. | |
| *The Cat and the Hen. Sam and his Dog Redleg. Bob and Tom Lee. A Wreck. | |
| *The New-born Lamb. The Rosewood Box. Poor Fan. Sheep Dog. | |
| *The Two Parrots. A Tale of the Jubilee. By M. E. Wintle. 9 Illustrations. | } Suitable for Standards I. & II. |
| *The Story of Three Monkeys. | |
| *Story of a Cat. Told by Herself. | |
| The Blind Boy. The Mute Girl. A New Tale of Babes in a Wood. | |
| *Queen Bee and Busy Bee. | |
| *Gull's Crag. | |
| Syllabic Spelling. By C. Barton. In Two Parts. Infants, 3d. Standard I., 3d. | |

GEOGRAPHICAL READING-BOOKS.

By M. J. BARRINGTON WARD, M.A. *With numerous Illustrations.*

- The Child's Geography. For the Use of Schools and for Home Tuition. 6d.
- The Map and the Compass. A Reading-Book of Geography. For Standard I. New Edition, revised. 8d. cloth.
- The Round World. A Reading-Book of Geography. For Standard II. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 10d.
- About England. A Reading-Book of Geography for Standard III. With numerous Illustrations and Coloured Map. 1s. 4d.
- The Child's Geography of England. With Introductory Exercises on the British Isles and Empire, with Questions. 2s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY MECHANICS.

By J. C. HOROBIN, B.A., Principal of Homerton Training College.

- Stage I. *With numerous Illustrations.* 1s. 6d.
 Stage II. *With numerous Illustrations.* 1s. 6d.
 Stage III.

[Preparing.]

BELL'S READING-BOOKS.

FOR SCHOOLS AND PAROCHIAL LIBRARIES.

Post 8vo. Strongly bound in cloth, 1s. each.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| *Adventures of a Donkey. | } <i>Suitable for Standard III.</i> |
| *Life of Columbus. | |
| *Grimm's German Tales. (Selected.) | |
| *Andersen's Danish Tales. Illustrated. (Selected.) | |
| *Uncle Tom's Cabin. | |
| *Great Englishmen. Short Lives for Young Children. | } <i>Standard IV.</i> |
| Great Englishwomen. Short Lives of. | |
| Great Scotsmen. Short Lives of. | |
| Parables from Nature. (Selected.) By Mrs. Gatty. | |
| Lyrical Poetry. Selected by D. Munro. | |
| *Edgeworth's Tales. (A Selection.) | |
| *Scott's Talisman. (Abridged.) | } <i>Standard V.</i> |
| *Poor Jack. By Captain Marryat, R.N. Abgd. | |
| *Dickens's Little Nell. Abridged from the 'The Old Curiosity Shop.' | |
| *Oliver Twist. By Charles Dickens. (Abridged.) | |
| *Masterman Ready. By Capt. Marryat. Illus. (Abgd.) | |
| *Gulliver's Travels. (Abridged.) | |
| *Arabian Nights. (A Selection Rewritten.) | } <i>Standards VI., & VII.</i> |
| *The Vicar of Wakefield. | |
| Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare. (Selected.) | |
| *Robinson Crusoe. Illustrated. | |
| *Settlers in Canada. By Capt. Marryat. (Abridged.) | |
| *Southey's Life of Nelson. (Abridged.) | |
| *Life of the Duke of Wellington, with Maps and Plans. | |
| *Sir Roger de Coverley and other Essays from the Tales of the Coast. By J. Runciman. <i>Spectator.</i> | |

** These Volumes are Illustrated.*

Uniform with the Series, in limp cloth, 6d. each.

Shakespeare's Plays. Kemble's Reading Edition. With Explanatory Notes for School Use.

**JULIUS CÆSAR. THE MERCHANT OF VENICE. KING JOHN.
HENRY THE FIFTH. MACBETH. AS YOU LIKE IT.**

925030

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

